

CAMBRIDGE

FREE  
pull-out  
grammar  
reference  
pocket  
guide

# Essential Grammar in Use

A self-study  
reference  
and practice  
book for  
elementary  
students of  
English

THIRD  
EDITION

*with answers*

## Raymond Murphy

# **Essential Grammar in Use**

A self-study  
reference  
and practice  
book for  
elementary  
students of  
English

*with answers*

**THIRD  
EDITION**

**Raymond Murphy**



**CAMBRIDGE**  
UNIVERSITY PRESS  
[www.cambridge.org](http://www.cambridge.org)

CAMBRIDGE UNIVERSITY PRESS  
Cambridge, New York, Melbourne, Madrid, Cape Town,  
Singapore, São Paulo, Delhi, Tokyo, Mexico City

Cambridge University Press  
The Edinburgh Building, Cambridge CB2 8RU, UK

[www.cambridge.org](http://www.cambridge.org)  
Information on this title: [www.cambridge.org/9780521675802](http://www.cambridge.org/9780521675802)

© Cambridge University Press 2007

This publication is in copyright. Subject to statutory exception  
and to the provisions of relevant collective licensing agreements,  
no reproduction of any part may take place without the written  
permission of Cambridge University Press.

First published 1990

Second edition 1997

Third edition 2007

11th printing 2011

Printed in the United Kingdom at the University Press, Cambridge

*A catalogue record for this publication is available from the British Library*

ISBN 978-0-521-67580-2 Edition with answers

ISBN 978-0-521-67581-9 Edition without answers

ISBN 978-0-521-67543-7 Edition with answers and CD-ROM

ISBN 978-0-521-67544-4 CD-ROM for Windows (single user)

ISBN 978-0-521-67545-1 Network CD-ROM (30 users)

ISBN 978-3-12-539538-1 Klett edition with CD-ROM

ISBN 978-3-12-539536-7 Klett Edition

Cambridge University Press has no responsibility for the persistence or  
accuracy of URLs for external or third-party internet websites referred to in  
this publication, and does not guarantee that any content on such websites is,  
or will remain, accurate or appropriate. Information regarding prices, travel  
timetables and other factual information given in this work is correct at  
the time of first printing but Cambridge University Press does not guarantee  
the accuracy of such information thereafter.

# Contents

Thanks vii  
To the student viii  
To the teacher x

## *Present*

- 1 **am/is/are**
- 2 **am/is/are** (questions)
- 3 **I am doing** (present continuous)
- 4 **are you doing?** (present continuous questions)
- 5 **I do/work/like** etc. (present simple)
- 6 **I don't ...** (present simple negative)
- 7 **Do you ... ?** (present simple questions)
- 8 **I am doing** (present continuous) and **I do** (present simple)
- 9 **I have ... and I've got ...**

## *Past*

- 10 **was/were**
- 11 **worked/got/went** etc. (past simple)
- 12 **I didn't ... Did you ... ?** (past simple negative and questions)
- 13 **I was doing** (past continuous)
- 14 **I was doing** (past continuous) and **I did** (past simple)

## *Present perfect*

- 15 **I have done** (present perfect 1)
- 16 **I've just ... I've already ... I haven't ... yet** (present perfect 2)
- 17 **Have you ever ... ?** (present perfect 3)
- 18 **How long have you ... ?** (present perfect 4)
- 19 **for since ago**
- 20 **I have done** (present perfect) and **I did** (past)

## *Passive*

- 21 **is done was done** (passive 1)
- 22 **is being done has been done** (passive 2)

## *Verb forms*

- 23 **be/have/do** in present and past tenses
- 24 Regular and irregular verbs

## *Future*

- 25 **What are you doing tomorrow?**
- 26 **I'm going to ...**
- 27 **will/shall 1**
- 28 **will/shall 2**

## *Modals, imperative etc.*

- 29 **might**
- 30 **can and could**
- 31 **must mustn't don't need to**

- 32 **should**
- 33 **I have to ...**
- 34 **Would you like ... ? I'd like ...**
- 35 **Do this! Don't do that! Let's do this!**
- 36 **I used to ...**

#### *There and it*

- 37 **there is there are**
- 38 **there was/were there has/have been there will be**
- 39 **It ...**

#### *Auxiliary verbs*

- 40 **I am, I don't etc.**
- 41 **Have you? Are you? Don't you? etc.**
- 42 **too/either so am I / neither do I etc.**
- 43 **isn't, haven't, don't etc. (negatives)**

#### *Questions*

- 44 **is it ... ? have you ... ? do they ... ? etc. (questions 1)**
- 45 **Who saw you? Who did you see? (questions 2)**
- 46 **Who is she talking to? What is it like? (questions 3)**
- 47 **What ... ? Which ... ? How ... ? (questions 4)**
- 48 **How long does it take ... ?**
- 49 **Do you know where ... ? I don't know what ... etc.**

#### *Reported speech*

- 50 **She said that ... He told me that ...**

#### *-ing and to ...*

- 51 **work/working go-going do/doing**
- 52 **to ... (I want to do) and -ing (I enjoy doing)**
- 53 **I want you to ... I told you to ...**
- 54 **I went to the shop to ...**

#### *Go, get, do, make and have*

- 55 **go to ... go on ... go for ... go -ing**
- 56 **get**
- 57 **do and make**
- 58 **have**

#### *Pronouns and possessives*

- 59 **I/me he/him they/them etc.**
- 60 **my/his/their etc.**
- 61 **Whose is this? It's mine/yours/hers etc.**
- 62 **I/me/my/mine**
- 63 **myself/yourself/themselves etc.**
- 64 **-'s (Kate's camera / my brother's car etc.)**

### *A and the*

- 65 **a/an ...**
- 66 **train(s) bus(es)** (singular and plural)
- 67 **a bottle / some water** (countable/uncountable 1)
- 68 **a cake / some cake / some cakes** (countable/uncountable 2)
- 69 **a/an and the**
- 70 **the ...**
- 71 **go to work go home go to the cinema**
- 72 **I like music I hate exams**
- 73 **the ... (names of places)**

### *Determiners and pronouns*

- 74 **this/that/these/those**
- 75 **one/ones**
- 76 **some and any**
- 77 **not + any no none**
- 78 **not + anybody/anyone/anything nobody/no-one/nothing**
- 79 **somebody/anything/nowhere etc.**
- 80 **every and all**
- 81 **all most some any no/none**
- 82 **both either neither**
- 83 **a lot much many**
- 84 **(a) little (a) few**

### *Adjectives and adverbs*

- 85 **old/nice/interesting etc. (adjectives)**
- 86 **quickly/badly/suddenly etc. (adverbs)**
- 87 **old/older expensive / more expensive**
- 88 **older than ... more expensive than ...**
- 89 **not as ... as**
- 90 **the oldest the most expensive**
- 91 **enough**
- 92 **too**

### *Word order*

- 93 **He speaks English very well. (word order 1)**
- 94 **always/usually/often etc. (word order 2)**
- 95 **still yet already**
- 96 **Give me that book! Give it to me!**

### *Conjunctions and clauses*

- 97 **and but or so because**
- 98 **When ...**
- 99 **If we go ... If you see ... etc.**
- 100 **If I had ... If we went ... etc.**
- 101 **a person who ... a thing that/which ... (relative clauses 1)**
- 102 **the people we met the hotel you stayed at (relative clauses 2)**

*Prepositions*

- 103 **at** 8 o'clock    on Monday    in April
- 104 **from** ... to    until    since    for
- 105 **before**    **after**    **during**    **while**
- 106 **in**    **at**    **on** (places 1)
- 107 **in**    **at**    **on** (places 2)
- 108 **to**    **in**    **at** (places 3)
- 109 **under, behind, opposite** etc.
- 110 **up, over, through** etc.
- 111 **on**    **at**    **by**    **with**    **about**
- 112 **afraid of** ... , good at ... etc.    **of/at/for** etc. (prepositions) + -ing
- 113 **listen to** ... , look at ... etc. (verb + preposition)

*Phrasal verbs*

- 114 **go in, fall off, run away** etc. (phrasal verbs 1)
- 115 **put on** your shoes    **put** your shoes **on** (phrasal verbs 2)

**Appendices**

- Appendix 1 Active and passive 243
- Appendix 2 List of irregular verbs 244
- Appendix 3 Irregular verbs in groups 245
- Appendix 4 Short forms (**he's** / **I'd** / **don't** etc.) 246
- Appendix 5 Spelling 248
- Appendix 6 Phrasal verbs (**take off** / **give up** etc.) 250
- Appendix 7 Phrasal verbs + object (**put out** a fire / **give up** your job etc.) 251

**Additional exercises** 252

**Study guide** 271

- Key to Exercises** 283
- Key to Additional exercises** 310
- Key to Study guide** 313

**Index** 315

# Thanks

For their help in producing this third edition of Essential Grammar in Use, I would like to thank Liz Driscoll, Jessica Roberts and Alison Sharpe. I would also like to thank the teachers and reviewers from various countries who provided me with feedback on the previous edition.

Illustrations by Kate Charlesworth, Richard Deverell, Gillian Martin, Roger Penwill, Lisa Smith, Ian West and Simon Williams

Design by Kamae Design

# To the student (working without a teacher)

This is a grammar book for elementary students of English.

There are 115 units in the book and each unit is about a different point of English grammar. There is a list of units at the beginning of the book (*Contents*).

Do not study all the units in order from beginning to end. It is better to choose the units that you *need* to do. For example, if you have a problem with the present perfect (*I have been*, *he has done* etc.), study Units 15–20.

Use the *Contents* or the *Index* (at the back of the book) to find the unit (or units) that you need.

## Contents

Thanks viii  
To the student viii  
To the teacher x

### Present

- 1 am/is/are
- 2 am/is/are (questions)
- 3 I am doing (present continuous)
- 4 are you doing? (present continuous questions)
- 5 I do/work/like etc. (present simple)
- 6 I don't ... (present simple negative)
- 7 Do you ... ? (present simple questions)
- 8 I am doing (present continuous) and I do (present simple)
- 9 I have ... and I've got ...

## Index

The numbers are unit numbers (not page numbers).

**a/an** 65  
*a and some* 67–68  
*a/an and the* 69  
**about** 711B  
**above** 369E  
**active and passive** Appendix 1  
**across** 110  
**adjectives** 85  
**adjectives and adverbs**  
*quickly/quickly!* 86  
**comparatives** *faster / more expensive* 87–89  
**superlatives** *the oldest / the most expensive* 90  
*get + adjective* (e.g. *tired* etc.) 50B  
**possessive adjectives** (*my/your/her etc.*) 60, 62  
*something/somebody etc. + adjective*

**anybody/anyone/anything** 76C, 78–79  
**anywhere** 79  
**apostrophe** (*'m, it's etc.*) Appendix 4  
**apostrophe Y** (*my brother's car*) 64  
*are* see *am/is/are*  
*around* 110, 114–115,  
*Appendix 7*  
**arrive** 108C  
**articles** (*a/an/the*) 65–73  
*an* 65, 67–68  
*a/an and the* 69  
*the* 70–73  
*as fact as as* 89  
**ask**  
*ask somebody to ...* 53B  
*ask somebody for ...* 113A  
**at** *at 6 o'clock / at night etc.* 103  
*at the last stop / at week etc.* 106–107  
*at* 108

**better** 80D  
**between** 109A  
*bit (a bit older/bigger etc.)* 88D  
**born** 21C  
**both** 82  
**word order** 94  
*but* 97  
*by* 114C  
*by after the passive* (*I was bitten by a dog*) 21D  
*by myself / by yourself etc.* 63C  
*by (= beside)* 109C

**can/can't** 39  
**comparative** (*older / more expensive etc.*) 87–89  
**conditional** (*If ...*)  
*If I do ...* 99  
*If I did ...* 100  
**conjunctions** 97–100  
*and/or/or/to/because* 97  
*when/before/while/after/until* 98

If you are not sure which units you need to study, use the *Study guide* at the back of the book.

### Study guide

Study guide			
<b>Simple past</b>			Study guide
1.14. Please be quiet. <input type="radio"/> A I could. <input type="radio"/> B I could. <input type="radio"/> C I was making. <input type="radio"/> D I'm making.	2.13		1.14. My name <input type="radio"/> is ... By date
1.15. Turn <input type="radio"/> on. <input type="radio"/> B it's turning. <input type="radio"/> C it turns every evening. <input type="radio"/> D it turns.	4.59		A it never turns. <input type="radio"/> B it has never turned. <input type="radio"/> C it never turned. <input type="radio"/> D it has never turned.
1.16. What <input type="radio"/> is <input type="radio"/> it <input type="radio"/> the weekend? <input type="radio"/> B are you usually <input type="radio"/> doing. <input type="radio"/> C are you usually <input type="radio"/> it. <input type="radio"/> D do you usually <input type="radio"/> do. <input type="radio"/> E you do usually.	2.23		A it is <input type="radio"/> B it isn't <input type="radio"/> C it's <input type="radio"/> D it's not <input type="radio"/> E it's not.
1.17. Single/multi/moving <input type="radio"/> ... <input type="radio"/> a holiday. <input type="radio"/> B a holiday. <input type="radio"/> C a holiday. <input type="radio"/> D it's a holiday.	4.59		2.15. How long <input type="radio"/> are <input type="radio"/> you <input type="radio"/> been <input type="radio"/> swimming? <input type="radio"/> Since 1998. <input type="radio"/> D it is <input type="radio"/> you been.
1.18. Turn <input type="radio"/> off. <input type="radio"/> B it's off. <input type="radio"/> C it's off. <input type="radio"/> D it hasn't gone. <input type="radio"/> E hasn't gone.	4.59		2.16. Do you know <input type="radio"/> ...? <input type="radio"/> No. <input type="radio"/> B I know. <input type="radio"/> C I know. <input type="radio"/> D I'm knowing.
1.19. I don't <input type="radio"/> like <input type="radio"/> it. <input type="radio"/> B doesn't like. <input type="radio"/> C it doesn't. <input type="radio"/> D doesn't like. <input type="radio"/> E it doesn't like.	4.59		2.17. I'm not <input type="radio"/> swimming <input type="radio"/> today. <input type="radio"/> I'm not swimming <input type="radio"/> today. <input type="radio"/> I'm not swimming <input type="radio"/> today. <input type="radio"/> I'm not swimming <input type="radio"/> today.
<b>Past</b>			
2.1. The weather <input type="radio"/> is <input type="radio"/> nice. <input type="radio"/> C it's nice. <input type="radio"/> D nice. <input type="radio"/> E it's nice.	10		2.18. My name <input type="radio"/> is ... By date
A it's good. <input type="radio"/> B was good. <input type="radio"/> C ever good. <input type="radio"/> D good. <input type="radio"/> E it's good.			A it never nice. <input type="radio"/> B it has never nice. <input type="radio"/> C it never nice. <input type="radio"/> D it has never nice.
2.2. Why <input type="radio"/> are <input type="radio"/> you <input type="radio"/> late? <input type="radio"/> B have you <input type="radio"/> come. <input type="radio"/> C you were. <input type="radio"/> D you were. <input type="radio"/> E you were.	10		D it has never nice.
A you was. <input type="radio"/> B did you. <input type="radio"/> C was you. <input type="radio"/> D you were. <input type="radio"/> E you were.			2.19. What <input type="radio"/> is <input type="radio"/> it <input type="radio"/> the weekend? <input type="radio"/> B it's the weekend. <input type="radio"/> C it's the weekend. <input type="radio"/> D it is the weekend.
2.3. Every <input type="radio"/> day <input type="radio"/> I <input type="radio"/> go <input type="radio"/> to <input type="radio"/> work. <input type="radio"/> B work. <input type="radio"/> C works. <input type="radio"/> D worked. <input type="radio"/> E was work.	10		A it goes to <input type="radio"/> B it goes to <input type="radio"/> C it goes to <input type="radio"/> D it goes to <input type="radio"/> E it goes to.
2.4. Classes <input type="radio"/> are <input type="radio"/> over <input type="radio"/> now. <input type="radio"/> B over. <input type="radio"/> C goes. <input type="radio"/> D get. <input type="radio"/> E was.	10		2.20. Who <input type="radio"/> is <input type="radio"/> it <input type="radio"/> the birthday afternoon? <input type="radio"/> I couldn't find you. <input type="radio"/> D lay you been.
A go. <input type="radio"/> B went. <input type="radio"/> C goes. <input type="radio"/> D get. <input type="radio"/> E was.			A you were. <input type="radio"/> B you know. <input type="radio"/> C was you. <input type="radio"/> D lay you been. <input type="radio"/> E know you.
2.5. I <input type="radio"/> don't <input type="radio"/> like <input type="radio"/> swimming <input type="radio"/> yesterday. <input type="radio"/> B didn't swim. <input type="radio"/> C swim's swim. <input type="radio"/> D didn't swim.	10, 23		2.21. When <input type="radio"/> is <input type="radio"/> it <input type="radio"/> the birthday? <input type="radio"/> In China. <input type="radio"/> D was you.
A I didn't. <input type="radio"/> B didn't swim. <input type="radio"/> C swim's swim. <input type="radio"/> D didn't swim.			2.22. Who <input type="radio"/> is <input type="radio"/> it <input type="radio"/> the party too work. <input type="radio"/> B didn't invited. <input type="radio"/> C weren't invited. <input type="radio"/> D wasn't invited.
2.6. There <input type="radio"/> is <input type="radio"/> a <input type="radio"/> hole <input type="radio"/> in <input type="radio"/> the <input type="radio"/> window. <input type="radio"/> B hole. <input type="radio"/> C holes. <input type="radio"/> D holes. <input type="radio"/> E the hole.	10		2.23. Who <input type="radio"/> is <input type="radio"/> it <input type="radio"/> the party too work. <input type="radio"/> B didn't invited. <input type="radio"/> C weren't invited. <input type="radio"/> D wasn't invited.
A there is. <input type="radio"/> B there is. <input type="radio"/> C there is. <input type="radio"/> D there is. <input type="radio"/> E there is.			2.24. Who <input type="radio"/> is <input type="radio"/> it <input type="radio"/> the party too work. <input type="radio"/> B didn't invited. <input type="radio"/> C weren't invited. <input type="radio"/> D wasn't invited.
2.7. John was reading a book <input type="radio"/> when <input type="radio"/> the phone <input type="radio"/> rang. <input type="radio"/> B was ringing. <input type="radio"/> C was ring. <input type="radio"/> D was ringing. <input type="radio"/> E was ring.	10		2.25. Who <input type="radio"/> is <input type="radio"/> it <input type="radio"/> the party too work. <input type="radio"/> B didn't invited. <input type="radio"/> C weren't invited. <input type="radio"/> D wasn't invited.
A he was. <input type="radio"/> B was. <input type="radio"/> C was. <input type="radio"/> D was. <input type="radio"/> E was.			2.26. Who <input type="radio"/> is <input type="radio"/> it <input type="radio"/> the party too work. <input type="radio"/> B didn't invited. <input type="radio"/> C weren't invited. <input type="radio"/> D wasn't invited.
2.8. John was reading a book <input type="radio"/> and <input type="radio"/> the phone <input type="radio"/> rang. <input type="radio"/> B was ringing. <input type="radio"/> C was ring. <input type="radio"/> D was ringing. <input type="radio"/> E was ring.	10		2.27. Who <input type="radio"/> is <input type="radio"/> it <input type="radio"/> the party too work. <input type="radio"/> B didn't invited. <input type="radio"/> C weren't invited. <input type="radio"/> D wasn't invited.
A he was. <input type="radio"/> B was. <input type="radio"/> C was. <input type="radio"/> D was. <input type="radio"/> E was.			2.28. Who <input type="radio"/> is <input type="radio"/> it <input type="radio"/> the party too work. <input type="radio"/> B didn't invited. <input type="radio"/> C weren't invited. <input type="radio"/> D wasn't invited.
<b>Past perfect</b>			
3.1. Who <input type="radio"/> had <input type="radio"/> been <input type="radio"/> to <input type="radio"/> the <input type="radio"/> beach? <input type="radio"/> B been. <input type="radio"/> C the beach. <input type="radio"/> D had been. <input type="radio"/> E had been.	10		2.29. Who <input type="radio"/> is <input type="radio"/> it <input type="radio"/> the party too work. <input type="radio"/> B didn't invited. <input type="radio"/> C weren't invited. <input type="radio"/> D wasn't invited.
A he had. <input type="radio"/> B She has gone. <input type="radio"/> C She gone. <input type="radio"/> D She has gone. <input type="radio"/> E She gone.			2.30. Who <input type="radio"/> is <input type="radio"/> it <input type="radio"/> the party too work. <input type="radio"/> B didn't invited. <input type="radio"/> C weren't invited. <input type="radio"/> D wasn't invited.
3.2. You <input type="radio"/> have <input type="radio"/> been <input type="radio"/> to <input type="radio"/> the <input type="radio"/> beach? <input type="radio"/> B been. <input type="radio"/> C have already arrived. <input type="radio"/> D haven't arrived yet. <input type="radio"/> E been arrived yet.	10		2.31. Who <input type="radio"/> is <input type="radio"/> it <input type="radio"/> the party too work. <input type="radio"/> B didn't invited. <input type="radio"/> C weren't invited. <input type="radio"/> D wasn't invited.
A don't arrive yet. <input type="radio"/> B have already arrived. <input type="radio"/> C haven't arrived yet. <input type="radio"/> D haven't arrived yet. <input type="radio"/> E been arrived yet.			2.32. Who <input type="radio"/> is <input type="radio"/> it <input type="radio"/> the party too work. <input type="radio"/> B didn't invited. <input type="radio"/> C weren't invited. <input type="radio"/> D wasn't invited.

Study guide (pages 271–282)

Study guide			
<b>Simple past</b>			Study guide
4.3. My name <input type="radio"/> is ... By date	10, 23		4.3. My name <input type="radio"/> is ... By date
A it never <input type="radio"/> is. <input type="radio"/> B it has never <input type="radio"/> is. <input type="radio"/> C it never <input type="radio"/> is. <input type="radio"/> D it has never <input type="radio"/> is.			A it never <input type="radio"/> is. <input type="radio"/> B it has never <input type="radio"/> is. <input type="radio"/> C it never <input type="radio"/> is. <input type="radio"/> D it has never <input type="radio"/> is.
4.4. <input type="radio"/> I <input type="radio"/> have <input type="radio"/> been <input type="radio"/> married. <input type="radio"/> B I have never <input type="radio"/> married. <input type="radio"/> C I have <input type="radio"/> married. <input type="radio"/> D I've married.	10, 23		4.4. <input type="radio"/> I <input type="radio"/> have <input type="radio"/> been <input type="radio"/> married. <input type="radio"/> B I have never <input type="radio"/> married. <input type="radio"/> C I have <input type="radio"/> married. <input type="radio"/> D I've married.
4.5. <input type="radio"/> I <input type="radio"/> have <input type="radio"/> been <input type="radio"/> married. <input type="radio"/> B I have never <input type="radio"/> married. <input type="radio"/> C I have <input type="radio"/> married. <input type="radio"/> D I've married.	10		4.5. <input type="radio"/> I <input type="radio"/> have <input type="radio"/> been <input type="radio"/> married. <input type="radio"/> B I have never <input type="radio"/> married. <input type="radio"/> C I have <input type="radio"/> married. <input type="radio"/> D I've married.
4.6. <input type="radio"/> I <input type="radio"/> have <input type="radio"/> been <input type="radio"/> married. <input type="radio"/> B I have never <input type="radio"/> married. <input type="radio"/> C I have <input type="radio"/> married. <input type="radio"/> D I've married.	10		4.6. <input type="radio"/> I <input type="radio"/> have <input type="radio"/> been <input type="radio"/> married. <input type="radio"/> B I have never <input type="radio"/> married. <input type="radio"/> C I have <input type="radio"/> married. <input type="radio"/> D I've married.
4.7. <input type="radio"/> I <input type="radio"/> have <input type="radio"/> been <input type="radio"/> married. <input type="radio"/> B I have never <input type="radio"/> married. <input type="radio"/> C I have <input type="radio"/> married. <input type="radio"/> D I've married.	10		4.7. <input type="radio"/> I <input type="radio"/> have <input type="radio"/> been <input type="radio"/> married. <input type="radio"/> B I have never <input type="radio"/> married. <input type="radio"/> C I have <input type="radio"/> married. <input type="radio"/> D I've married.
4.8. <input type="radio"/> I <input type="radio"/> have <input type="radio"/> been <input type="radio"/> married. <input type="radio"/> B I have never <input type="radio"/> married. <input type="radio"/> C I have <input type="radio"/> married. <input type="radio"/> D I've married.	10		4.8. <input type="radio"/> I <input type="radio"/> have <input type="radio"/> been <input type="radio"/> married. <input type="radio"/> B I have never <input type="radio"/> married. <input type="radio"/> C I have <input type="radio"/> married. <input type="radio"/> D I've married.
4.9. <input type="radio"/> I <input type="radio"/> have <input type="radio"/> been <input type="radio"/> married. <input type="radio"/> B I have never <input type="radio"/> married. <input type="radio"/> C I have <input type="radio"/> married. <input type="radio"/> D I've married.	10		4.9. <input type="radio"/> I <input type="radio"/> have <input type="radio"/> been <input type="radio"/> married. <input type="radio"/> B I have never <input type="radio"/> married. <input type="radio"/> C I have <input type="radio"/> married. <input type="radio"/> D I've married.
4.10. <input type="radio"/> I <input type="radio"/> have <input type="radio"/> been <input type="radio"/> married. <input type="radio"/> B I have never <input type="radio"/> married. <input type="radio"/> C I have <input type="radio"/> married. <input type="radio"/> D I've married.	10		4.10. <input type="radio"/> I <input type="radio"/> have <input type="radio"/> been <input type="radio"/> married. <input type="radio"/> B I have never <input type="radio"/> married. <input type="radio"/> C I have <input type="radio"/> married. <input type="radio"/> D I've married.
4.11. <input type="radio"/> I <input type="radio"/> have <input type="radio"/> been <input type="radio"/> married. <input type="radio"/> B I have never <input type="radio"/> married. <input type="radio"/> C I have <input type="radio"/> married. <input type="radio"/> D I've married.	10		4.11. <input type="radio"/> I <input type="radio"/> have <input type="radio"/> been <input type="radio"/> married. <input type="radio"/> B I have never <input type="radio"/> married. <input type="radio"/> C I have <input type="radio"/> married. <input type="radio"/> D I've married.
4.12. <input type="radio"/> I <input type="radio"/> have <input type="radio"/> been <input type="radio"/> married. <input type="radio"/> B I have never <input type="radio"/> married. <input type="radio"/> C I have <input type="radio"/> married. <input type="radio"/> D I've married.	10		4.12. <input type="radio"/> I <input type="radio"/> have <input type="radio"/> been <input type="radio"/> married. <input type="radio"/> B I have never <input type="radio"/> married. <input type="radio"/> C I have <input type="radio"/> married. <input type="radio"/> D I've married.
4.13. <input type="radio"/> I <input type="radio"/> have <input type="radio"/> been <input type="radio"/> married. <input type="radio"/> B I have never <input type="radio"/> married. <input type="radio"/> C I have <input type="radio"/> married. <input type="radio"/> D I've married.	10		4.13. <input type="radio"/> I <input type="radio"/> have <input type="radio"/> been <input type="radio"/> married. <input type="radio"/> B I have never <input type="radio"/> married. <input type="radio"/> C I have <input type="radio"/> married. <input type="radio"/> D I've married.
4.14. <input type="radio"/> I <input type="radio"/> have <input type="radio"/> been <input type="radio"/> married. <input type="radio"/> B I have never <input type="radio"/> married. <input type="radio"/> C I have <input type="radio"/> married. <input type="radio"/> D I've married.	10		4.14. <input type="radio"/> I <input type="radio"/> have <input type="radio"/> been <input type="radio"/> married. <input type="radio"/> B I have never <input type="radio"/> married. <input type="radio"/> C I have <input type="radio"/> married. <input type="radio"/> D I've married.
4.15. <input type="radio"/> I <input type="radio"/> have <input type="radio"/> been <input type="radio"/> married. <input type="radio"/> B I have never <input type="radio"/> married. <input type="radio"/> C I have <input type="radio"/> married. <input type="radio"/> D I've married.	10		4.15. <input type="radio"/> I <input type="radio"/> have <input type="radio"/> been <input type="radio"/> married. <input type="radio"/> B I have never <input type="radio"/> married. <input type="radio"/> C I have <input type="radio"/> married. <input type="radio"/> D I've married.
4.16. <input type="radio"/> I <input type="radio"/> have <input type="radio"/> been <input type="radio"/> married. <input type="radio"/> B I have never <input type="radio"/> married. <input type="radio"/> C I have <input type="radio"/> married. <input type="radio"/> D I've married.	10		4.16. <input type="radio"/> I <input type="radio"/> have <input type="radio"/> been <input type="radio"/> married. <input type="radio"/> B I have never <input type="radio"/> married. <input type="radio"/> C I have <input type="radio"/> married. <input type="radio"/> D I've married.
4.17. <input type="radio"/> I <input type="radio"/> have <input type="radio"/> been <input type="radio"/> married. <input type="radio"/> B I have never <input type="radio"/> married. <input type="radio"/> C I have <input type="radio"/> married. <input type="radio"/> D I've married.	10		4.17. <input type="radio"/> I <input type="radio"/> have <input type="radio"/> been <input type="radio"/> married. <input type="radio"/> B I have never <input type="radio"/> married. <input type="radio"/> C I have <input type="radio"/> married. <input type="radio"/> D I've married.
4.18. <input type="radio"/> I <input type="radio"/> have <input type="radio"/> been <input type="radio"/> married. <input type="radio"/> B I have never <input type="radio"/> married. <input type="radio"/> C I have <input type="radio"/> married. <input type="radio"/> D I've married.	10		4.18. <input type="radio"/> I <input type="radio"/> have <input type="radio"/> been <input type="radio"/> married. <input type="radio"/> B I have never <input type="radio"/> married. <input type="radio"/> C I have <input type="radio"/> married. <input type="radio"/> D I've married.
4.19. <input type="radio"/> I <input type="radio"/> have <input type="radio"/> been <input type="radio"/> married. <input type="radio"/> B I have never <input type="radio"/> married. <input type="radio"/> C I have <input type="radio"/> married. <input type="radio"/> D I've married.	10		4.19. <input type="radio"/> I <input type="radio"/> have <input type="radio"/> been <input type="radio"/> married. <input type="radio"/> B I have never <input type="radio"/> married. <input type="radio"/> C I have <input type="radio"/> married. <input type="radio"/> D I've married.
4.20. <input type="radio"/> I <input type="radio"/> have <input type="radio"/> been <input type="radio"/> married. <input type="radio"/> B I have never <input type="radio"/> married. <input type="radio"/> C I have <input type="radio"/> married. <input type="radio"/> D I've married.	10		4.20. <input type="radio"/> I <input type="radio"/> have <input type="radio"/> been <input type="radio"/> married. <input type="radio"/> B I have never <input type="radio"/> married. <input type="radio"/> C I have <input type="radio"/> married. <input type="radio"/> D I've married.
4.21. <input type="radio"/> I <input type="radio"/> have <input type="radio"/> been <input type="radio"/> married. <input type="radio"/> B I have never <input type="radio"/> married. <input type="radio"/> C I have <input type="radio"/> married. <input type="radio"/> D I've married.	10		4.21. <input type="radio"/> I <input type="radio"/> have <input type="radio"/> been <input type="radio"/> married. <input type="radio"/> B I have never <input type="radio"/> married. <input type="radio"/> C I have <input type="radio"/> married. <input type="radio"/> D I've married.
4.22. <input type="radio"/> I <input type="radio"/> have <input type="radio"/> been <input type="radio"/> married. <input type="radio"/> B I have never <input type="radio"/> married. <input type="radio"/> C I have <input type="radio"/> married. <input type="radio"/> D I've married.	10		4.22. <input type="radio"/> I <input type="radio"/> have <input type="radio"/> been <input type="radio"/> married. <input type="radio"/> B I have never <input type="radio"/> married. <input type="radio"/> C I have <input type="radio"/> married. <input type="radio"/> D I've married.
4.23. <input type="radio"/> I <input type="radio"/> have <input type="radio"/> been <input type="radio"/> married. <input type="radio"/> B I have never <input type="radio"/> married. <input type="radio"/> C I have <input type="radio"/> married. <input type="radio"/> D I've married.	10		4.23. <input type="radio"/> I <input type="radio"/> have <input type="radio"/> been <input type="radio"/> married. <input type="radio"/> B I have never <input type="radio"/> married. <input type="radio"/> C I have <input type="radio"/> married. <input type="radio"/> D I've married.
4.24. <input type="radio"/> I <input type="radio"/> have <input type="radio"/> been <input type="radio"/> married. <input type="radio"/> B I have never <input type="radio"/> married. <input type="radio"/> C I have <input type="radio"/> married. <input type="radio"/> D I've married.	10		4.24. <input type="radio"/> I <input type="radio"/> have <input type="radio"/> been <input type="radio"/> married. <input type="radio"/> B I have never <input type="radio"/> married. <input type="radio"/> C I have <input type="radio"/> married. <input type="radio"/> D I've married.

Each unit is two pages. The information is on the left-hand page and the exercises are on the right:

## Information

## Exercises

Study the left-hand page (information), and then do the exercises on the right-hand page.

Use the Key to check your answers. The Key is on pages 283–309.

Study the left-hand page again if necessary.

Don't forget the seven Appendices at the back of the book (pages 243–251). These will give you information about active and passive forms, irregular verbs, short forms, spelling and phrasal verbs.

There are also Additional exercises at the back of the book (pages 252–270). There is a list of these exercises on page 252.

## CD Rom

You can buy this book with or without a CD Rom. On the CD Rom there are more exercises on all the units, and these are different from the exercises in the book. There are also more than 600 test questions.



# To the teacher

The most important features of this book are:

- It is a grammar book. It does not deal with other aspects of the language.
- It is for elementary learners. It does not cover areas of grammar which are not normally taught at elementary level.
- It is a reference book with exercises. It is not a course book and is not organised progressively.
- It is addressed to learners and intended for self-study.

## Organisation of the book

There are 115 units in the book, each one focusing on a particular area of grammar. The material is organised in grammatical categories, such as tenses, questions and articles. Units are *not* ordered according to difficulty, and should therefore be selected and used in the order appropriate for the learner(s). The book should *not* be worked through from beginning to end. The units are listed in the *Contents* and there is a comprehensive *Index* at the end of the book.

Each unit has the same format consisting of two facing pages. The grammar point is presented and explained on the left-hand page and the corresponding exercises are on the right. There are seven *Appendices* (pages 243–251) dealing with active and passive forms, irregular verbs, short forms (contractions), spelling and phrasal verbs. It might be useful for teachers to draw students' attention to these.

At the back of the book there is a set of *Additional exercises* (pages 252–270). These exercises provide 'mixed' practice bringing together grammar points from a number of different units (especially those concerning verb forms). There are 35 exercises in this section and there is a full list on page 252.

Also at the back of the book there is a *Study guide* to help students decide which units to study – see page 271.

Finally, there is a *Key* (pages 283–309) for students to check their answers to all the exercises in the book. An edition without the *Study guide* and *Key* is available for teachers who would prefer it for their students.

## Level

The book is for elementary learners, i.e. learners with very little English, but not for complete beginners. It is intended mainly for elementary students who are beyond the early stages of a beginners' course. It could also be used by low-intermediate learners whose grammar is weaker than other aspects of their English or who have problems with particular areas of basic grammar.

The explanations are addressed to the elementary learner and are therefore as simple and as short as possible. The vocabulary used in the examples and exercises has also been restricted so that the book can be used at this level.

## Using the book

The book can be used by students working alone (see *To the student*) or as supplementary course material. In either case the book can serve as an elementary grammar book.

When used as course material, the book can be used for immediate consolidation or for later revision or remedial work. It might be used by the whole class or by individual students needing extra help and practice.

In some cases it may be desirable to use the left-hand pages (presentation and explanation) in class, but it should be noted that these have been written for individual study and reference. In most cases, it would probably be better for teachers to present the grammar point in their preferred way with the exercises being done for homework. The left-hand page is then available for later reference by the student.

Some teachers may prefer to keep the book for revision and remedial work. In this case, individual students or groups of students can be directed to the appropriate units for self-study and practice.

#### CD Rom

The book is sold with or without a CD Rom. This contains further exercises on all the units in the book, as well as a bank of more than 600 test questions from which users can select to compile their own tests. The CD Rom is also available separately.

## Essential Grammar in Use *Third Edition*

This is a new edition of *Essential Grammar in Use*. The differences between this edition and the second edition are:

- The book has been redesigned with new colour illustrations.
- There is one new unit (Unit 35) and some reorganisation, so that most units have different numbers from the previous edition.
- There are many (usually minor) revisions to the explanations, examples and exercises.
- There are two new pages of *Additional exercises* (pages 252–270).
- There is a new *Study guide* at the back of the book to help users decide which units to study.
- There is a new CD Rom with further exercises to accompany the book.

## am/is/are



## positive

I	<b>am</b>	(I'm)
he		(he's)
she	<b>is</b>	(she's)
it		(it's)
we		(we're)
you	<b>are</b>	(you're)
they		(they're)

short form

## negative

I	<b>am not</b>	(I'm not)
he		(he's not or he isn't)
she	<b>is not</b>	(she's not or she isn't)
it		(it's not or it isn't)
we		(we're not or we aren't)
you	<b>are not</b>	(you're not or you aren't)
they		(they're not or they aren't)

short forms

- I'm cold. Can you close the window, please?
- I'm 32 years old. My sister is 29.
- Steve is ill. He's in bed.
- My brother is afraid of dogs.
- It's ten o'clock. You're late again.
- Ann and I are good friends.
- Your keys are on the table.
  
- I'm tired, but I'm not hungry.
- Tom isn't interested in politics. He's interested in music.
- Jane isn't a teacher. She's a student.
- Those people aren't English. They're Australian.
- It's sunny today, but it isn't warm.



that's = that is    there's = there is    here's = here is

- Thank you. That's very kind of you.
- Look! There's Chris.
- 'Here's your key.' 'Thank you.'



# Exercises

# Unit 1

## 1.1 Write the short form (she's / we aren't etc.).

1 she is ..... **she's**      3 it is not ..... **it isn't**      5 I am not ..... **I'm not**  
2 they are ..... **they're**      4 that is ..... **that's**      6 you are not ..... **you're not**

## 1.2 Write am, is or are.

1 The weather ..... **is** nice today.      5 Look! There ..... **is** Carol.  
2 I ..... **am** not rich.      6 My brother and I ..... **are** good tennis players.  
3 This bag ..... **is** heavy.      7 Emily ..... **is** at home. Her children ..... **are** at school.  
4 These bags ..... **are** heavy.      8 I ..... **am** a taxi driver. My sister ..... **is** a nurse.

## 1.3 Complete the sentences.

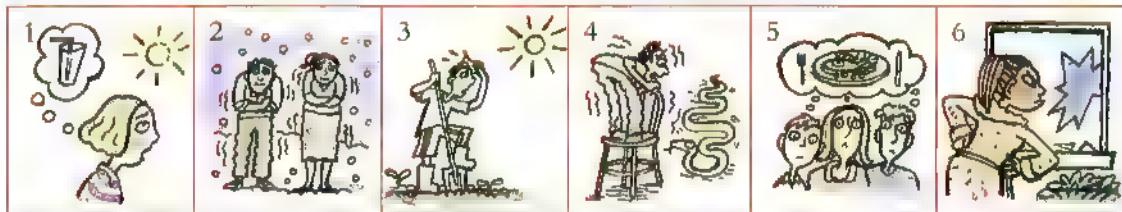
1 Steve is ill. ..... **He's** in bed.  
2 I'm not hungry, but ..... **I'm** thirsty.  
3 Mr Thomas is a very old man. ..... **He's** 98.  
4 These chairs aren't beautiful, but ..... **they're** comfortable.  
5 The weather is nice today. ..... **It's** warm and sunny.  
6 ' ..... **I'm** late.' 'No, I'm not. I'm early!'  
7 Catherine isn't at home. ..... **She's** at work.  
8 ' ..... **Give** your coat.' 'Oh, thank you very much.'

## 1.4 Look at Lisa's sentences in 1A. Now write sentences about yourself.

1 (name?) My ..... **I'm** .....  
2 (from?) I ..... **I'm** .....  
3 (age?) I ..... **I'm** .....  
4 (job?) I ..... **I'm** .....  
5 (favourite colour or colours?) **My** .....  
6 (interested in ... ?) **I** .....  
.....

## 1.5 Write sentences for the pictures. Use:

afraid    angry    cold    hot    hungry    thirsty



1 **She's thirsty.**      3 He ..... **is** .....  
2 They ..... **are** ..... **afraid.**      4 ..... **is** ..... **hungry.**      5 .....  
.....      6 .....  
.....

## 1.6 Write true sentences, positive or negative. Use is/isn't or are/aren't.

1 (it / hot today) **It isn't hot today.** or **It's hot today.**  
2 (it / windy today) It .....  
3 (my hands / cold) My .....  
4 (Brazil / a very big country) .....  
5 (diamonds / cheap) .....  
6 (Toronto / in the US) .....

**Write true sentences, positive or negative. Use I'm / I'm not.**

7 (tired) **I'm tired.** or **I'm not tired.**  
8 (hungry)  
9 (a good swimmer)  
10 (interested in football)

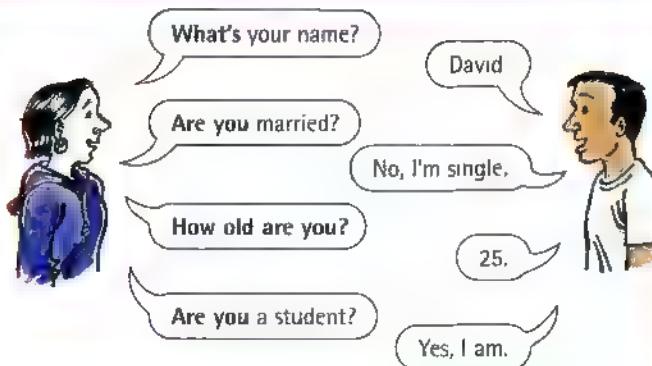
## am/is/are (questions)

positive

I	am
he	is
she	
it	
we	are
you	
they	

question

am	I?
is	he? she?
are	we? you? they?



- 'Am I late?' 'No, you're on time.'
- 'Is your mother at home?' 'No, she's out.'
- 'Are your parents at home?' 'No, they're out.'
- 'Is it cold in your room?' 'Yes, a little.'
- Your shoes are nice. Are they new?

We say:

- Is she at home? / Is your mother at home? (not Is at home your mother?)
- Are they new? / Are your shoes new? (not Are new your shoes?)

## B

Where ... ? / What ... ? / Who ... ? / How ... ? / Why ... ?

- Where is your mother? Is she at home?
- Where are you from? 'Canada.'
- What colour is your car? 'It's red.'
- How old is Joe? 'He's 24.'
- How are your parents? Are they well?
- These postcards are nice. How much are they?
- This hotel isn't very good. Why is it so expensive?

what's = what is who's = who is how's = how is where's = where is

<input type="checkbox"/> What's the time?	<input type="checkbox"/> Who's that man?
<input type="checkbox"/> Where's Lucy?	<input type="checkbox"/> How's your father?

## Short answers

I am.	
he	is.
she	
it	
we	are.
you	
they	

I'm	
he's	
she's	
it's	
we're	
you're	
they're	

No,	I'm	not.	or	No,	he	she	isn't.
					we	you	aren't.



- 'Are you tired?' 'Yes, I am.'
- 'Are you hungry?' 'No, I'm not, but I'm thirsty.'
- 'Is your friend English?' 'Yes, he is.'
- 'Are these your keys?' 'Yes, they are.'
- 'That's my seat.' 'No, it isn't.'

## Exercises

## Unit 2

### **2.1 Find the right answers for the questions.**

- 1 Where's the camera?
- 2 Is your car blue?
- 3 Is Linda from London?
- 4 Am I late?
- 5 Where's Ann from?
- 6 What colour is your bag?
- 7 Are you hungry?
- 8 How is George?
- 9 Who's that woman?

- A London.
- B No, I'm not.
- C Yes, you are.
- D My sister.
- E Black.
- F No, it's black.
- G In your bag.
- H No, she's American.
- I Very well.

1  
2  
3  
4  
5  
6  
7  
8  
9

## 2.2 Make questions with these words.

- 1 (is / at home / your mother)
- 2 (your parents / are / well)
- 3 (interesting / is / your job)
- 4 (the shops / are / open today)
- 5 (from / where / you / are)
- 6 (interested in sport / you / are)
- 7 (is / near here / the post office)
- 8 (at school / are / your children)
- 9 (you / are / late / why)

Is your mother at home  
Are your parents well

### 2.3 Complete the questions. Use What ... / Who ... / Where ... / How ... .

How are your parents?  
the bus stop  
your children?  
these oranges?  
your favourite sport?  
the man in this photograph?  
your new shoes?

They're very well.  
At the end of the street.  
Five, six and ten.  
£1.50 a kilo.  
Skung.  
That's my father.  
Black.

#### 2.4 Write the questions.



1 (name?) ..... What's your name?  
2 (American?)  
3 (how old?)  
4 (a teacher?)  
5 (married?)  
6 (wife a lawyer?)  
7 (from?)  
8 (her name?)  
9 (how old?)

Paul.  
No, I'm Australian.  
I'm 30.  
No, I'm a lawyer.  
Yes, I am.  
No, she's a designer.  
She's Italian.  
Anna.  
She's 27.

### 2.5 Write short answers (Yes, I am. / No, he isn't. etc.).

1 Are you married? No, I'm not.  
2 Are you thirsty?  
3 Is it cold today?

- 4 Are your hands cold?
- 5 Is it dark now?
- 6 Are you a teacher?

## I am doing (present continuous)



**She's eating.**  
**She isn't reading.**



**It's raining.**  
**The sun isn't shining.**



They're running  
They aren't walking.

The present continuous is:

**am/is/are + doing/eating/running/writing etc.**

I	am (not)
he	
she	is (not)
it	
we	
you	are (not)
they	

- I'm working. I'm not watching TV.
- Maria is reading a newspaper.
- She isn't eating. (or She's not eating )
- The phone is ringing.
- We're having dinner.
- You're not listening to me. (or You aren't listening ...)
- The children are doing their homework.

**am/is/are + -ing** = something is happening *now*:

I'm working  
she's wearing a hat  
they're playing football  
I'm not watching television

past                          now                          future

- Please be quiet. I'm working. (= I'm working now)
- Look, there's Sarah. She's wearing a brown coat. (= she is wearing it now)
- The weather is nice. It's not raining.
- 'Where are the children?' They're playing in the park.'
- (on the phone) We're having dinner now. Can I phone you later?
- You can turn off the television. I'm not watching it.

*Spelling* (→ Appendix 5):

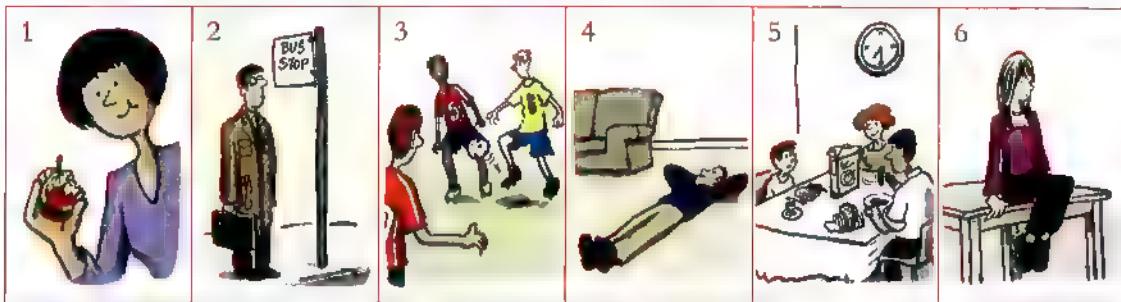
come → coming    write → writing    dance → dancing  
run → running    sit → sitting    swim → swimming  
lie → lying

# Exercises

# Unit 3

## 3.1 What are these people doing? Use these verbs to complete the sentences:

eat have lie play sit wait



1 She's **eating** an apple.  
2 He **is waiting** for a bus.  
3 They **are playing** football.  
4 **He is lying** on the floor.  
5 **They are having** breakfast.  
6 **She is sitting** on the table.

## 3.2 Complete the sentences. Use these verbs:

build cook go have stand stay swim work

1 Please be quiet. I **'m working**.  
2 'Where's John?' 'He's in the kitchen. He **is cooking**.'  
3 'You **are standing** on my foot.' 'Oh, I'm sorry.'  
4 Look! Somebody **is swimming** in the river.  
5 We're here on holiday. We **are staying** at the Central Hotel.  
6 'Where's Sue?' 'She **is having** a shower.'  
7 They **are building** a new hotel in the city centre at the moment.  
8 I **am going** now. Goodbye.

## 3.3 Look at the picture. Write sentences about Jane. Use She's -ing or She isn't -ing.



Jane

1 (have dinner) **Jane isn't having dinner.**  
2 (watch television) **She's watching television.**  
3 (sit on the floor) **She is sitting on the floor.**  
4 (read a book)  
5 (play the piano)  
6 (laugh)  
7 (wear a hat)  
8 (write a letter)

## 3.4 What's happening now? Write true sentences.

1 (I / wash / my hair) **I'm not washing my hair.**  
2 (it / snow) **It's snowing, or It isn't snowing.**  
3 (I / sit / on a chair)  
4 (I / eat)  
5 (it / rain)  
6 (I / learn / English)  
7 (I / listen / to music)  
8 (the sun / shine)  
9 (I / wear / shoes)  
10 (I / read / a newspaper)

# are you doing? (present continuous questions)

positive

I	am	
he	<b>is</b>	<b>doing</b>
she		<b>working</b>
it		<b>going</b>
we		<b>staying</b>
you	<b>are</b>	etc.
they		

question

am	I	
	<b>is</b>	<b>he</b>
		<b>she</b>
		<b>it</b>
<b>are</b>		<b>we</b>
		<b>you</b>
		<b>they</b>

What are you doing?



- 'Are you **feeling** OK?'    'Yes, I'm fine, thanks.'
- 'Is it **raining**?'    'Yes, take an umbrella.'
- Why **are** you **wearing** a coat? It's not cold.
- 'What's Paul **doing**?'    'He's **reading** the newspaper.'
- 'What **are** the children **doing**?'    'They're **watching** television.'
- Look, there's Emily! Where's she **going**?
- Who **are** you **waiting** for? Are you waiting for Sue?

B

Study the word order:

is/are + subject + -ing

Where	Is	he	<b>working</b> today?
	<b>Is</b>	Paul	<b>working</b> today? (not Is working Paul today?)
Where	<b>are</b>	they	<b>going</b> ?
Where	<b>are</b>	those people	<b>going</b> ? (not Where are going those people?)

C

Short answers

Yes,	I	am.	No,	I'm	not.	or	No,	he	she	isn't.		
	he	<b>is.</b>		he's								
	she			she's								
	it			it's								
	we			we're								
	you			you're								
	they			they're								

- 'Are you **going** now?'    'Yes, I am.'
- 'Is Paul **working** today?'    'Yes, he is.'
- 'Is it **raining**?'    'No, it isn't.'
- 'Are your friends **staying** at a hotel?'    'No, they aren't. They're **staying** with me'

# Exercises

# Unit 4

## 4.1 Look at the pictures and write the questions.

1 (you / watch / it?) Are you watching it?  No, you can turn it off.	2 (you / go / now?)  Yes, see you tomorrow.	3 (it / rain?)  No, not at the moment.
4 (you / enjoy / the film?)  Yes, it's very funny.	5 (that clock / work?)  No, it's broken.	6 (you / wait / for a bus?)  No, for a taxi.

## 4.2 Look at the pictures and complete the questions. Use:

cry eat go laugh look at read

1 What <u>are you reading</u> ? 	2 Where <u>is she</u> ? 	3 What <u>?</u> 
4 Why <u>?</u> 	5 What <u>?</u> 	6 Why <u>?</u> 

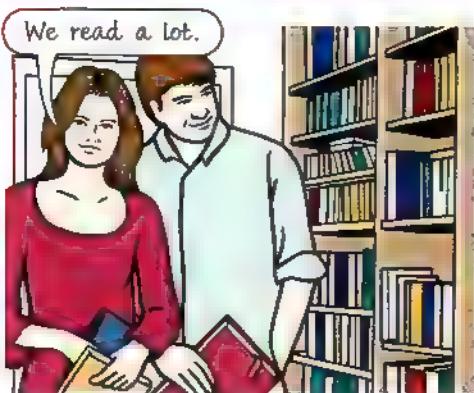
## 4.3 Make questions from these words. Put the words in the right order.

- 1 (is / working / Paul / today) Is Paul working today ?
- 2 (what / the children / are / doing) What are the children doing ?
- 3 (you / are / listening / to me) ...
- 4 (where / your friends / are / going) ...
- 5 (are / watching / your parents / television) ...
- 6 (what / Jessica / is / cooking) ...
- 7 (why / you / are / looking / at me) ...
- 8 (is / coming / the bus) ...

## 4.4 Write short answers (Yes, I am. / No, he isn't. etc.).

- 1 Are you watching TV? No, I'm not.
- 2 Are you wearing a watch? ...
- 3 Are you eating something? ...
- 4 Is it raining? ...
- 5 Are you sitting on the floor? ...
- 6 Are you feeling well? ...

# I do/work/like etc. (present simple)



They're looking at their books.  
They **read** a lot.



He's eating an ice-cream.  
He **likes** ice-cream.

**They read / he likes / I work etc. = the present simple:**

I/we/you/they	<b>read</b>	<b>like</b>	<b>work</b>	<b>live</b>	<b>watch</b>	<b>do</b>	<b>have</b>
he/she/it	<b>reads</b>	<b>likes</b>	<b>works</b>	<b>lives</b>	<b>watches</b>	<b>does</b>	<b>has</b>

Remember:

**he works / she lives / it rains etc.**

- I work** in a shop. **My brother works** in a bank. (*not My brother work*)
- Lucy lives** in London. **Her parents live** in Scotland.
- It rains** a lot in winter.

**I have** → **he/she/it has:**

- John has** a shower every day.

**Spelling** (→ Appendix 5):

-es after -s / -sh / -ch:	pass → passes	finish → finishes	watch → watches
-y → -ies:	study → studies	try → tries	
also:	do → does	go → goes	

**B** We use the present simple for things that are true in general, or for things that happen sometimes or all the time:

- I like** big cities.
- Your English is good. You **speak** very well.
- Tim **works** very hard. He **starts** at 7.30 and **finishes** at 8 o'clock in the evening.
- The earth **goes** round the sun.
- We **do** a lot of different things in our free time.
- It **costs** a lot of money to build a hospital.

**always/never/often/usually/sometimes + present simple**

- Sue **always gets** to work early. (*not Sue gets always*)
- I **never eat** breakfast. (*not I eat never*)
- We **often go** away at weekends.
- Mark **usually plays** football on Sundays.
- I **sometimes walk** to work, but not very often.

## 5.1 Write these verbs with -s or -es.

1 (read) she reads      3 (fly) it .....      5 (have) she  
 2 (think) he .....      4 (dance) he .....      6 (finish) it

## 5.2 Complete the sentences about the people in the pictures. Use:

**eat    go    live    play    play    sleep**



1 He plays the piano.      4 ..... tennis.  
 2 They ..... in a very big house.      5 ..... to the cinema a lot.  
 3 ..... a lot of fruit.      6 ..... seven hours a night.

## 5.3 Complete the sentences. Use:

**boil    close    cost    cost    like    like    meet    open    speak    teach    wash**

1 Maria speaks four languages.  
 2 The shops in the city centre usually ..... at 9 o'clock in the morning.  
 3 The City Museum ..... at 5 o'clock in the evening.  
 4 Tina is a teacher. She ..... mathematics to young children.  
 5 My job is very interesting. I ..... a lot of people.  
 6 Peter's car is always dirty. He never ..... it.  
 7 Food is expensive. It ..... a lot of money.  
 8 Shoes are expensive. They ..... a lot of money.  
 9 Water ..... at 100 degrees Celsius.  
 10 Julia and I are good friends. I ..... her and she ..... me.

## 5.4 Write sentences from these words. Use the right form of the verb (arrive or arrives etc.).

1 (always / early / Sue / arrive) Sue always arrives early.  
 2 (to the cinema / never / I / go) I .....  
 3 (work / Martina / hard / always)  
 4 (like / chocolate / children / usually)  
 5 (Juha / parties / enjoy / always)  
 6 (often / people's names / I / forget)  
 7 (television / Tim / watch / never)  
 8 (usually / dinner / we / have / at 7.30)  
 9 (Jenny / always / nice clothes / wear)

## 5.5 Write sentences about yourself. Use always/never/often/usually/sometimes.

1 (watch TV in the evening) I usually watch TV in the evening.  
 2 (read in bed) I .....  
 3 (get up before 7 o'clock)  
 4 (go to work/school by bus)  
 5 (drink coffee in the morning)

## I don't ... (present simple negative)

The present simple negative is **don't/doesn't + verb**:



**She doesn't drink coffee.**



**He doesn't like his job.**

**positive**

I	<b>work</b>
we	<b>like</b>
you	<b>do</b>
they	<b>have</b>
he	<b>works</b>
she	<b>likes</b>
it	<b>does</b>
	<b>has</b>

**negative**

I	<b>don't</b>	<b>work</b>
we	<b>(do not)</b>	<b>like</b>
you		<b>do</b>
they		<b>have</b>
he	<b>doesn't</b>	<b>work</b>
she	<b>(does not)</b>	<b>like</b>
it		<b>do</b>
		<b>have</b>

- I **drink** coffee, but I **don't drink** tea.
- Sue **drinks** tea, but she **doesn't drink** coffee.
- You **don't work** very hard.
- We **don't watch** television very often.
- The weather is usually nice. It **doesn't rain** very often.
- Gary and Nicole **don't know** many people.

**B** Remember:

I/we/you/they **don't ...**       **I don't** like football.  
 he/she/it      **doesn't ...**       **He doesn't** like football.

- I **don't** like Fred and **Fred doesn't** like me. (*not Fred don't like*)
- My car **doesn't** use much petrol. (*not My car don't use*)
- Sometimes he is late, but it **doesn't happen** very often.

We use **don't/doesn't + infinitive** (don't like / doesn't speak / doesn't do etc.):

- I **don't like** washing the car. I **don't do** it very often.
- Sarah **speaks** Spanish, but she **doesn't speak** Italian. (*not doesn't speaks*)
- Bill **doesn't do** his job very well. (*not Bill doesn't his job*)
- Paula **doesn't usually have** breakfast. (*not doesn't ... has*)

## 6.1 Write the negative.

- 1 I play the piano very well.
- 2 Jane plays the piano very well.
- 3 They know my phone number.
- 4 We work very hard.
- 5 He has a bath every day.
- 6 You do the same thing every day.

I don't play the piano very well.  
 Jane  
 They

## 6.2 Study the information and write sentences with like.



Do you like ... ?

	BEN AND SOPHIE	KATE	YOU
1 classical music?	yes	no	?
2 boxing?	no	yes	
3 horror films?	yes	no	

- 1 Ben and Sophie like classical music.  
 Kate  
 I classical music
- 2 Ben and Sophie  
 Kate  
 I
- 3

## 6.3 Write about yourself. Use:

I never ... or I often ... or I don't ... very often.

- 1 (watch TV) I don't watch TV very often. or I never watch TV. or I often watch TV.
- 2 (go to the theatre)
- 3 (ride a bicycle)
- 4 (eat in restaurants)
- 5 (travel by train)

## 6.4 Complete the sentences. All of them are negative. Use don't/doesn't + these verbs:

cost    go    know    read    see    use    wear

- 1 I buy a newspaper every day, but sometimes I don't read it.
- 2 Paul has a car, but he doesn't drive it very often.
- 3 Paul and his friends like films, but they don't go to the cinema very often.
- 4 Amanda is married, but she doesn't wear a ring.
- 5 I don't know much about politics. I'm not interested in it.
- 6 The Regent Hotel isn't expensive. It doesn't cost much to stay there.
- 7 Brian lives very near us, but we don't see him very often.

## 6.5 Put the verb into the correct form, positive or negative.

- 1 Margaret speaks four languages – English, French, German and Spanish (speak)
- 2 I don't like my job. It's very boring. (like)
- 3 'Where's Martin?' 'I'm sorry. I don't know.' (know)
- 4 Sue is a very quiet person. She doesn't talk very much. (talk)
- 5 Andy drinks a lot of tea. It's his favourite drink. (drink)
- 6 It's not true! I don't believe it! (believe)
- 7 That's a very beautiful picture. I like it very much. (like)
- 8 Mark is a vegetarian. He doesn't eat meat. (eat)

# Do you ... ? (present simple questions)

A

We use **do/does** in present simple questions:

positive

I	<b>work</b>
we	<b>like</b>
you	<b>do</b>
they	<b>have</b>
he	<b>works</b>
she	<b>likes</b>
it	<b>does</b>
	<b>has</b>

question

<b>do</b>	I we you they	<b>work?</b> <b>like?</b> <b>do?</b> <b>have?</b>
<b>does</b>	he she it	



B

Study the word order:

**do/does** + **subject** + **infinitive**

Where	<b>Do</b>	you	<b>work</b>	on Sundays?
How often	<b>Do</b>	your friends	<b>live</b>	near here?
What	<b>Does</b>	Chris	<b>play</b>	tennis?
How much	<b>do</b>	your parents	<b>live?</b>	
	<b>do</b>	you	<b>wash</b>	your hair?
	<b>does</b>	this word	<b>mean?</b>	
	<b>does</b>	it	<b>cost</b>	to fly to Rome?

Questions with **always/usually/often**:

What	<b>Do</b>	you	<b>always</b>	<b>have</b>	<b>breakfast?</b>
	<b>Does</b>	Chris	<b>often</b>	<b>phone</b>	<b>you?</b>
	<b>do</b>	you	<b>usually</b>	<b>do</b>	<b>at weekends?</b>

**What do you do?** = What's your job?

'What do you do?' 'I work in a bank.'

Remember:

**do** I/we/you/they ...  
**does** he/she/it ...

**Do they like music?**  
 **Does he like music?**

Short answers

<b>Yes,</b>	I/we/you/they <b>do.</b>	<b>No,</b>	I/we/you/they <b>don't.</b>
	he/she/it <b>does.</b>		he/she/it <b>doesn't.</b>

- 'Do you play tennis?' 'No, I don't.'
- 'Do your parents speak English?' 'Yes, they do.'
- 'Does Gary work hard?' 'Yes, he does.'
- 'Does your sister live in London?' 'No, she doesn't.'

# Exercises

# Unit 7

## 7.1 Write questions with Do ... ? and Does ... ?

- 1 I like chocolate. How about you?
- 2 I play tennis. How about you?
- 3 You live near here. How about Lucy?
- 4 Tom plays tennis. How about his friends?
- 5 You speak English. How about your brother?
- 6 I do yoga every morning. How about you?
- 7 Sue often goes away. How about Paul?
- 8 I want to be famous. How about you?
- 9 You work hard. How about Anna?

Do you like chocolate?

you

Lucy

?  
?  
?  
?  
?  
?  
?  
?  
?

## 7.2 Make questions from these words + do/does. Put the words in the right order.

- 1 (where / live / your parents)
- 2 (you / early / always / get up)
- 3 (how often / TV / you / watch)
- 4 (you / want / what / for dinner)
- 5 (like / you / football)
- 6 (your brother / like / football)
- 7 (what / you / do / in your free time)
- 8 (your sister / work / where)
- 9 (to the cinema / often / you / go)
- 10 (what / mean / this word)
- 11 (often / snow / it / here)
- 12 (go / usually / to bed / what time / you)
  
- 13 (how much / to phone New York / it / cost)
  
- 14 (you / for breakfast / have / usually / what)

Where do your parents live?

Do you always get up early?

?  
?  
?  
?  
?  
?  
?  
?  
?  
?  
?  
?  
?  
?  
?  
?  
?  
?

## 7.3 Complete the questions. Use these verbs:



do

do

enjoy

go

like

start

teach

work



1

What **do you do** ?

it?

2

in the morning?

3

on Saturdays?

4

to work?

5

How

6

And your husband. What

7

What

8

his job?

I work in a bookshop.  
It's OK.

At 9 o'clock.

Sometimes.

Usually by bus.

He's a teacher.

Science.

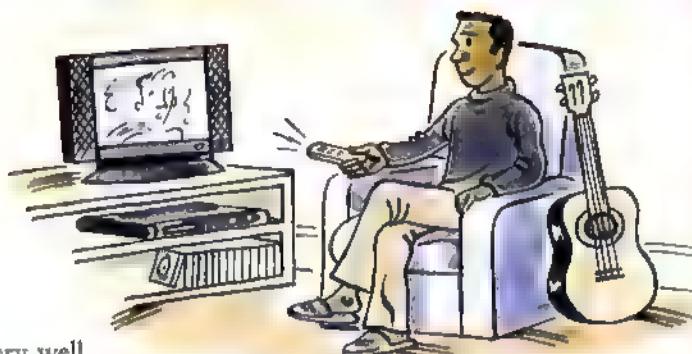
Yes, he loves it.

## 7.4 Write short answers (Yes, he does. / No, I don't. etc.).

- 1 Do you watch TV a lot?
- 2 Do you live in a big city?
- 3 Do you often ride a bicycle?
- 4 Does it rain a lot where you live?
- 5 Do you play the piano?

No, I don't. or Yes, I do.

# I am doing (present continuous) and I do (present simple)



Jack is watching television.  
He is *not* playing the guitar.

But Jack has a guitar.  
He often plays it and he plays very well.

Jack **plays** the guitar,  
but he is **not playing** the guitar now.

Is he playing the guitar?	No, he isn't.	(present continuous)
Does he play the guitar?	Yes, he does.	(present simple)

## B

*Present continuous (I am doing)* = now, at the time of speaking:

### I'm doing

past	now	future
□ Please be quiet. I'm working. ( <i>not</i> I work)		
□ Tom is having a shower at the moment. ( <i>not</i> Tom has)		
□ Take an umbrella with you. It's raining.		
□ You can turn off the television. I'm not watching it.		
□ Why are you under the table? What are you doing?		

## C

*Present simple (I do)* = in general, all the time or sometimes:

### I do

past	now	future
□ I work every day from 9 o'clock to 5.30.		
□ Tom has a shower every morning.		
□ It rains a lot in winter.		
□ I don't watch television very often.		
□ What do you usually do at the weekend?		

## D

We do *not* use these verbs in the present continuous (I am -ing):

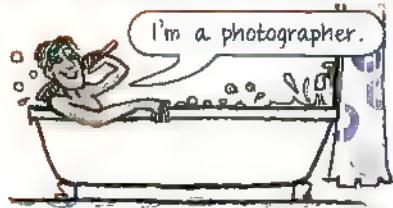
like	love	want	know	understand	remember	depend
prefer	hate	need	mean	believe	forget	

Use only the present simple with these verbs (I want / do you like? etc.):

- I'm tired. I want to go home. (*not* I'm wanting)
- 'Do you know that girl?' 'Yes, but I don't remember her name.'
- I don't understand. What do you mean?

## 8.1 Answer the questions about the pictures.

1



Does he take photographs? Yes, he does.  
 Is he taking a photograph? No, he isn't.  
 What is he doing?  
 He's having a bath.

2



Is she driving a bus?  
 Does she drive a bus?  
 What is she doing?

3



Does he clean windows?  
 Is he cleaning a window?  
 What is he doing?

4



Are they teaching?  
 Do they teach?  
 What do they do?

## 8.2 Complete the sentences with am/is/are or do/don't/does/doesn't.

- 1 Excuse me, do you speak English?
- 2 'Where's Kate?' 'I know.'
- 3 What's funny? Why you laughing?
- 4 'What your sister do?' 'She's a dentist.'
- 5 It raining. I want to go out in the rain.
- 6 'Where you come from?' 'Canada.'
- 7 How much it cost to send a letter to Canada?
- 8 Steve is a good tennis player, but he play very often.

## 8.3 Put the verb in the present continuous (I am doing) or the present simple (I do).

- 1 Excuse me, do you speak (you/speak) English?
- 2 'Where's Tom?' 'He's having (he/have) a shower.'
- 3 I don't watch ... (I/not/watch) television very often.
- 4 Listen! Somebody sing. (sing).
- 5 Sandra is tired. (she/want) to go home now.
- 6 How often (you/read) a newspaper?
- 7 'Excuse me, but (you/sit) in my place.' 'Oh, I'm sorry.'
- 8 I'm sorry, (I/not/understand). Can you speak more slowly?
- 9 It's late. (I/go) home now.  
(you/come) with me?
- 10 What time (your father / finish) work every day?
- 11 You can turn off the radio. (I/not/listen) to it.
- 12 'Where's Paul?' 'In the kitchen.' (he/cook) something?
- 13 Martin (not/usually/drive) to work. He  
(usually/walk)
- 14 Sue (not/like) coffee. (she/prefer) tea.

# I have ... and I've got ...

You can say I have or I've got, he has or he's got:

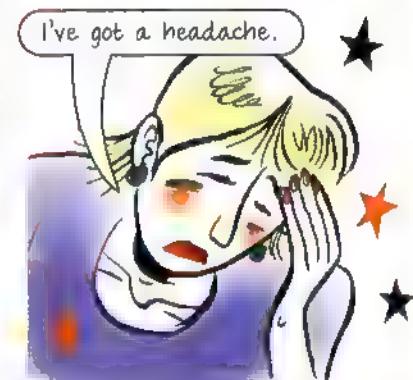
I we you they	<b>have</b>
he she it	<b>has</b>

or

I we you they	<b>have got</b>	(I've got) (we've got) (you've got) (they've got)
he she it	<b>has got</b>	(he's got) (she's got) (it's got)

or

short form



- I have blue eyes. or I've got blue eyes.
- Tim has two sisters. or Tim has got two sisters.
- Our car has four doors. or Our car has got four doors.
- Sarah isn't feeling well. She has a headache. or She's got a headache.
- They like animals. They have a horse, three dogs and six cats. or They've got a horse ...

## B

I haven't got / have you got? etc.

negative

I we you they	<b>have not</b> (haven't)	<b>got</b>
he she it	<b>has not</b> (hasn't)	

question

<b>have</b>	I we you they	<b>got?</b>
<b>has</b>	he she it	

short answers

Yes, No,	I we you they	<b>have.</b> <b>haven't.</b>
Yes, No,	he she it	<b>has.</b> <b>hasn't.</b>

- I've got a motorbike, but I haven't got a car.
- Tracey and Jeff haven't got any children.
- It's a nice house, but it hasn't got a garden.
- 'Have you got a camera?' 'No, I haven't.'
- 'What have you got in your bag?' 'Nothing. It's empty.'
- 'Has Helen got a car?' 'Yes, she has.'
- What kind of car has she got?

## C

I don't have / do you have? etc.

In negatives and questions you can also use do/does ... :

- They don't have any children. (= They haven't got any children.)
- It's a nice house, but it doesn't have a garden. (= it hasn't got a garden)
- Does Helen have a car? (= Has Helen got a car?)
- What do you have in your bag? (= What have you got in your bag?)

# Exercises

## 9.1 Write the short form with got (we've got / he hasn't got etc.).

1 we have got ... **we've got** ... 3 they have got ..... 5 it has got .....  
 2 he has got ..... 4 she has not got ..... 6 I have not got

## 9.2 Read the questions and answers. Then write sentences about Mark.

1 Have you got a car? 2 Have you got a computer? 3 Have you got a dog? 4 Have you got a mobile phone? 5 Have you got a watch? 6 Have you got any brothers or sisters?	 No. Yes. No. No. Yes. Yes, two brothers and a sister.	1 He hasn't got a car. 2 He 3 4 5 6
--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------	-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------	----------------------------------------------------

What about you? Write sentences with I've got or I haven't got.

7 (a computer)  
 8 (a dog)  
 9 (a bike)  
 10 (brothers/sisters)

## 9.3 Write these sentences with got (I've got / have you got etc.). The meaning is the same.

1 They have two children.  
 2 She doesn't have a key.  
 3 He has a new job.  
 4 They don't have much money.  
 5 Do you have an umbrella?  
 6 We have a lot of work to do.  
 7 I don't have your phone number.  
 8 Does your father have a car?  
 9 How much money do we have?

**They've got two children.**  
**She hasn't got a key.**

## 9.4 Write have got ('ve got), has got ('s got), haven't got or hasn't got.

1 Sarah ... **hasn't got** ... a car. She goes everywhere by bicycle.  
 2 They like animals. They ... **'ve got** ... three dogs and two cats.  
 3 Charles isn't happy. He ..... a lot of problems.  
 4 They don't read much. They ..... many books.  
 5 'What's wrong?' 'I ..... something in my eye.'  
 6 'Where's my pen?' 'I don't know. I ..... it.'  
 7 Julia wants to go to the concert, but she ..... a ticket.

## 9.5 Complete the sentences. Use have/has got or haven't/hasn't got with:

<b>a lot of friends</b>	<b>four wheels</b>	<b>a headache</b>	<b>six legs</b>
<b>a garden</b>	<b>much time</b>	<b>a key</b>	

1 I'm not feeling well. I ..... **'ve got a headache**.  
 2 It's a nice house, but it ..... **hasn't got a garden**.  
 3 Most cars .....  
 4 Everybody likes Tom. He .....  
 5 I can't open the door. I .....  
 6 An insect .....  
 7 We must hurry. We .....

## was/were

last night



now

Now Robert is at work.

At midnight last night  
he **wasn't** at work.He **was** in bed.  
He **was** asleep.am/is (present) → **was** (past):

- I **am** tired. (now)
- Where **is** Kate? (now)
- The weather **is** good today.

I **was** tired **last night**.  
Where **was** Kate **yesterday**?  
The weather **was** good **last week**.

are (present) → **were** (past):

- You **are** late. (now)
- They **aren't** here. (now)

You **were** late **yesterday**.  
They **weren't** here **last Sunday**.

**B** positive

I	
he	<b>was</b>
she	
it	

negative

I	
he	<b>was not</b> <b>(wasn't)</b>
she	
it	

we	
you	<b>were</b>
they	

we	<b>were not</b> <b>(weren't)</b>
you	
they	

question

I?	
he?	
she?	
it?	

<b>was</b>	
<b>were</b>	

	we?
	you?
	they?

- Last year Rachel **was** 22, so she **is** 23 now.
- When I **was** a child, I **was** afraid of dogs.
- We **were** hungry after the journey, but we **weren't** tired.
- The hotel **was** comfortable, but it **wasn't** expensive.
- Was the weather nice when you **were** on holiday?
- Your shoes are nice. **Were** they expensive?
- Why **were** you late this morning?

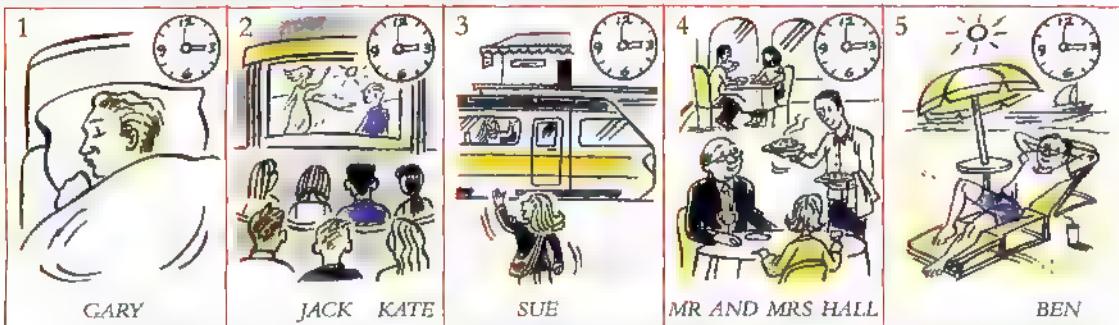
**C** Short answers

Yes,	I/he/she/it <b>was</b> .
	we/you/they <b>were</b> .

No,	I/he/she/it <b>wasn't</b> .
	we/you/they <b>weren't</b> .

- 'Were you late?'    'No, I **wasn't**.'
- 'Was Ted at work yesterday?'    'Yes, he **was**.'
- 'Were Sue and Steve at the party?'    'No, they **weren't**.'

## 10.1 Where were these people at 3 o'clock yesterday afternoon?



1 Gary was in bed.  
2 Jack and Kate  
3 Sue  
4  
5  
6 And you? I

## 10.2 Write am/is/are (present) or was/were (past).

1 Last year she ... **was** 22, so she ... **is** 23 now.  
2 Today the weather ... nice, but yesterday it ... very cold.  
3 I ... hungry. Can I have something to eat?  
4 I feel fine this morning, but I ... very tired last night.  
5 Where ... you at 11 o'clock last Friday morning?  
6 Don't buy those shoes. They ... very expensive.  
7 I like your new jacket. ... it expensive?  
8 This time last year I ... in Paris.  
9 'Where ... the children?' 'I don't know. They ... here a few minutes ago.'

## 10.3 Write was/were or wasn't/weren't.

1 We weren't happy with the hotel. Our room ... **was** very small and it ... **wasn't** clean.  
2 Mark ... at work last week because he ... ill. He's better now.  
3 Yesterday ... a public holiday, so the banks ... closed. They're open today.  
4 '... Kate and Bill at the party?' 'Kate ... there, but Bill ...'  
5 'Where are my keys?' 'I don't know. They ... on the table, but they're not there now.'  
6 You ... at home last night. Where ... you?

## 10.4 Write questions from these words + was/were. Put the words in the right order.

1 (late / you / this morning / why?) <i>Why were you late this morning?</i>	The traffic was bad.
2 (difficult / your exam?) <i></i>	No, it was easy.
3 (last week / where / Sue and Chris?) <i></i>	They were on holiday.
4 (your new camera / how much?) <i></i>	Sixty pounds.
5 (angry / you / yesterday / why?) <i></i>	Because you were late.
6 (nice / the weather / last week?) <i></i>	Yes, it was beautiful.

## worked/got/went etc. (past simple)

They **watch** television every evening.  
(*present simple*)

They **watched** television yesterday evening.  
(*past simple*)

**watched** is the *past simple*:

I/we/you/they he/she/it	<b>watched</b>
----------------------------	----------------

**B**

The past simple is often **-ed** (*regular verbs*). For example:

work → <b>worked</b>	dance → <b>danced</b>
clean → <b>cleaned</b>	stay → <b>stayed</b>
start → <b>started</b>	need → <b>needed</b>

- I clean my teeth every morning. This morning I **cleaned** my teeth.
- Terry **worked** in a bank from 1996 to 2003.
- Yesterday it **rained** all morning. It **stopped** at lunchtime.
- We **enjoyed** the party last night. We **danced** a lot and **talked** to a lot of people. The party **finished** at midnight.

*Spelling* (→ Appendix 5):

try → <b>tried</b>	study → <b>studied</b>	copy → <b>copied</b>
stop → <b>stopped</b>	plan → <b>planned</b>	

**C**

Some verbs are *irregular* (= not regular). The past simple is *not -ed*. Here are some important irregular verbs (see also Appendix 2–3):

begin → <b>began</b>	fall → <b>fell</b>	leave → <b>left</b>	sell → <b>sold</b>
break → <b>broke</b>	find → <b>found</b>	lose → <b>lost</b>	sit → <b>sat</b>
bring → <b>brought</b>	fly → <b>flew</b>	make → <b>made</b>	sleep → <b>slept</b>
build → <b>built</b>	forget → <b>forgot</b>	meet → <b>met</b>	speak → <b>spoke</b>
buy → <b>bought</b>	get → <b>got</b>	pay → <b>paid</b>	stand → <b>stood</b>
catch → <b>caught</b>	give → <b>gave</b>	put → <b>put</b>	take → <b>took</b>
come → <b>came</b>	go → <b>went</b>	read → <b>read</b> (red)*	tell → <b>told</b>
do → <b>did</b>	have → <b>had</b>	ring → <b>rang</b>	think → <b>thought</b>
drink → <b>drank</b>	hear → <b>heard</b>	say → <b>said</b>	win → <b>won</b>
eat → <b>ate</b>	know → <b>knew</b>	see → <b>saw</b>	write → <b>wrote</b>

\* pronounced 'red'

- I usually get up early, but this morning I **got** up at 9 o'clock.
- We **did** a lot of work yesterday.
- Caroline **went** to the cinema three times last week.
- James **came** into the room, **took** off his coat and **sat** down.

## 11.1 Complete the sentences. Use a verb from the box.

clean die enjoy finish happen open rain start stay want

- 1 I cleaned my teeth three times yesterday.
- 2 It was hot in the room, so I ..... the window.
- 3 The film was very long. It ..... at 7.15 and ..... at 10 o'clock.
- 4 When I was a child, I ..... to be a doctor.
- 5 The accident ..... last Sunday afternoon.
- 6 It's a nice day today, but yesterday it ..... all day.
- 7 We ..... our holiday last year. We ..... at a very nice place.
- 8 Anna's grandfather ..... when he was 90 years old.

## 11.2 Write the past simple of these verbs.

1 get <u>got</u>	4 pay <u>paid</u>	7 go <u>went</u>	10 know <u>knew</u>
2 see <u>saw</u>	5 visit <u>visited</u>	8 think <u>thought</u>	11 put <u>put</u>
3 play <u>played</u>	6 buy <u>bought</u>	9 copy <u>copied</u>	12 speak <u>spoke</u>

## 11.3 Read about Lisa's journey to Madrid. Put the verbs in the correct form.



Last Tuesday Lisa (1) flew from London to Madrid. She (2) ..... up at 6 o'clock in the morning and (3) ..... a cup of coffee. At 6.30 she (4) ..... home and (5) ..... to the airport. When she (6) ..... there, she (7) ..... the car, (8) ..... to the airport building, and (9) ..... in. Then she (10) ..... breakfast at a café and (11) ..... for her flight. The plane (12) ..... on time and (13) ..... in Madrid two hours later. Finally she (14) ..... a taxi from the airport to her hotel in the centre of Madrid.

fly, get  
have  
leave, drive  
get, park, walk  
check, have  
wait, depart  
arrive, take

## 11.4 Write sentences about the past (yesterday / last week etc.).

- 1 James always goes to work by car. Yesterday he went to work by car.
- 2 Rachel often loses her keys. She ..... last week.
- 3 Kate meets her friends every evening. She ..... yesterday evening.
- 4 I usually buy two newspapers every day. Yesterday I .....
- 5 We often go to the cinema at weekends. Last Sunday we .....
- 6 I eat an orange every day. Yesterday I .....
- 7 Tom always has a shower in the morning. This morning he .....
- 8 Our friends often come to see us. They ..... last Friday.

## 11.5 Write sentences about what you did yesterday.

- 1 I went to the theatre. 4
- 2 ..... 5
- 3 ..... 6

# I didn't ... Did you ... ?

(past simple negative and questions)

We use **did** in past simple negatives and questions:

infinitive	positive	negative	question
play	I <b>played</b>	I <b>didn't play</b>	I <b>Did you play?</b>
start	we <b>started</b>	we <b>didn't start</b>	we <b>Did you start?</b>
watch	<b>you watched</b>	<b>you didn't watch</b>	<b>you Did you watch?</b>
have	they <b>had</b>	they <b>didn't have</b>	they <b>Did you have?</b>
see	he <b>saw</b>	he <b>didn't see</b>	he <b>Did you see?</b>
do	she <b>did</b>	she <b>didn't do</b>	she <b>Did you do?</b>
go	it <b>went</b>	it <b>didn't go</b>	it <b>Did you go?</b>

B

do/does (present) → did (past):

- I **don't** watch television very often.  
I **didn't** watch television **yesterday**.
- **Does** she often go away?  
**Did** she go away **last week**?

C

We use **did/didn't + infinitive** (watch/play/go etc.):

I <b>watched</b>	but	I <b>didn't watch</b>	(not I <b>didn't watched</b> )
they <b>went</b>		did they <b>go?</b>	(not did they <b>went?</b> )
he <b>had</b>		he <b>didn't have</b>	
you <b>did</b>		did you <b>do?</b>	

- I **played** tennis yesterday, but I **didn't win**.
- 'Did you **do** the shopping?'    'No, I **didn't have** time.'
- We **went** to the cinema, but we **didn't enjoy** the film.

D

Study the word order in questions:

**did + subject + infinitive**

What	<b>Did</b>	your sister	<b>phone</b>	you?
How	<b>did</b>	you	<b>do</b>	last night?
Where	<b>did</b>	the accident	<b>happen?</b>	
		your parents	<b>go</b>	for their holiday?

E

Short answers

Yes,	I/we/you/they he/she/it	<b>did.</b>	No,	I/we/you/they he/she/it	<b>didn't.</b>
------	----------------------------	-------------	-----	----------------------------	----------------

- 'Did you see Joe yesterday?'    'No, I **didn't**.'
- 'Did it rain on Sunday?'    'Yes, it **did**.'
- 'Did Helen come to the party?'    'No, she **didn't**.'
- 'Did your parents have a good holiday?'    'Yes, they **did**.'

## 12.1 Complete these sentences with the verb in the negative.

1 I saw Barbara, but I ..... **didn't see** Jane.  
 2 They worked on Monday, but they ..... on Tuesday.  
 3 We went to the post office, but we ..... to the bank.  
 4 She had a pen, but she ..... any paper.  
 5 Jack did French at school, but he ..... German.

## 12.2 Write questions with Did ... ?

1 I watched TV last night. How about you? **Did you watch TV last night?** ?  
 2 I enjoyed the party. How about you?  
 3 I had a good holiday. How about you?  
 4 I finished work early. How about you?  
 5 I slept well last night. How about you?

## 12.3 What did you do yesterday? Write positive or negative sentences.

1 (watch TV) **I watched TV** ..... or **I didn't watch TV.**  
 2 (get up before 7 o'clock) I .....  
 3 (have a shower)  
 4 (buy a magazine)  
 5 (eat meat)  
 6 (go to bed before 10.30)

## 12.4 Write B's questions. Use:

arrive    cost    go    go to bed late    happen    have a nice time    stay    win

1 A: We went to New York last month. B: Where ..... <b>did you stay</b> ? A: With some friends.	5 A: We came home by taxi. B: How much ..... ? A: Ten pounds.
2 A: I was late for the meeting. B: What time ..... ? A: Half past nine.	6 A: I'm tired this morning. B: ..... ? A: No, but I didn't sleep very well.
3 A: I played tennis this afternoon. B: ..... ? A: No, I lost.	7 A: We went to the beach yesterday. B: ..... ? A: Yes, it was great.
4 A: I had a nice holiday. B: Good. Where ..... ? A: To the mountains.	8 A: The window is broken. B: How ..... ? A: I don't know.

## 12.5 Put the verb in the correct form – positive, negative or question.

1 We went to the cinema, but the film wasn't very good. We ..... **didn't enjoy** it. (enjoy)  
 2 Tim ..... some new clothes yesterday – two shirts, a jacket and a pullover. (buy)  
 3 ' ..... yesterday?' 'No, it was a nice day.' (rain)  
 4 We were tired, so we ..... long at the party. (stay)  
 5 It was very warm in the room, so I ..... a window. (open)  
 6 'Did you phone Chris this morning?' 'No, I ..... time.' (have)  
 7 'I cut my hand this morning.' 'How ..... that?' (do)  
 8 'Why weren't you at the meeting yesterday?' 'I ..... about it.' (know)

## I was doing (past continuous)

4 o'clock



now (6 o'clock)

It is 6 o'clock now.

Paul is at home.

He is watching television.

At 4 o'clock he wasn't at home.

He was at the sports club.

He was swimming in the pool.

He wasn't watching television.

3:30

he started swimming

4:00

he was swimming

4:15

he finished swimming

**B** was/were + -ing is the past continuous:

positive

I			
he	<b>was</b>	<b>doing</b>	
she		<b>watching</b>	
it		<b>playing</b>	
we		<b>swimming</b>	
you	<b>were</b>	<b>living</b>	
they		etc.	

negative

I			
he	<b>was not</b>	<b>was not</b>	
she		(wasn't)	
it			
we		<b>were not</b>	
you		(weren't)	
they			etc.

question

<b>was</b>	I		
	he		
	she		
	it		
<b>were</b>	we		
	you		
	they		etc.

- What **were** you **doing** at 11.30 yesterday? Were you **working**?
- ‘What did he say?’ ‘I don’t know. I **wasn’t listening**’
- It **was raining**, so we didn’t go out.
- In 2001 we **were living** in Canada.
- Today she’s wearing a skirt, but yesterday she **was wearing** trousers
- I woke up early yesterday. It was a beautiful morning. The sun **was shining** and the birds **were singing**.

Spelling (live → living / run → running / lie → lying etc) → Appendix 5

**C** am/is/are + -ing (present) → was/were + -ing (past):

present

- I’m **working** (now).
- It **isn’t raining** (now).
- What **are you doing** (now)?

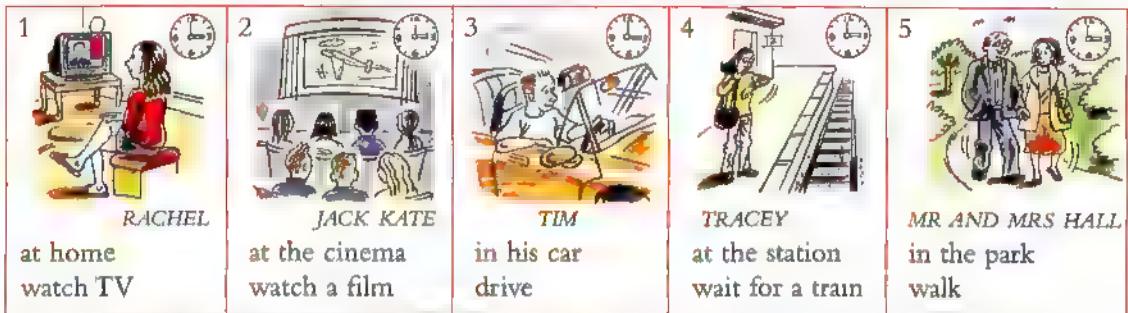
past

- I **was working** at 10.30 last night.
- It **wasn’t raining** when we went out.
- What **were you doing** at three o’clock?

# Exercises

# Unit 13

13.1 Look at the pictures. Where were these people at 3 o'clock yesterday afternoon? And what were they doing? Write two sentences for each picture.



- 1 *Rachel was at home. She was watching TV.*
- 2 *Jack and Kate ... They ...*
- 3 *Tim ...*
- 4 *...*
- 5 *...*
- 6 *And you? I ...*

13.2 Sarah did a lot of things yesterday morning. Look at the pictures and complete the sentences.



- 1 At 8.45 *she was washing her car.*
- 2 At 10.45 she ...
- 3 At 8 o'clock ...
- 4 At 12.10 ...
- 5 At 7.15 ...
- 6 At 9.30 ...

13.3 Complete the questions. Use was/were -ing. Use what/where/why if necessary.

- 1 (you/live) **Where were you living** in 1999?
- 2 (you/do) ..... at 2 o'clock?
- 3 (it/rain) ..... when you got up?
- 4 (Sue/drive) ..... so fast?
- 5 (Tim/wear) ..... a suit yesterday?

In London.  
I was asleep.  
No, it was sunny.  
Because she was late.  
No, a T-shirt and jeans.

13.4 Look at the picture. You saw Joe in the street yesterday afternoon. What was he doing? Write positive or negative sentences.



**Joe**

- 1 (wear / a jacket) *He wasn't wearing a jacket.*
- 2 (carry / a bag)
- 3 (go / to the dentist)
- 4 (eat / an ice-cream)
- 5 (carry / an umbrella)
- 6 (go / home)
- 7 (wear / a hat)
- 8 (ride / a bicycle)

# I was doing (past continuous) and I did (past simple)



Jack was reading a book.

The phone rang.

He stopped reading.

He answered the phone.

What happened? The phone rang. (past simple)

What was Jack doing when the phone rang? } (past continuous)  
He was reading a book.

What did he do when the phone rang? } (past simple)  
He stopped reading and answered the phone.

Jack began reading before the phone rang.

So when the phone rang, he was reading.



## past simple

- A: What did you do yesterday morning?  
B: We played tennis. (from 10 to 11.30)



- Jack read a book yesterday. (= from beginning to end)
- Did you watch the film on television last night?
- It didn't rain while we were on holiday.

- I started work at 9 o'clock and finished at 4.30. At 2.30 I was working.
- It was raining when we went out. (= it started raining before we went out)
- I saw Lucy and Steve this morning. They were waiting at the bus stop.
- Kelly fell asleep while she was reading.

## past continuous

- A: What were you doing at 10.30?  
B: We were playing tennis.



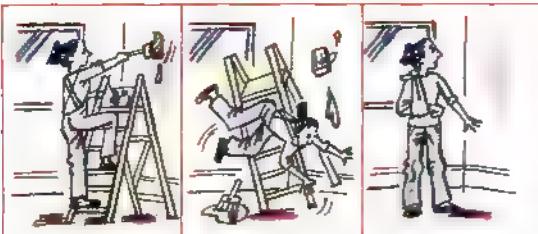
- Jack was reading a book when the phone rang
- Were you watching television when I phoned you?
- It wasn't raining when I got up.

# Exercises

# Unit 14

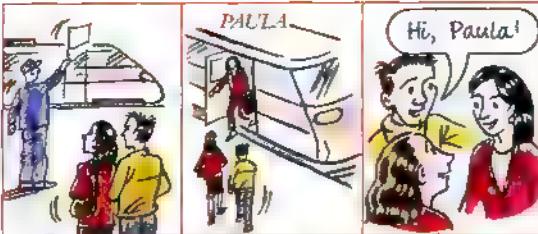
## 14.1 Look at the pictures. Put the verbs in the correct form, past continuous or past simple.

1



Lucy broke (break) her arm last week. It \_\_\_\_\_ (happen) when she \_\_\_\_\_ (paint) her room. She \_\_\_\_\_ (fall) off the ladder.

2



The train \_\_\_\_\_ (arrive) at the station and Paula \_\_\_\_\_ (get) off. Two friends of hers, Jon and Rachel, \_\_\_\_\_ (wait) to meet her.

3



Yesterday Sue \_\_\_\_\_ (walk) along the road when she \_\_\_\_\_ (meet) James. He \_\_\_\_\_ (go) to the station to catch a train and he \_\_\_\_\_ (carry) a bag. They \_\_\_\_\_ (stop) to talk for a few minutes.

## 14.2 Put the verb into the past continuous or past simple.

- 1 A: What were you doing (you/do) when the phone rang (ring)?  
B: I was watching (watch) television.
- 2 A: Was Jane busy when you went to see her?  
B: Yes, she \_\_\_\_\_ (study).
- 3 A: What time \_\_\_\_\_ (the post / arrive) this morning?  
B: It \_\_\_\_\_ (come) while I \_\_\_\_\_ (have) breakfast.
- 4 A: Was Tracey at work today?  
B: No, she \_\_\_\_\_ (not/go) to work. She was ill.
- 5 A: How fast \_\_\_\_\_ (you/drive) when the police \_\_\_\_\_ (stop) you?  
B: I'm not sure, but I \_\_\_\_\_ (not/drive) very fast.
- 6 A: \_\_\_\_\_ (your team / win) the football match yesterday?  
B: The weather was very bad, so we \_\_\_\_\_ (not/play).
- 7 A: How \_\_\_\_\_ (you/break) the window?  
B: We \_\_\_\_\_ (play) football. I \_\_\_\_\_ (kick) the ball and it \_\_\_\_\_ (hit) the window.
- 8 A: \_\_\_\_\_ (you/see) Jenny last night?  
B: Yes, she \_\_\_\_\_ (wear) a very nice jacket.
- 9 A: What \_\_\_\_\_ (you/do) at 2 o'clock this morning?  
B: I was asleep.
- 10 A: I \_\_\_\_\_ (lose) my key last night.  
B: How \_\_\_\_\_ (you/get) into your room?  
A: I \_\_\_\_\_ (climb) in through a window.

## I have done (present perfect 1)



His shoes are dirty



He is cleaning his shoes.

He has cleaned his shoes.  
(= his shoes are clean now)

They are at home.



They are going out.

They have gone out.  
(= they are not at home now)

B has cleaned / have gone etc. is the present perfect (have + past participle):

I we you they	have ('ve) have not (haven't)	cleaned finished started lost done been gone	have has	I we you they he she it	cleaned? finished? started? lost? done? been? gone?
he she it	has ('s) has not (hasn't)	↑ past participle			

regular verbs      irregular verbs

Regular verbs The past participle is **-ed** (the same as the past simple):

clean → I have cleaned    finish → we have finished    start → she has started

Irregular verbs The past participle is not **-ed**.

Sometimes the past simple and past participle are the same:

buy → I bought / I have bought    have → he had / he has had

Sometimes the past simple and past participle are different:

break → I broke / I have broken    see → you saw / you have seen  
fall → it fell / it has fallen    go → they went / they have goneC We use the present perfect for *an action in the past with a result now*:

- I've lost my passport. (= I can't find my passport now)
- 'Where's Rebecca?' 'She's gone to bed.' (= she is in bed now)
- We've bought a new car. (= we have a new car now)
- It's Rachel's birthday tomorrow and I haven't bought her a present. (= I don't have a present for her now)
- 'Bob is away on holiday.' 'Oh, where has he gone?' (= where is he now?)
- Can I take this newspaper? Have you finished with it? (= do you need it now?)

# Exercises

# Unit 15

## 15.1 Look at the pictures. What has happened? Choose from the box.

go to bed close the door	clean his shoes fall down	stop raining have a shower
-----------------------------	------------------------------	-------------------------------

	before	now	
1			He has cleaned his shoes.
2			She
3			They
4			It
5			He
6			The

## 15.2 Complete the sentences with a verb from the box.

break	buy	decide	finish	forget	go	go
invite	read	see	not/see	take	tell	not/tell

- 1 'Can I have a look at your newspaper?' 'Yes, I 've finished with it.'
- 2 I    some new shoes. Do you want to see them?
- 3 'Where is Liz?' 'She's not here. She    out.'
- 4 I'm looking for Paula.    you    her?
- 5 Look! Somebody    that window.
- 6 'Does Lisa know that you're going away?' 'Yes, I    her.'
- 7 I can't find my umbrella. Somebody    it.
- 8 'Where are my glasses?' 'I don't know. I    them.'
- 9 I'm looking for Sarah. Where    she    ?
- 10 I know that woman, but I    her name.
- 11 Sue is having a party tonight. She    a lot of people.
- 12 What are you going to do?    you    ?
- 13 A: Does Bill know about the meeting tomorrow?  
B: I don't think so. I    him.
- 14 'Do you want this magazine?' 'No, I    it, thanks.'

# I've just ... I've already ... I haven't ... yet (present perfect 2)

## A I've just ...

**just** = a short time ago

- A: Are Diane and Paul here?  
B: Yes, they've **just arrived**.
- A: Are you hungry?  
B: No, I've **just had** dinner.
- A: Is Tom here?  
B: No, I'm afraid he's **just gone**.  
(= he **has** just gone)



They **have just arrived**.

## B I've already ...

**already** = before you expected / before I expected

- A: What time are Diane and Paul coming?  
B: They've **already arrived**.  
(= before you expected)
- It's only 9 o'clock and Anna **has already gone** to bed. (= before I expected)
- A: Jon, this is Emma.  
B: Yes, I know. We've **already met**.



## C I haven't ... yet / Have you ... yet?

**yet** = until now

We use **yet** in negative sentences and questions. **Yet** is usually at the end.

**yet** in negative sentences (I haven't ... yet)

- A: Are Diane and Paul here?  
B: No, they **haven't arrived yet**.  
(but B expects Diane and Paul to arrive soon)
- A: Does James know that you're going away?  
B: No, I **haven't told** him **yet**.  
(but B is going to tell him soon)
- Silvia has bought a new dress, but she **hasn't worn** it **yet**.



The film **hasn't started yet**.

**yet** in questions (Have you ... yet?)

- A: **Have** Diane and Paul **arrived yet**?  
B: No, not yet. We're still waiting for them.
- A: **Has** Nicole **started** her new job **yet**?  
B: No, she starts next week.
- A: This is my new dress.  
B: Oh, it's nice. **Have** you **worn** it **yet**?



# Exercises

# Unit 16

## 16.1 Write a sentence with just for each picture.



1 They've just arrived.  
2 He

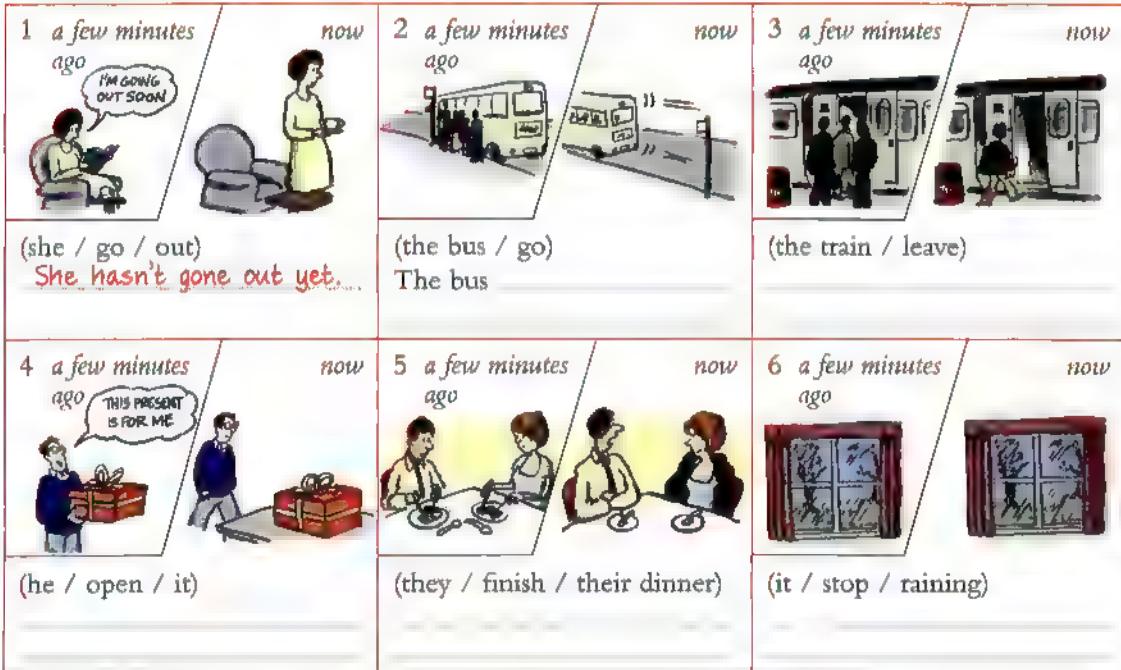
3 They  
4 The race

## 16.2 Complete the sentences. Use already + present perfect.

1 What time is Paul arriving?  
2 Do your friends want to see the film?  
3 Don't forget to phone Tom.  
4 When is Martin going away?  
5 Do you want to read the newspaper?  
6 When does Sarah start her new job?

He's already arrived.  
No, they  
I  
He  
I  
She

## 16.3 Write a sentence with just (They've just ... / She's just ... etc.) or a negative sentence with yet (They haven't ... yet / She hasn't ... yet etc.).



## 16.4 Write questions with yet.

- Your friend has got a new job. Perhaps she has started it. You ask her:  
**Have you started your new job yet?**
- Your friend has some new neighbours. Perhaps he has met them. You ask him:  
**Have you met your new neighbours yet?**
- Your friend must pay her phone bill. Perhaps she has paid it. You ask her:  
**Have you paid your phone bill yet?**
- Tom was trying to sell his car. Perhaps he has sold it. You ask a friend about Tom:  
**Has Tom sold his car yet?**

## Have you ever ... ? (present perfect 3)



We use the **present perfect** (**have been / have had / have played** etc.) when we talk about a time from the past until now – for example, a person's life:

## Have you ever been to Japan?

— time from the past until now —

past

now

- 'Have you **been** to France?'    'No, I **haven't**.'
- I've **been** to Canada, but I **haven't been** to the United States.
- Mary is an interesting person. She **has had** many different jobs and **has lived** in many places.
- I've **seen** that woman before, but I can't remember where.
- How many times **has** Brazil **won** the World Cup?
- 'Have you **read** this book?'    'Yes, I've **read** it twice.' (twice = two times)

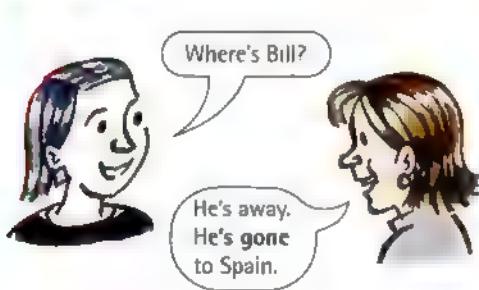
## B

**present perfect + ever** (in questions) and **never**:

- 'Has Ann **ever been** to Australia?'    'Yes, once.' (once = one time)
- 'Have you **ever played** golf?'    'Yes, I play a lot.'
- My sister **has never travelled** by plane.
- I've **never ridden** a horse.
- 'Who is that man?'    'I don't know. I've **never seen** him before.'

## C

## gone and been



Bill **has gone** to Spain.  
(= he is in Spain *now*)



Bill **has been** to Spain.  
(= he went to Spain, but now he is back)

Compare:

- I can't find Susan. Where **has she gone**? (= where is she *now*?)
- Oh, hello Susan! I was looking for you. Where **have you been**?

# Exercises

# Unit 17

17.1 You are asking Helen questions beginning Have you ever ... ?  
Write the questions.

Helen



- 1 (London?)
- 2 (play / golf?)
- 3 (Australia?)
- 4 (lose / your passport?)
- 5 (fly / in a helicopter?)
- 6 (win / a race?)
- 7 (New York?)
- 8 (drive / a bus?)
- 9 (break / your leg?)

Have you ever been to London?  
Have you ever played golf?

Have

No, never.  
Yes, many times.  
Yes, once.  
No, never  
Yes, a few times.  
No, never.  
Yes, twice.  
No, never.  
Yes, once.

17.2 Write sentences about Helen. (Look at her answers in Exercise 17.1.)

- 1 (New York) She's been to New York twice.
- 2 (Australia) She
- 3 (win / a race)
- 4 (fly / in a helicopter)

Now write about yourself. How often have you done these things?

- 5 (New York) I
- 6 (play / tennis)
- 7 (drive / a lorry)
- 8 (be / late for work or school)

17.3 Mary is 65 years old. She has had an interesting life. What has she done?



have	be
do	write
travel	meet

all over the world	many different jobs
ten books	

a lot of interesting things	a lot of interesting people
	married three times

- 1 She has had many different jobs.
- 2 She
- 3
- 4
- 5
- 6

17.4 Write gone or been.

- 1 Bill is on holiday at the moment. He's gone to Spain.
- 2 'Where's Jane?' 'She's not here. I think she's gone to the bank.'
- 3 Hello, Sue. Where have you been? Have you been to the bank?
- 4 'Have you ever been to Mexico?' 'No, never.'
- 5 My parents aren't at home at the moment. They've been out.
- 6 There's a new restaurant in town. Have you been to it?
- 7 Rebecca knows Paris well. She's been there many times.
- 8 Helen was here earlier, but I think she's gone now.

## How long have you ... ? (present perfect 4)

Jane is on holiday in Ireland.  
She is there now.

She arrived in Ireland on Monday.  
Today is Thursday.

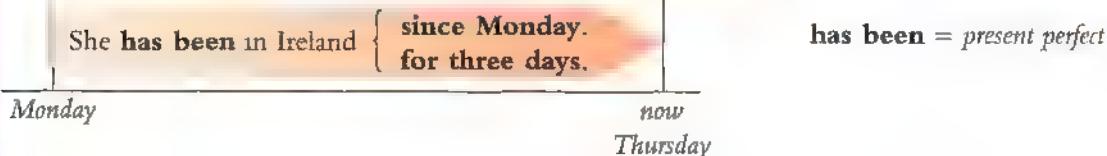
How long has she been in Ireland?

She has been in Ireland { since Monday.  
for three days.



Compare is and has been:

She is in Ireland      is = present  
now.



Compare:

*present simple*

Dan and Kate are married.

Are you married?

Do you know Lisa?

I know Lisa.

Vicky lives in London.

I have a car.

*present perfect simple (have been / have lived / have known etc.)*

They have been married for five years.

(not They are married for five years.)

How long have you been married?

(not How long are you married?)

How long have you known her?

(not How long do you know her?)

I've known her for a long time.

(not I know her for ...)

How long has she lived in London?

She has lived there all her life.

How long have you had your car?

I've had it since April.

*present continuous*

I'm learning German.

David is watching TV.

It's raining.

*present perfect continuous (have been + -ing)*

How long have you been learning German?

(not How long are you learning German?)

I've been learning German for two years.

How long has he been watching TV?

He's been (= He has been) watching TV since 5 o'clock.

It's been (= It has been) raining all day.

# Exercises

# Unit 18

## 18.1 Complete these sentences.

- 1 Jane is in Ireland. She has been in Ireland since Monday.
- 2 I know Lisa. I have known her for a long time.
- 3 Sarah and Andy are married. They ..... married since 1999.
- 4 Brian is ill. He ..... ill for the last few days.
- 5 We live in Scott Road. We ..... there for a long time.
- 6 Catherine works in a bank. She ..... in a bank for five years.
- 7 Alan has a headache. He ..... a headache since he got up this morning.
- 8 I'm learning English. I ..... English for six months.

## 18.2 Make questions with How long ... ?

- 1 Jane is on holiday.
- 2 Scott and Judy are in Brazil.
- 3 I know Amy.
- 4 Diana is learning Italian.
- 5 My brother lives in Canada.
- 6 I'm a teacher.
- 7 It is raining.

How long has she been on holiday?

How long

How long ..... you

?

?

?

?

?

?

?

## 18.3



Look at the pictures and complete the sentences with:

for ten minutes	all day	all her life
<u>for ten years</u>	<u>since he was 20</u>	<u>since Sunday</u>

1 They have been married for ten years.

2 She

3 They

4 The sun

5 She

6 He

## 18.4 Which is right?

- 1 Mark lives / has lived in Canada since April. (has lived is right)
- 2 Jane and I are friends. I know / I've known her very well.
- 3 Jane and I are friends. I know / I've known her for a long time.
- 4 A: Sorry I'm late. How long are you waiting / have you been waiting?  
B: Not long. Only five minutes.
- 5 Martin works / has worked in a hotel now. He likes his job a lot.
- 6 Ruth is reading the newspaper. She is reading / She has been reading it for two hours.
- 7 'How long do you live / have you lived in this house?' 'About ten years'
- 8 'Is that a new coat?' 'No, I have / I've had this coat for a long time.'
- 9 Tom is / has been in Spain at the moment. He is / He has been there for the last three days.

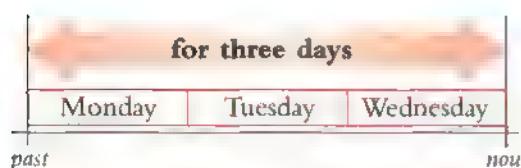
## for since ago

## A for and since

We use **for** and **since** to say *how long*:

- Jane is in Ireland. She **has been there** **for three days.**  
**since Monday.**

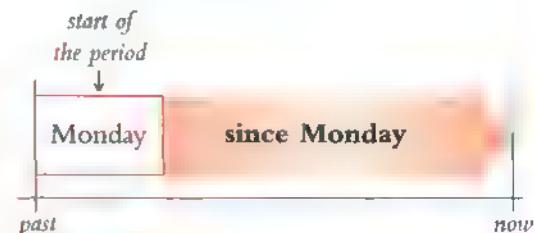
We use **for** + a period of time  
(**three days / two years etc.**):



<b>for</b>	
three days	ten minutes
an hour	two hours
a week	four weeks
a month	six months
five years	a long time

- Richard has been in Canada **for six months.** (*not since six months*)
- We've been waiting **for two hours.** (*not since two hours*)
- I've lived in London **for a long time.**

We use **since** + the start of the period  
(**Monday / 9 o'clock etc.**):



<b>since</b>	
Monday	Wednesday
9 o'clock	12.30
24 July	Christmas
January	I was ten years old
1985	we arrived

- Richard has been in Canada **since January.** (= from January to now)
- We've been waiting **since 9 o'clock.** (= from 9 o'clock to now)
- I've lived in London **since I was ten years old.**

## B ago

**ago** = before now:

- Susan started her new job **three weeks ago.** (= three weeks before now)
- 'When did Tom go out?' 'Ten minutes ago.' (= ten minutes before now)
- I had dinner **an hour ago.**
- Life was very different **a hundred years ago.**

We use **ago** with the **past** (started/did/had/was etc.).

Compare **ago** and **for**:

- When did Jane **arrive** in Ireland?  
She **arrived** in Ireland **three days ago.**
- How long has she **been** in Ireland?  
She **has been** in Ireland **for three days.**

## 19.1 Write for or since.

- 1 Jane has been in Ireland since Monday.
- 2 Jane has been in Ireland for three days.
- 3 My aunt has lived in Australia ..... 15 years.
- 4 Jennifer is in her office. She has been there ..... 7 o'clock.
- 5 India has been an independent country ..... 1947.
- 6 The bus is late. We've been waiting ..... 20 minutes.
- 7 Nobody lives in those houses. They have been empty ..... many years.
- 8 Michael has been ill ..... a long time. He has been in hospital ..... October.

## 19.2 Answer these questions. Use ago.

- 1 When was your last meal? Three hours ago.
- 2 When was the last time you were ill?
- 3 When did you last go to the cinema?
- 4 When was the last time you were in a car?
- 5 When was the last time you went on holiday?

## 19.3 Complete the sentences. Use for or ago with these words.

1 Jane arrived in Ireland	<u>three days ago</u>	(three days)
2 Jane has been in Ireland	<u>for three days</u>	(three days)
3 Lynn and Mark have been married	.....	(20 years)
4 Lynn and Mark got married	.....	(20 years)
5 Dan arrived	.....	(an hour)
6 I bought these shoes	.....	(a few days)
7 Silvia has been learning English	.....	(six months)
8 Have you known Lisa	.....	? (a long time)

## 19.4 Complete the sentences with for or since.

- 1 (Jane is in Ireland – she arrived there three days ago)  
Jane has been in Ireland for three days.
- 2 (Jack is here – he arrived on Tuesday)  
Jack has .....
- 3 (It's raining – it started an hour ago)  
It's been .....
- 4 (I know Sue – I first met her in 2002)  
I've .....
- 5 (Claire and Matthew are married – they got married six months ago)  
Claire and Matthew have .....
- 6 (Liz is studying medicine at university – she started three years ago)  
Liz has .....
- 7 (David plays the piano – he started when he was seven years old)  
David has .....

## 19.5 Write sentences about yourself. Begin your sentences with:

I've lived ... I've been ... I've been learning ... I've known ... I've had ...

- 1 I've lived in this town for three years.
- 2
- 3
- 4
- 5

# I have done (present perfect) and I did (past)

With a **finished time** (**yesterday / last week etc.**), we use the past (**arrived/saw/was etc.**):

*past + finished time*



Do *not* use the present perfect (**have arrived / have done / have been etc.**) with a finished time:

- I saw Paula **yesterday**.** (*not I have seen*)
- Where were you **on Sunday afternoon?**** (*not Where have you been*)
- We didn't have a holiday **last year**.** (*not We haven't had*)
- 'What did you do **last night?**'    'I stayed at home.'**
- William Shakespeare lived from 1564 to 1616.** He was a writer. He wrote many plays and poems.

Use the past to ask **When ... ?** or **What time ... ?**:

- When did you buy your computer?** (*not When have you bought?*)
- What time did Andy go out?** (*not What time has Andy gone out*)

B

Compare:

*present perfect*

- I have lost my key.**  
(= I can't find it *now*)
- Ben has gone home.**  
(= he isn't here *now*)
- Have you seen Kate?**  
(= where is she *now*?)



*past*

- I lost my key **last week**.**
- Ben went home **ten minutes ago**.**
- Did you see Kate **on Saturday?****



*finished time*

- Have you ever been to Spain?**  
(= in your life, until *now*)
- My friend is a writer. He has written many books.**
- The letter hasn't arrived yet.**
- We've lived in Singapore for six years.**  
(= we live there *now*)

*past*

- Did you go to Spain **last year**?**
- Shakespeare wrote many plays and poems.**
- The letter didn't arrive **yesterday**.**
- We lived in Glasgow for six years, but now we live in Singapore.**

## 20.1 Complete the answers to the questions.

- 1 Have you seen Kate?
- 2 Have you started your new job?
- 3 Have your friends arrived?
- 4 Has Sarah gone away?
- 5 Have you worn your new suit?

Yes, I saw her five minutes ago.  
 Yes, I last week.  
 Yes, they at 5 o'clock.  
 Yes, on Friday.  
 Yes, yesterday.

## 20.2 Are these sentences OK? Correct the verbs that are wrong. (The verbs are underlined.)

- 1 I've lost my key. I can't find it.
- 2 Have you seen Kate yesterday?
- 3 I've finished my work at 2 o'clock.
- 4 I'm ready now. I've finished my work.
- 5 What time have you finished your work?
- 6 Sue isn't here. She's gone out.
- 7 Steve's grandmother has died two years ago.
- 8 Where have you been last night?

OK  
Did you see

## 20.3 Put the verb in the present perfect or past.

- 1 My friend is a writer. He has written (write) many books.
- 2 We didn't have (not/have) a holiday last year.
- 3 I play tennis yesterday afternoon.
- 4 What time you/go to bed last night?
- 5 (you/ever/meet) a famous person?
- 6 The weather not/be very good yesterday.
- 7 Kathy travels a lot. She visit many countries.
- 8 I switch off the light before going out this morning.
- 9 I live in New York now, but I live in Mexico for many years.
- 10 'What's Canada like? Is it beautiful?' 'I don't know. I not/be there.'

## 20.4 Put the verb in the present perfect or past.

- 1 A: Have you ever been (you/ever/be) to Florida?  
 B: Yes, we went (go) there on holiday two years ago.  
 A: you/have a good time?  
 B: Yes, it be great.
- 2 A: Where's Alan? (you/see) him?  
 B: Yes, he go out a few minutes ago.  
 A: And Rachel?  
 B: I don't know. I not/see her.
- 3 Rose works in a factory. She work there for six months.  
 Before that she be a waitress in a restaurant. She work there for two years, but she not/enjoy it very much.
- 4 A: Do you know Martin's sister?  
 B: I see her a few times, but I never/speak to her.  
 A: Yes. I meet her at a party last week. She's very nice.

## is done was done (passive 1)



The office **is cleaned** every day.

The office **was cleaned** yesterday.

Compare active and passive:

Somebody **cleans** the office every day. (active)

The office **is cleaned** every day. (passive)

Somebody **cleaned** the office yesterday. (active)

The office **was cleaned** yesterday. (passive)

**B** The passive is:

			past participle
<i>present simple</i>	<b>am/is/are</b>		<b>cleaned      done</b>
<i>past simple</i>	<b>was/were</b>	(not)	<b>invented      built</b> <b>injured      taken etc.</b>

The past participle of regular verbs is **-ed** (cleaned/damaged etc.).

For a list of irregular past participles (**done/built/taken** etc.), see Appendix 2–3.

- Butter **is made** from milk.
- Oranges **are imported** into Britain.
- How often **are these rooms cleaned**?
- I am never **invited** to parties.
- This house **was built** 100 years ago.
- These houses **were built** 100 years ago.
- When **was** the telephone **invented**?
- We **weren't invited** to the party last week.
- 'Was anybody **injured** in the accident?' 'Yes, two people **were taken** to hospital.'

**C** **was/were born**

- I **was born** in Berlin in 1989. (not I am born)
- 'Where **were you born**?' 'In Cairo.'

**D** **passive + by ...**

- The telephone **was invented by Alexander Bell** in 1876. (= Alexander Bell invented it)
- I was bitten **by a dog** a few days ago.
- Do you like these paintings? They **were painted by a friend of mine**.

## 21.1 Write sentences from these words. Some of the sentences are questions.

Sentences 1–7 are present.

- 1 (the office / clean / every day)
- 2 (these rooms / clean / every day?)
- 3 (glass / make / from sand)
- 4 (stamps / sell / in a post office)
- 5 (this room / not / use / very often)
- 6 (we / allow / to park here?)
- 7 (how / this word / pronounce?)

The office is cleaned every day.  
Are these rooms cleaned every day?

Glass

Sentences 8–15 are past.

- 8 (the office / clean / yesterday)
- 9 (the house / paint / last month)
- 10 (my phone / steal / a few days ago)
- 11 (three people / injure / in the accident)
- 12 (when / this bridge / build?)
- 13 (I / not / wake up / by the noise)
- 14 (how / these windows / break?)
- 15 (you / invite / to Jon's party last week?)

The office was cleaned yesterday.

The house

## 21.2 These sentences are not correct. Correct them.

- 1 This house built 100 years ago.
- 2 Football plays in most countries of the world.
- 3 Why did the letter send to the wrong address?
- 4 A garage is a place where cars repair.
- 5 Where are you born?
- 6 How many languages are speaking in Switzerland?
- 7 Somebody broke into our house, but nothing stolen.
- 8 When was invented the bicycle?

This house was built

## 21.3 Complete the sentences. Use the passive (present or past) of these verbs:

**clean damage find give invite make make show steal take**

- 1 The room ... is cleaned ... every day.
- 2 I saw an accident yesterday. Two people ... were taken ... to hospital.
- 3 Paper ... from wood.
- 4 There was a fire at the hotel last week. Two of the rooms ...
- 5 'Where did you get this picture?' 'It ... to me by a friend of mine.'
- 6 Many American programmes ... on British television.
- 7 'Did Jim and Sue go to the wedding?' 'No. They ... , but they didn't go.'
- 8 'How old is this film?' 'It ... in 1965.'
- 9 My car ... last week, but the next day it ... by the police.

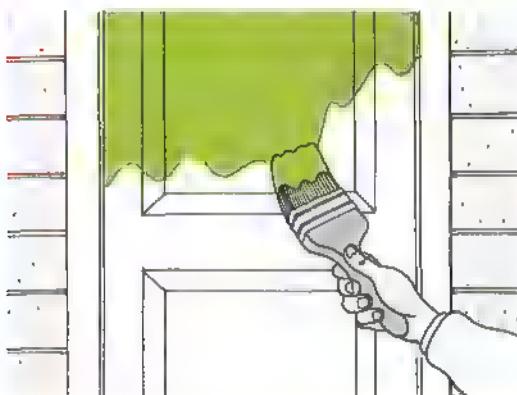
## 21.4 Where were they born?

- 1 (Ian / Edinburgh) Ian was born in Edinburgh.
- 2 (Sally / Manchester) Sally
- 3 (her parents / Ireland) Her
- 4 (you / ???) I
- 5 (your mother / ???)

# is being done      has been done

## (passive 2)

**is/are being ...** (present continuous passive)



Somebody **is painting** the door. (active)

The door **is being painted.** (passive)

- My car is at the garage. It **is being repaired.** (= somebody is repairing it)
- Some new houses **are being built** opposite the park. (= somebody is building them)

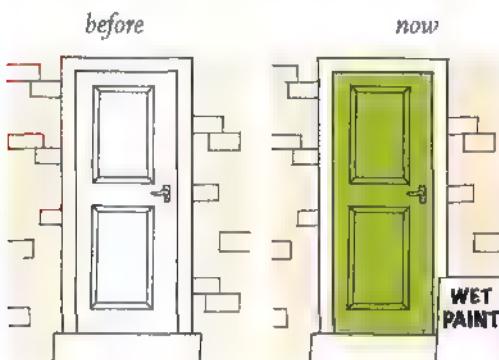
Compare the present continuous and present simple:

- The office **is being cleaned** at the moment. (continuous)  
The office **is cleaned** every day. (simple)
- In Britain football matches **are often played** at the weekend, but  
no matches **are being played** next weekend.

For the present continuous and present simple, see Units 8 and 25.

B

**has/have been ...** (present perfect passive)



Somebody **has painted** the door. (active)

The door **has been painted.** (passive)

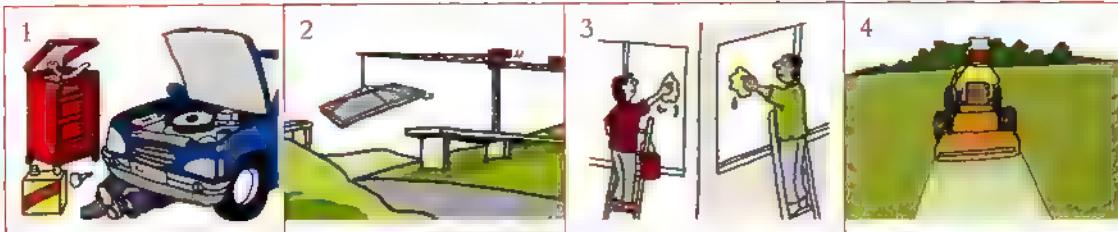
- My key **has been stolen.** (= somebody has stolen it)
- My keys **have been stolen.** (= somebody has stolen them)
- I'm not going to the party. I **haven't been invited.** (= nobody has invited me)
- Has this shirt **been washed?** (= has somebody washed it?)

Compare the present perfect and past simple:

- The room isn't dirty any more. It **has been cleaned.** (present perfect)  
The room **was cleaned** yesterday. (past simple)
- I can't find my keys. I think they've **been stolen.** (present perfect)  
My keys **were stolen** last week. (past simple)

For the present perfect and past simple, see Unit 20.

## 22.1 What's happening?



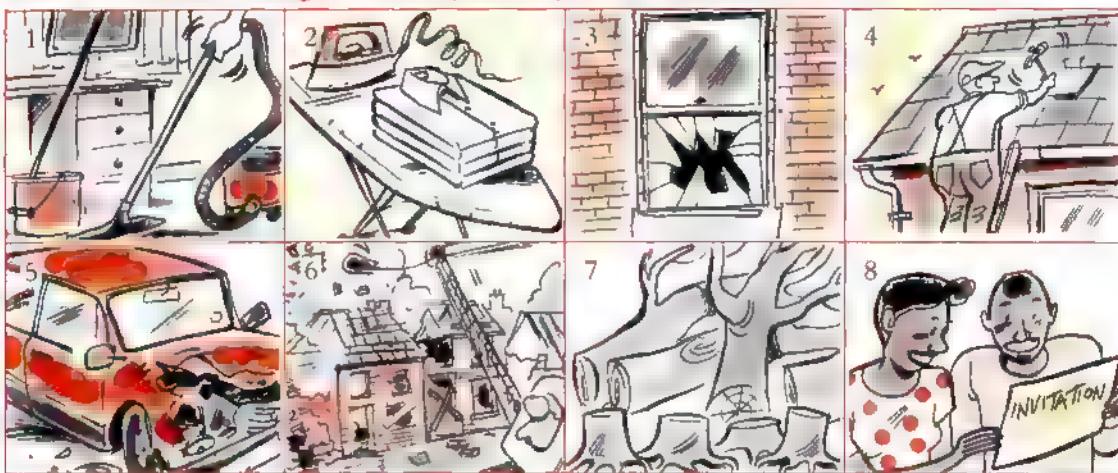
1 The car is being repaired.

2 A bridge is being built.

3 The windows are being painted.

4 The grass is being mown.

## 22.2 Look at the pictures. What is happening or what has happened? Use the present continuous (is/are being ...) or the present perfect (has/have been ...).



1 (the office / clean) The office is being cleaned.

2 (the shirts / iron) The shirts have been ironed.

3 (the window / break) The window has been broken.

4 (the roof / repair) The roof is being repaired.

5 (the car / damage) The car has been damaged.

6 (the houses / knock / down) The houses have been knocked down.

7 (the trees / cut / down) The trees have been cut down.

8 (they / invite / to a party) They are inviting people to a party.

## 22.3 Complete the sentences. (Study Unit 21 before you do this exercise.)

1 I can't use my office at the moment. It is being painted (paint).

2 We didn't go to the party. We weren't invited (not/invite).

3 The washing machine was broken, but it's OK now. It has been repaired (repair).

4 The washing machine was repaired (repair) yesterday afternoon.

5 A factory is a place where things are made (make).

6 How old are these houses? When were they built? (they/build)?

7 A: Is Steve using the computer at the moment?  
B: Yes, Steve is using it.

8 I've never seen these flowers before. What are they called? (they/call)?

9 My sunglasses were stolen (steal) at the beach yesterday.

10 The bridge is closed at the moment. It was damaged (damage) last week and it hasn't been repaired (not/repair) yet.

## be/have/do in present and past tenses

A be (= am/is/are/was/were) + -ing (cleaning/working etc.)

am/is/are + -ing  
(present continuous)

→ Units 3–4 and 25

- Please be quiet. I'm **working**.
- It **isn't raining** at the moment.
- What **are you doing** this evening?

was/were + -ing  
(past continuous)

→ Unit 13

- I **was working** when she arrived.
- It **wasn't raining**, so we didn't need an umbrella.
- What **were you doing** at 3 o'clock?

B be + past participle (cleaned/made/eaten etc.)

am/is/are + past participle  
(passive present simple)

→ Unit 21

- I'm never invited to parties.
- Butter **is made** from milk.
- These offices **aren't cleaned** every day.

was/were + past participle  
(passive past simple)

→ Unit 21

- The office **was cleaned** yesterday.
- These houses **were built** 100 years ago.
- How **was the window broken**?
- Where **were you born**?

C have/has + past participle (cleaned/lost/eaten/been etc.)

have/has + past participle  
(present perfect)

→ Units 15–18

- I've **cleaned** my room.
- Tom **has lost** his passport.
- Kate **hasn't been** to Canada.
- Where **have Paul and Nicole gone**?

D do/does/did + infinitive (clean/like/eat/go etc.)

do/does + infinitive  
(present simple negative and questions)

→ Units 6–7

- I like coffee, but I **don't like** tea.
- Chris **doesn't go** out very often.
- What **do you usually do** at weekends?
- Does Silvia **live alone**?

did + infinitive  
(past simple negative and questions)

→ Unit 12

- I **didn't watch** TV yesterday.
- It **didn't rain** last week.
- What time **did Paul and Nicole go out**?

## 23.1 Write is/are or do/does.

- 1 Do you work in the evenings?
- 2 Where are they going?
- 3 Why ..... you looking at me?
- 4 ..... Bill live near you?
- 5 ..... you like cooking?
- 6 ..... the sun shining?
- 7 What time ..... the shops close?
- 8 ..... Maria working today?
- 9 What ..... this word mean?
- 10 ..... you feeling all right?

## 23.2 Write am not/isn't/aren't or don't/doesn't. All these sentences are negative.

- 1 Tom ..... doesn't ..... work at weekends.
- 2 I'm very tired. I ..... want to go out this evening.
- 3 I'm very tired. I ..... going out this evening.
- 4 Gary ..... working this week. He's on holiday.
- 5 My parents are usually at home. They ..... go out very often.
- 6 Nicole has travelled a lot, but she ..... speak any foreign languages.
- 7 You can turn off the television. I ..... watching it.
- 8 Liz has invited us to her party next week, but we ..... going.

## 23.3 Write was/were/did/have/has.

- 1 Where ..... were ..... your shoes made?
- 2 ..... you go out last night?
- 3 What ..... you doing at 10.30?
- 4 Where ..... your mother born?
- 5 ..... Barbara gone home?
- 6 What time ..... she go?
- 7 When ..... these houses built?
- 8 ..... Steve arrived yet?
- 9 Why ..... you go home early?
- 10 How long ..... they been married?

## 23.4 Write is/are/was/were/have/has.

- 1 Joe ..... has ..... lost his passport.
- 2 This bridge ..... built ten years ago.
- 3 ..... you finished your work yet?
- 4 This town is always clean. The streets ..... cleaned every day.
- 5 Where ..... you born?
- 6 I ..... just made some coffee. Would you like some?
- 7 Glass ..... made from sand.
- 8 This is a very old photograph. It ..... taken a long time ago.
- 9 David ..... bought a new car.

## 23.5 Complete the sentences. Choose from the box and put the verb into the correct form.

damage	-rain-	enjoy	-go-	pronounce	eat
listen	use	open	go	understand	

- 1 I'm going to take an umbrella with me. It's ..... raining .....
- 2 Why are you so tired? Did you ..... go ..... to bed late last night?
- 3 Where are the chocolates? Have you ..... them all?
- 4 How is your new job? Are you ..... it?
- 5 My car was badly ..... in the accident, but I was OK.
- 6 Chris has got a car, but she doesn't ..... it very often.
- 7 Mary isn't at home. She has ..... away for a few days.
- 8 I don't ..... the problem. Can you explain it again?
- 9 Martin is in his room. He's ..... to music.
- 10 I don't know how to say this word. How is it ..... ?
- 11 How do you ..... this window? Can you show me?

# Regular and irregular verbs

## A Regular verbs

The *past simple* and *past participle* of regular verbs is **-ed**:

clean → cleaned    live → lived    paint → painted    study → studied

*Past simple* (→ Unit 11)

- I **cleaned** my room yesterday.
- Charlie **studied** engineering at university.

*Past participle*

**have/has + past participle** (present perfect → Units 15–18):

- I **have cleaned** my room.
- Tina **has lived** in London for ten years.

**be (is/are/were/has been etc.) + past participle** (passive → Units 21–22):

- These rooms **are cleaned** every day.
- My car **has been repaired**.

## B Irregular verbs

The past simple and past participle of irregular verbs do *not* end in **-ed**:

	make	break	cut
<i>past simple</i>	<b>made</b>	<b>broke</b>	<b>cut</b>
<i>past participle</i>	<b>made</b>	<b>broken</b>	<b>cut</b>

Sometimes the past simple and past participle are the same. For example:

	make	find	buy	cut
<i>past simple }</i>	<b>made</b>	<b>found</b>	<b>bought</b>	<b>cut</b>
<i>past participle</i>				

- I **made** a cake yesterday. (*past simple*)
- I **have made** some coffee. (*past participle – present perfect*)
- Butter **is made** from milk. (*past participle – passive present*)

Sometimes the past simple and past participle are different. For example:

	break	know	begin	go
<i>past simple</i>	<b>broke</b>	<b>knew</b>	<b>began</b>	<b>went</b>
<i>past participle</i>	<b>broken</b>	<b>known</b>	<b>begun</b>	<b>gone</b>

- Somebody **broke** this window last night. (*past simple*)
- Somebody **has broken** this window. (*past participle – present perfect*)
- This window **was broken** last night. (*past participle – passive past*)

**24.1 Write the past simple / past participle of these verbs. (The past simple and past participle are the same for all the verbs in this exercise.)**

1 make	made	6 enjoy		11 hear
2 cut	cut	7 buy		12 put
3 get		8 sit		13 catch
4 bring		9 leave		14 watch
5 pay		10 happen		15 understand

**24.2 Write the past simple and past participle of these verbs.**

1 break	broke	broken	8 come
2 begin			9 know
3 eat			10 take
4 drink			11 go
5 drive			12 give
6 speak			13 throw
7 write			14 forget

**24.3 Put the verb in the right form.**

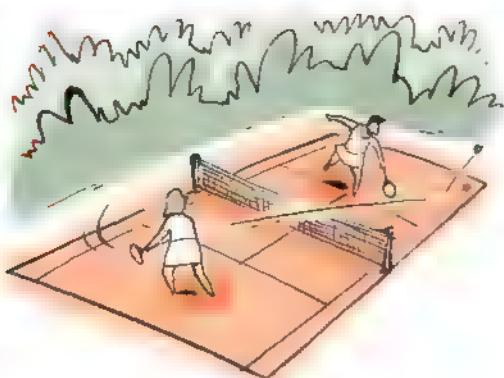
- 1 I ... **washed** ... my hands because they were dirty. (wash)
- 2 Somebody has ... **broken** ... this window. (break)
- 3 I feel good. I ..... very well last night. (sleep)
- 4 We ..... a really good film yesterday. (see)
- 5 It ..... a lot while we were on hohday. (rain)
- 6 I've ..... my bag. (lose) Have you ..... it? (see)
- 7 Rosa's bicycle was ..... last week. (steal)
- 8 I ..... to bed early because I was tired. (go)
- 9 Have you ..... your work yet? (finish)
- 10 The shopping centre was ..... about 20 years ago. (build)
- 11 Anna ..... to drive when she was 18. (learn)
- 12 I've never ..... a horse. (ride)
- 13 Julia is a good friend of mine. I've ..... her for a long time. (know)
- 14 Yesterday I ..... and ..... my leg. (fall / hurt)
- 15 My brother ..... in the London Marathon last year. Have you ever ..... in a marathon? (run / run)

**24.4 Complete these sentences. Choose from the box and put the verb into the correct form.**

cost	drive	fly	make	meet	sell
speak	swim	tell	think	wake up	win

- 1 I have ... **made** ... some coffee. Would you like some?
- 2 Have you ..... John about your new job?
- 3 We played basketball on Sunday. We didn't play very well, but we ..... the game.
- 4 I know Gary, but I've never ..... his wife.
- 5 We were ..... by loud music in the middle of the night.
- 6 Stephanie jumped into the river and ..... to the other side.
- 7 'Did you like the film?' 'Yes, I ..... it was very good.'
- 8 Many different languages are ..... in the Philippines.
- 9 Our hohday ..... a lot of money because we stayed in an expensive hotel.
- 10 Have you ever ..... a very fast car?
- 11 All the tickets for the concert were ..... very quickly.
- 12 A bird ..... in through the open window while we were having our dinner.

## What are you doing tomorrow?



They **are** playing tennis (**now**).

*today is Sunday*

I'm playing tennis tomorrow.



He **is** playing tennis **tomorrow**.

We use **am/is/are + -ing** (*present continuous*) for something happening now

- 'Where are Sue and Amanda?'    **'They're playing** tennis in the park.'
- Please be quiet. I'm **working**

We also use **am/is/are + -ing** for the *future* (tomorrow / next week etc.):

- Andrew **is** playing tennis tomorrow.
- I'm **not** **working** next week.

B

**I am doing something tomorrow** = I have arranged to do it, I have a plan to do it:

- Sophie **is going** to the dentist on Friday.  
(= she has an appointment with the dentist)
- We're **having** a party next weekend.
- Are you **meeting** your friends tonight?
- What **are** you **doing** tomorrow evening?
- I'm **not going** out tonight. I'm **staying** at home.

You can also say 'I'm **going to** do something' (→ Unit 26).



I'm going to a concert tomorrow.

C Be careful! Do not use the *present simple* (I stay / do you go etc.) to say what somebody has arranged to do:

- I'm **staying** at home this evening. (not I stay)
- Are you **going** out tonight? (not Do you go)
- Lisa **isn't coming** to the party next week. (not Lisa doesn't come)

But we use the present simple for timetables, programmes, trains, buses etc. :

- The train **arrives** at 7.30
- What time **does** the film **finish**?

Compare:

*present continuous* (usually for people)

- I'm **going** to a concert tomorrow.
- What time **are** you **leaving**?

*present simple* (for timetables, programmes etc.)

- The concert **starts** at 7.30.
- What time **does** your train **leave**?

# Exercises

# Unit 25

## 25.1 Look at the pictures. What are these people doing next Friday?



- 1 ... Andrew is playing tennis on Friday.
- 2 Richard ... to the cinema.
- 3 Rachel
- 4 ... lunch with Ken.
- 5

## 25.2 Write questions. All the sentences are future.

- 1 (you / go / out / tonight?) *Are you going out tonight?*
- 2 (you / work / next week?)
- 3 (what / you / do / tomorrow evening?)
- 4 (what time / your friends / come?)
- 5 (when / Liz / go / on holiday?)

## 25.3 Write sentences about yourself. What are you doing in the next few days?

- 1 ... I'm staying at home tonight.
- 2 ... I'm going to the theatre on Monday.
- 3
- 4
- 5
- 6

## 25.4 Put the verb in the present continuous (he is leaving etc.) or present simple (the train leaves etc.).

- 1 '... Are you going ... (you/go) out tonight?' 'No, I'm too tired.'
- 2 We're going (we/go) to a concert tonight. It starts (it/start) at 7.30.
- 3 Do you know about Sally? (she/get) married next month!
- 4 A: My parents ... (go) on holiday next week.  
B: Oh, that's nice. Where ... (they/go)?
- 5 Silvia is doing an English course at the moment. The course ... (finish) on Friday.
- 6 There's a party tomorrow night, but ... (I/not/go).
- 7 ... (I/go) out with some friends tonight. Why don't you come too? (we/meet) outside the Royal Hotel at 8 o'clock.
- 8 A: How ... (you/get) home after the party tomorrow? By taxi?  
B: No, I can go by bus. The last bus ... (leave) at midnight.
- 9 A: Do you want to go to the cinema tonight?  
B: Yes, what time ... (the film / begin)?
- 10 A: What ... (you/do) tomorrow afternoon?  
B: ... (I/work).

## I'm going to ...

I'm going to do something



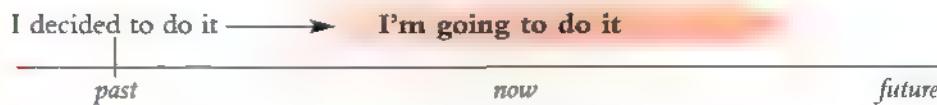
**She is going to watch TV this evening.**

We use **am/is/are going to ...** for the **future**:

I	am		do ...
he/she/it	is	(not) going to	drink ...
we/you/they	are		watch ...

<b>am</b>	I		buy ... ?
<b>is</b>	he/she/it	<b>going to</b>	eat ... ?
<b>are</b>	we/you/they		wear ... ?

**I am going to do something** = I have decided to do it, my intention is to do it:



- I'm going to buy some books tomorrow.
- Sarah is going to sell her car.
- I'm not going to have breakfast this morning. I'm not hungry.
- What are you going to wear to the wedding next week?
- 'Your hands are dirty.' 'Yes, I know. I'm going to wash them.'
- Are you going to invite Martin to your party?

We also use the present continuous (**I am doing**) for the future, usually for arrangements  
(→ Unit 25):

I am playing tennis with Julia tomorrow.

**Something is going to happen**

**Something is going to happen** = we can see *now* that it is sure to happen:

- Look at the sky! It's going to rain.  
(black clouds *now* → rain)
- Oh dear! It's 9 o'clock and I'm not ready.  
**I'm going to be late.**  
(9 o'clock *now* and not ready → late)



# Exercises

# Unit 26

## 26.1 What are these people saying?

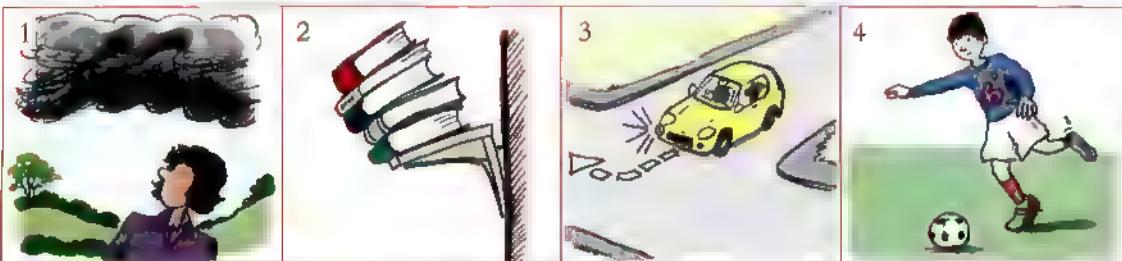


## 26.2 Complete the sentences. Use going to + these verbs:

do eat give lie down stay walk wash watch wear

- 1 My hands are dirty. ... I'm going to wash ... them.
- 2 What ... are you going to wear ... to the party tonight?
- 3 It's a nice day. I don't want to take the bus. I ... with some friends.
- 4 Steve is going to London next week. He ... this sandwich.
- 5 I'm hungry. I ... her a present.
- 6 It's Sharon's birthday next week. We ... for an hour.
- 7 Sue says she's feeling very tired. She ... it?
- 8 There's a good film on Channel 6 tonight. ... you ... when she leaves school?
- 9 What ... Rachel ...

## 26.3 Look at the pictures. What is going to happen?



- 1 It's going to rain.
- 2 The shelf ...
- 3 The car ...
- 4 He ...

## 26.4 What are you going to do today or tomorrow? Write three sentences.

- 1 I'm ...
- 2 ...
- 3 ...

# will/shall 1



Sarah goes to work every day. She is always there from 8.30 until 4.30.

It is 11 o'clock now. Sarah is at work.

At 11 o'clock yesterday, she was at work.

At 11 o'clock tomorrow, she will be at work.

**will + infinitive** (will be / will win / will come etc.):

I/we/you/they he/she/it	will (I'll) will not (won't)	be win eat come etc.	will	I/we/you/they he/she/it	be? win? eat? come? etc.
----------------------------	---------------------------------	-------------------------------	------	----------------------------	-----------------------------------

'll = will: I'll (I will) / you'll / she'll etc.

won't = will not: I won't (= I will not) / you won't / she won't etc.

We use **will** for the *future* (tomorrow / next week etc.):

- Sue travels a lot. Today she is in Madrid. Tomorrow she'll be in Rome. Next week she'll be in Tokyo.
- You can call me this evening. I'll be at home.
- Leave the old bread in the garden. The birds will eat it.
- We'll probably go out this evening.
- Will you be at home this evening?
- I won't be here tomorrow. (= I will not be here)
- Don't drink coffee before you go to bed. You won't sleep.

We often say **I think ... will ...**:

- I think Kelly will pass the exam.
- I don't think it will rain this afternoon.
- Do you think the exam will be difficult?

We do *not* use **will** for things we have already arranged or decided to do (→ Units 25–26):

- We're going to the cinema on Saturday. Do you want to come with us? (*not* We will go)
- I'm not working tomorrow. (*not* I won't work)
- Are you going to do the exam? (*not* Will you do)

## shall

You can say **I shall** (= I will) and **we shall** (= we will):

- I shall be late tomorrow. *or* I will (I'll) be late tomorrow.
- I think we shall win. *or* I think we will (we'll) win.

But *do not* use **shall** with **you/they/he/she/it**:

- Tom will be late. (*not* Tom shall be)

Helen is travelling in Europe. Complete the sentences with she was, she's or she'll be.

- 1 Yesterday ... she was ... in Paris.
- 2 Tomorrow ... in Amsterdam.
- 3 Last week ... in Barcelona.
- 4 Next week ... in London.
- 5 At the moment ... in Brussels.
- 6 Three days ago ... in Munich.
- 7 At the end of her trip ... very tired.



Where will you be? Write sentences about yourself. Use:

I'll be ... or I'll probably be ... or I don't know where I'll be.

- 1 (at 10 o'clock tomorrow) I'll probably be on the beach.
- 2 (one hour from now) ...
- 3 (at midnight tonight) ...
- 4 (at 3 o'clock tomorrow afternoon) ...
- 5 (two years from now) ...

Put in will ('ll) or won't.

- 1 Don't drink coffee before you go to bed. You won't sleep.
- 2 'Are you ready yet?' 'Not yet. I ... be ready in five minutes.'
- 3 I'm going away for a few days. I'm leaving tonight, so I ... be at home tomorrow.
- 4 It ... rain, so you don't need to take an umbrella.
- 5 a: I don't feel very well this evening.  
b: Well, go to bed early and you ... feel better in the morning.
- 6 It's Bill's birthday next Monday. He ... be 25.
- 7 I'm sorry I was late this morning. It ... happen again.

Write sentences with I think ... or I don't think ... .

- 1 Kelly will pass the exam) I think Kelly will pass the exam.
- 2 Kelly won't pass the exam) I don't think Kelly will pass the exam.
- 3 we'll win the game) I ...
- 4 I won't be here tomorrow) ...
- 5 Sue will like her present)
- 6 they won't get married)
- 7 you won't enjoy the film) ...

Which is right? (Study Unit 25 before you do this exercise.)

- 1 We'll go / We're going to the theatre tonight. We've got tickets. (We're going is right)
- 2 What will you do / are you doing tomorrow evening? 'Nothing. I'm free.'
- 3 They'll go / They're going away tomorrow morning. Their train is at 8.40.
- 4 I'm sure your aunt will lend / is lending us some money. She's very rich.
- 5 Why are you putting on your coat? 'I'll go / I'm going out.'
- 6 Do you think Claire will phone / is phoning us tonight?
- 7 We can't meet us on Saturday. He'll work / He's working.
- 8 Will you / Shall you be at home tomorrow evening?
- 9 What are your plans for the weekend?
- 10 Some friends will come / are coming to stay with us.

## will/shall 2



You can use **I'll ... (I will)** when you offer something or decide to do something:

- 'My bag is very heavy.'    'I'll carry it for you.'
- 'I'll phone you tomorrow, OK?'    'OK, bye.'

We often say **I think I'll ... / I don't think I'll ...** when we decide to do something:

- I'm tired. **I think I'll go** to bed early tonight.
- It's a nice day. **I think I'll sit** outside.
- It's raining. **I don't think I'll go** out.

Do *not* use the present simple (**I go / I phone** etc.) in sentences like these:

- I'll phone** you tomorrow, OK? (*not* I phone you)
- I think I'll **go** to bed early. (*not* I go to bed)

## B

Do *not* use **I'll ...** for something you decided before (→ Units 25–26):

- I'm working** tomorrow. (*not* I'll work)
- There's a good film on TV tonight. **I'm going to watch** it. (*not* I'll watch)
- What **are you doing** at the weekend? (*not* What will you do)

## C

**Shall I ... ? Shall we ... ?**



**Shall I / Shall we ... ?** = Do you think this is a good thing to do? Do you think this is a good idea?

- It's very warm in this room. **Shall I open** the window?
- 'Shall I phone you this evening?'    'Yes, please.'
- I'm going to a party tonight. What **shall I wear**?
- It's a nice day. **Shall we go** for a walk?
- Where **shall we go** for our holidays this year?
- 'Let's go out this evening.'    'OK, what time **shall we meet**?'

# Exercises

# Unit 28

## 28.1 Complete the sentences. Use I'll (I will) + these verbs:

carry do eat send show sit stay

- 1 My bag is very heavy.  
Enjoy your holiday.
- 2 I don't want this banana.  
Do you want a chair?
- 3 Did you phone Jenny?  
Are you coming with me?
- 4 How do you use this camera?

I'll carry

Thank you.  
Well, I'm hungry.  
No, it's OK.  
Oh no, I forgot.  
No, I don't think so.  
Give it to me and

it for you.  
you a postcard.  
... it.  
on the floor.  
it now.  
here.  
... you.

## 28.2 Complete the sentences. Use I think I'll ... or I don't think I'll ... + these verbs:

buy buy go have play

- 1 It's cold today. I don't think I'll go.
- 2 I'm hungry. I ...
- 3 I feel very tired. ...
- 4 I like this hat. ...
- 5 This camera is too expensive. ...

... out.  
something to eat.  
... tennis.  
it.  
it.

## 28.3 Which is right?

- 1 I phone / I'll phone you tomorrow, OK? (I'll phone is right)
- 2 I haven't done the shopping yet. I do / I'll do it later.
- 3 I like sport. I watch / I'll watch a lot of sport on TV.
- 4 I need some exercise. I think I go / I'll go for a walk.
- 5 Gerry is going to buy / will buy a new car. He told me last week.
- 6 'This letter is for Rose.' 'OK. I give / I'll give / I'm going to give it to her.'
- 7 A: Are you doing / Will you do anything this evening?  
B: Yes, I'm going / I'll go out with some friends.
- 8 I can't go out with you tomorrow night. I work / I'm working / I'll work.

## 28.4 Write sentences with Shall I ... ? Choose from the two boxes.



make turn off  
open turn on

some sandwiches the television  
the light the window



- 1 It's very warm in this room.
- 2 This programme isn't very good.
- 3 I'm hungry.
- 4 It's dark in this room.

Shall I open the window?

## 28.5 Write sentences with Shall we ... ? Choose from the two boxes.

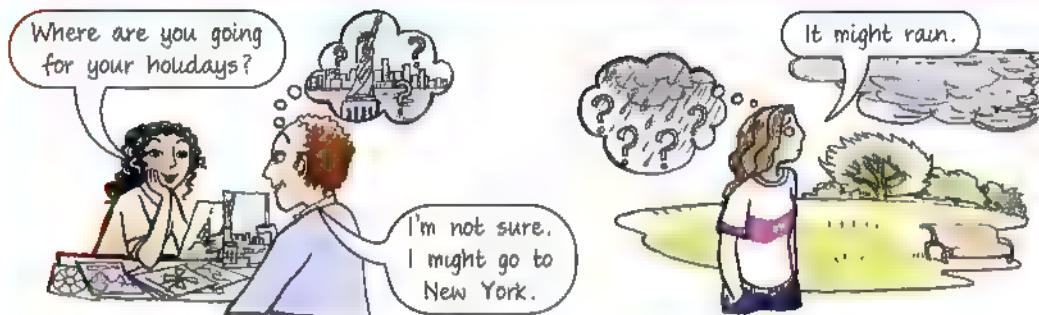


what where  
what time who



- 1 Let's go out tonight.
- 2 Let's have a holiday.
- 3 Let's spend some money.
- 4 Let's have a party.

what time shall we meet?

**might**

He **might go** to New York.  
(= it is possible that he will go to New York)

**It might rain.**  
(= it is possible that it will rain)

**might + infinitive** (**might go** / **might be** / **might rain** etc.):

I/we/you/they he/she/it	<b>might</b> (not)	be go play come etc.
----------------------------	--------------------	-------------------------------

**B** **I might** = it is possible that I will:

- I might go** to the cinema this evening, but I'm not sure (= it is possible that I will go)
- A:** When is Rebecca going to phone you?  
**B:** I don't know. She **might phone** this afternoon.
- Take an umbrella with you. It **might rain**.
- Buy a lottery ticket. You **might be** lucky. (= perhaps you will be lucky)
- 'Are you going out tonight?' '**I might.**' (= I might go out)

Study the difference:

- I'm playing** tennis tomorrow. (*sure*)
- I might play** tennis tomorrow. (*possible*)
- Rebecca is going to phone** later. (*sure*)
- Rebecca might phone** later. (*possible*)

**C** **I might not** = it is possible that I will not:

- I might not go** to work tomorrow. (= it is possible that I will not go)
- Sue **might not come** to the party. (= it is possible that she will not come)

**D** **may**

You can use **may** in the same way. **I may** = **I might**:

- I may go** to the cinema this evening. (= I might go)
- Sue **may not come** to the party. (= Sue might not come)

**May I ... ?** = Is it OK to ... ? / Can I ... ?:

- May I ask a question?** (= is it OK to ask / can I ask?)
- 'May I sit here?' 'Yes, of course.'

## 29.1 Write sentences with might.

- 1 (it's possible that I'll go to the cinema)
- 2 (it's possible that I'll see you tomorrow)
- 3 (it's possible that Sarah will forget to phone)
- 4 (it's possible that it will snow today)
- 5 (it's possible that I'll be late tonight)

I might go to the cinema.

## Write sentences with might not.

- 6 (it's possible that Mark will not be here next week)
- 7 (it's possible that I won't have time to go out)

## 29.2 Somebody is asking you about your plans. You have some ideas, but you are not sure. Choose from the list and write sentences with I might.

**fish    go away    Italy    Monday    a new car    taxi**

- 1 Where are you going for your holidays?
- 2 What are you doing at the weekend?
- 3 When will you see Kate again?
- 4 What are you going to have for dinner?
- 5 How are you going to get home tonight?
- 6 I hear you won some money. What are you going to do with it?

I'm not sure.  
I don't know. I  
I'm not sure.  
I don't know.  
I'm not sure.  
I haven't decided yet.

I might go to Italy.

## 29.3 You ask Bill questions about his plans for tomorrow. Sometimes he is sure, but usually he is not sure.

- 1 Are you playing tennis tomorrow?
- 2 Are you going out tomorrow evening?
- 3 Are you going to get up early?
- 4 Are you working tomorrow?
- 5 Will you be at home tomorrow morning?
- 6 Are you going to watch television?
- 7 Are you going out in the afternoon?
- 8 Are you going shopping?

Yes, in the afternoon.  
Possibly.  
Perhaps.  
No, I'm not.  
Maybe.  
I might.  
Yes, I am.  
Perhaps.



Bill

## Now write about Bill. Use might where necessary.

- 1 He's playing tennis tomorrow afternoon.
- 2 He might go out tomorrow evening.

3 He

4

5

6

7

8

## 29.4 Write three things that you *might* do tomorrow.

1

2

3

# can and could



He **can** play the piano.



**can + infinitive (can do / can play / can come etc.):**

I/we/you/they he/she/it	<b>can</b> <b>can't (cannot)</b>	<b>do</b> <b>play</b> <b>see</b> <b>come etc.</b>	<b>can</b>	I/we/you/they he/she/it	<b>do?</b> <b>play?</b> <b>see?</b> <b>come? etc.</b>
----------------------------	-------------------------------------	------------------------------------------------------------	------------	----------------------------	----------------------------------------------------------------

**B** I **can** do something = I *know how* to do it, or *it is possible* for me to do it:

- I **can** play the piano. My brother **can** play the piano too.
- Sarah **can** speak Italian, but she **can't** speak Spanish.
- 'Can you swim?' 'Yes, but I'm not a very good swimmer.'
- 'Can you change twenty pounds?' 'I'm sorry, I **can't**'
- I'm having a party next week, but Paul and Rachel **can't** come.

**C** For the past (yesterday / last week etc.), we use **could/couldn't**:

- When I was young, I **could** run very fast.
- Before Maria came to Britain, she **couldn't** understand much English. Now she **can understand** everything.
- I was tired last night, but I **couldn't** sleep.
- I had a party last week, but Paul and Rachel **couldn't** come.

**D** **Can you ... ? Could you ... ? Can I ... ? Could I ... ?**

We use **Can you ... ?** or **Could you ... ?** when we ask people to do things:

- Can you** open the door, please? *or* **Could you** open the door, please?
- Can you** wait a moment, please? *or* **Could you** wait ... ?

We use **Can I have ... ?** or **Could I have ... ?** to ask for something:

- (*in a shop*) **Can I have** these postcards, please? *or* **Could I have** ... ?

**Can I ... ?** or **Could I ... ?** = is it OK to do something?:

- Tom, **can I** borrow your umbrella? *or* Tom, **could I** borrow your umbrella?
- (*on the phone*) Hello, **can I** speak to Gary, please? *or* ... **could I** speak ... ?

# Exercises

# Unit 30

## 30.1 Ask Steve if he can do these things:



You

Can you swim?



1  
2  
3  
4  
5  
6

Can you do these things? Write sentences about yourself. Use I can or I can't.

7 I ... 10  
8 ... 11  
9 ... 12

## 30.2 Complete these sentences. Use can or can't + one of these verbs:

-come    find    hear    see    speak

1 I'm sorry, but we ... **can't come** ... to your party next Saturday.  
2 I like this hotel room. You ... **hear** ... the mountains from the window.  
3 You are speaking very quietly. I ... **see** ... you.  
4 Have you seen my bag? I ... **find** ... it.  
5 Catherine got the job because she ... **speak** ... five languages.

## 30.3 Complete these sentences. Use can't or couldn't + one of these verbs:

decide    eat    find    go    go    sleep

1 I was tired, but I ... **couldn't sleep** ...  
2 I wasn't hungry yesterday. I ... **eat** ... my dinner.  
3 Kate doesn't know what to do. She ... **decide** ...  
4 I wanted to speak to Martin yesterday, but I ... **go** ... him.  
5 James ... **go** ... to the concert next Saturday. He has to work.  
6 Paula ... **go** ... to the meeting last week. She was ill.

## 30.4 What do you say in these situations? Use can or could.

1 (open) Could you open the door, please?  
2 (pass)   
3 (turn off)   
4 (have) Phone numbers  
5 (look)   
6 (use)

## must mustn't don't need to



It's a fantastic film.  
You must see it.

**must + infinitive (must do / must work etc.):**

I/we/you/they he/she/it	<b>must</b>	do go see eat etc.
----------------------------	-------------	-----------------------------

**B**

**I must** (do something) = I need to do it:

- I'm very hungry. I **must eat** something.
- It's a fantastic film. You **must see** it.
- The windows are very dirty. We **must clean** them.

For the past (yesterday / last week etc.), we use **had to** ... (*not must*):

- I was very hungry. I **had to eat** something. (*not I must eat*)
- We **had to walk** home last night. There were no buses. (*not We must walk*)

**C**

**mustn't** (= must not)

**I mustn't** (do something) = it is necessary *not* to do it, it is the wrong thing to do:

- I **must hurry**. I **mustn't be late**.
- I **mustn't forget** to phone Jane.  
(= I **must remember** to phone her)
- Be happy! You **mustn't be sad**. (= don't be sad)
- You **mustn't touch** the pictures.  
(= don't touch the pictures)

**D**

**don't need to**

**I don't need** (to do something) = it is not necessary:

- I **don't need to go** yet. I can stay a little longer.
- You **don't need to shout**. I can hear you OK.

You can also say **don't have to** ... :

- I **don't have to go** yet. I can stay a little longer.

Compare **don't need to** and **mustn't**:

- You **don't need to go**. You can stay here if you want.
- You **mustn't go**. You must stay here.

## 31.1 Complete the sentences. Use must + these verbs:

be eat go learn meet wash win

- 1 I'm very hungry. I ... **must eat** something.
- 2 Marilyn is a very interesting person. You ..... her.
- 3 My hands are dirty. I ..... them.
- 4 You ..... to drive. It will be very useful.
- 5 I ..... to the post office. I need some stamps.
- 6 The game tomorrow is very important for us. We .....
- 7 You can't always have things immediately. You ..... patient.

## 31.2 Write I must or I had to.

- 1 ... **I had to** walk home last night. There were no buses.
- 2 It's late. .... go now.
- 3 I don't usually work on Saturdays, but last Saturday ..... work.
- 4 ..... get up early tomorrow. I've got a lot to do.
- 5 I went to London by train last week. The train was full and ..... stand all the way.
- 6 I was nearly late for my appointment this morning. ..... run to get there on time.
- 7 I forgot to phone David yesterday. .... phone him later today.

## 31.3 Complete the sentences. Use mustn't or don't need to + one of these verbs:

forget go hurry lose phone wait

- 1 I ... **don't need to go** ... home yet. I can stay a little longer.
- 2 We have a lot of time. We .....
- 3 Keep these papers in a safe place. You ..... them.
- 4 I'm not ready yet, but you ..... for me. You can go now and I'll come later.
- 5 We ..... to turn off the lights before we leave.
- 6 I must contact David, but I ..... him – I can send him an email.

## 31.4 Find the sentences with the same meaning.

- 1 We can leave the meeting early.
- 2 We must leave the meeting early.
- 3 We mustn't leave the meeting early.
- 4 We had to leave the meeting early.
- 5 We don't need to leave the meeting early.

- A We must stay until the end.
- B We couldn't stay until the end.
- C We can't stay until the end.
- D We can stay until the end.
- E We don't need to stay until the end.

1 E  
2  
3  
4  
5

## 31.5 Write must / mustn't / had to / don't need to.

- 1 You ... **don't need to** go. You can stay here if you want.
- 2 It's a fantastic film. You ... **must** see it.
- 3 The restaurant won't be busy tonight. We ..... reserve a table.
- 4 I was very busy last week. I ..... work every evening.
- 5 I want to know what happened. You ..... tell me.
- 6 You ..... tell Sue what happened. I don't want her to know.
- 7 I ..... hurry or I'll be late.
- 8 'Why were you so late?' 'I ..... wait half an hour for a bus.'
- 9 We ..... decide now. We can decide later.
- 10 It's Lisa's birthday next week. I ..... forget to buy her a present.

# should



**should + infinitive**  
(should do / should watch etc.):

I/we/you/they he/she/it	should shouldn't	do stop go watch etc.
----------------------------	---------------------	--------------------------------

**B** You **should** do something = it is a good thing to do, it is the right thing to do:

- Tom doesn't study enough. He **should** study harder.
- It's a good film. You **should** go and see it.
- When you play tennis, you **should** always **watch** the ball.

**C** You **shouldn't** do something = it is not a good thing to do.

**Shouldn't** = **should not**:

- Tom **shouldn't** go to bed so late.
- You watch TV all the time. You **shouldn't** **watch** TV so much.

**D** We often say I think ... **should** ...

**I think** ... **should** ... :

- I think** Lisa **should** **buy** some new clothes.  
(= I think it is a good idea.)
- It's late. **I think** I **should** **go** home now.
- A: Shall I buy this coat?  
B: Yes, I **think** you **should**.

**I don't think** ... **should** ... :

- I don't think** you **should** **work** so hard.  
(= I don't think it is a good idea.)
- I don't think** we **should** **go** yet. It's too early.

**Do you think** ... **should** ... ?:

- Do you think** I **should** **buy** this hat?
- What time **do you think** we **should** **go** home?



**E** **Must** is stronger than **should**:

- It's a **good** film. You **should** go and see it.
- It's a **fantastic** film. You **must** go and see it.

**F** Another way to say **should** is **ought to**:

- It's a **good** film. You **ought to go** and see it. (= you **should** go)
- I **think** Lisa **ought to buy** some new clothes. (= Lisa **should** buy)

## 32.1 Complete the sentences. Use you should + these verbs:

eat go take visit ~~watch~~ wear

- 1 When you play tennis, you should watch the ball.
- 2 It's late and you're very tired. ..... to bed.
- 3 ..... plenty of fruit and vegetables.
- 4 If you have time, ..... the Science Museum. It's very interesting.
- 5 When you're driving, ..... a seat belt.
- 6 It's too far to walk from here to the station. ..... a taxi.

## 32.2 Write about the people in the pictures. Use He/She shouldn't ... so ...



- 1 She shouldn't watch TV so much.
- 2 He .....
- 3 ..... hard.
- 4 .....

## 32.3 You are not sure what to do, so you ask a friend. Write questions with Do you think I should ... ?

- 1 You are in a shop. You are trying on a jacket. (buy?)  
You ask your friend: Do you think I should buy this jacket?
- 2 You can't drive. (learn?)  
You ask your friend: Do you think
- 3 You don't like your job. (get another job?)  
You ask your friend:
- 4 You are going to have a party. (invite Gary?)  
You ask your friend:

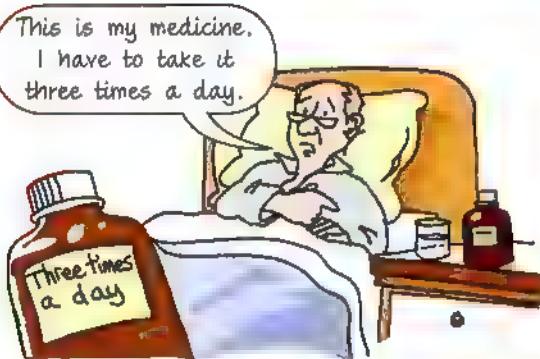
## 32.4 Write sentences with I think ... should ... and I don't think ... should ... .

- 1 We have to get up early tomorrow. (go home now) I think we should go home now.
- 2 That coat is too big for you. (buy it) I don't think you should buy it.
- 3 You don't need your car. (sell it)
- 4 Karen needs a rest. (have a holiday)
- 5 Sally and Dan are too young. (get married)
- 6 You're not well this morning. (go to work)
- 7 James isn't well today. (go to the doctor)
- 8 The hotel is too expensive for us. (stay there)

## 32.5 What do you think? Write sentences with should.

- 1 I think everybody should learn another language.
- 2 I think everybody
- 3 I think
- 4 I don't think
- 5 I think I should

# I have to ...



**I have to** do something = it is necessary for me to do it, I am obliged to do it

I/we/you/they	<b>have</b>	to do to work to go to wear etc.
he/she/it	<b>has</b>	

- I'll be late for work tomorrow. I **have to** go to the dentist.
- Jane starts work at 7 o'clock, so she **has to** get up at 6.
- You **have to** pass a test before you can get a driving licence.

## B

The past (yesterday / last week etc.) is **had to** ... :

- I was late for work yesterday. I **had to** go to the dentist.
- We **had to** walk home last night. There were no buses.

## C

In questions and negatives we use **do/does** (present) and **did** (past):

*present*

<b>do</b>	I/we/you/they	<b>have to</b> ... ?	I/we/you/they	<b>don't</b>	<b>have to</b> ...
<b>does</b>	he/she/it		he/she/it	<b>doesn't</b>	

*past*

<b>did</b>	I/we/you/they he/she/it	<b>have to</b> ... ?	I/we/you/they he/she/it	<b>didn't have to</b> ...
------------	----------------------------	----------------------	----------------------------	---------------------------

- What time **do you have to go** to the dentist tomorrow?
- Does** Jane **have to work** on Sundays?
- Why **did they have to leave** the party early?

**I don't have to** (do something) = it is not necessary to do it:

- I'm not working tomorrow, so I **don't have to** get up early.
- Ian **doesn't have to work** very hard. He's got an easy job.
- We **didn't have to** wait very long for the bus – it came in a few minutes.

## D

### must and have to

You can use **must** or **have to** when you say what *you* think is necessary, when you give *your* opinion:

- It's a fantastic film. You **must** see it. *or* You **have to** see it.

When you are *not* giving your personal opinion, use **have to** (*not must*). Compare:

- Jane won't be at work this afternoon. She **has to** go to the doctor.  
(this is not my personal opinion – it is a fact)
- Jane isn't well. She doesn't want to go to the doctor, but I told her she **must** go.  
(this is my personal opinion)

### 33.1 Complete the sentences. Use have to or has to + these verbs:

do hit read speak travel wear

- 1 My eyes are not very good. I have to wear glasses.
- 2 At the end of the course all the students had to take a test.
- 3 Sarah is studying literature. She has to read a lot of books.
- 4 Albert doesn't understand much English. You have to speak very slowly to him.
- 5 Kate is not often at home. She has to work a lot in her job.
- 6 In tennis you have to hit the ball over the net.

### 33.2 Complete the sentences. Use have to or had to + these verbs:

answer buy change go walk

- 1 We had to walk home last night. There were no buses.
- 2 It's late. I had to leave now. I'll see you tomorrow.
- 3 I went to the supermarket after work yesterday. I bought some food.
- 4 This train doesn't go all the way to London. You had to change at Bristol.
- 5 We did an exam yesterday. We had to answer six questions out of ten.

### 33.3 Complete the questions. Some are present and some are past.

- 1 I have to get up early tomorrow.
- 2 George had to wait a long time.
- 3 Liz has to go somewhere.
- 4 We had to pay a lot of money.
- 5 I have to do some work.

What time	<u>do you have to get up</u>	?
How long		?
Where		?
How much		?
What exactly		?

### 33.4 Write sentences with don't/doesn't/didn't have to ... .

- 1 Why are you going out? You don't have to go out.
- 2 Why is Sue waiting? She doesn't have to wait.
- 3 Why did you get up early? You didn't have to get up early.
- 4 Why is Paul working so hard? He doesn't have to work so hard.
- 5 Why do you want to leave now? We haven't got to leave yet.

### 33.5 Which is correct? Sometimes must and have to are both correct. Sometimes only one is correct.

- 1 It's a fantastic film. You must see / have to see it. (*both are correct*)
- 2 Julia won't be at work this afternoon. She must go / has to go to the doctor. (*has to go is correct*)
- 3 You can't park your car here for nothing. You must pay / have to pay.
- 4 I didn't have any money with me last night, so I must borrow / had to borrow some.
- 5 I eat too much chocolate. I really must stop / have to stop.
- 6 Paul is in a hurry. He must meet / has to meet somebody in five minutes.
- 7 What's wrong? You must tell / have to tell me. I want to help you.

### 33.6 Write some things that you (or your friends or family) have to do or had to do.

- 1 (every day) I have to travel ten miles every day.
- 2 (every day) I have to get up at 6:00 every day.
- 3 (yesterday) I had to go to work yesterday.
- 4 (tomorrow) I'm going to have to go to work tomorrow.

## Would you like ... ? I'd like ...

**Would you like ... ?** = Do you want ... ?

We use **Would you like ... ?** to offer things:

- A: **Would you like** some coffee?  
B: No, thank you.
- A: **Would you like** a chocolate?  
B: Yes, please.
- A: **What would you like**, tea or coffee?  
B: Tea, please.



We use **Would you like to ... ?** to invite somebody:

- Would you like to** go for a walk?
- A: **Would you like to have** dinner with us on Sunday?  
B: Yes, I'd love to. (= I would love to have dinner with you)
- What would you like to do** this evening?

B

**I'd like ...** is a polite way to say 'I want'. **I'd like** = **I would like**:

- I'm thirsty. **I'd like** a drink.
- (in a tourist office) **I'd like** some information about hotels, please.
- I'm feeling tired. **I'd like to stay** at home this evening.

C

**Would you like ... ?** and **Do you like ... ?**

**Would you like ... ? / I'd like ...**



**Would you like some tea?** = Do you want some tea?

- A: **Would you like** to go to the cinema tonight?  
(= do you want to go *tonight*?)  
B: Yes, I'd love to.
- I'd like** an orange, please.  
(= can I have an orange?)
- What would you like** to do next weekend?

**Do you like ... ? / I like ...**



**Do you like tea?** = Do you think tea is nice?

- A: **Do you like** going to the cinema? (in general)  
B: Yes, I go to the cinema a lot.
- I like** oranges. (in general)
- What do you like** to do at weekends?

## 34.1 What are the people in the pictures saying? Use Would you like ... ?



## 34.2 What do you say to Sue in these situations? Use Would you like to ... ?

- 1 You want to go to the cinema tonight. Perhaps Sue will go with you. (go)  
You say: Would you like to go to the cinema tonight?
- 2 You want to play tennis tomorrow. Perhaps Sue will play too. (play)  
You say: \_\_\_\_\_
- 3 You have an extra ticket for a concert next week. Perhaps Sue will come. (come)  
You say: \_\_\_\_\_
- 4 It's raining and Sue is going out. She hasn't got an umbrella, but you have one. (borrow)  
You say: \_\_\_\_\_

## 34.3 Which is right?

- 1 'Do you like / Would you like a chocolate?' 'Yes, please' (Would you like is right)
- 2 'Do you like / Would you like bananas?' 'Yes, I love them.'
- 3 'Do you like / Would you like an ice-cream?' 'No, thank you.'
- 4 'What do you like / would you like to drink?' 'A glass of water, please.'
- 5 'Do you like / Would you like to go out for a walk?' 'Not now. Perhaps later.'
- 6 I like / I'd like tomatoes, but I don't eat them very often.
- 7 What time do you like / would you like to have dinner this evening?
- 8 'Do you like / Would you like something to eat?' 'No, thanks. I'm not hungry.'
- 9 'Do you like / Would you like your new job?' 'Yes, I'm enjoying it.'
- 10 I'm tired. I like / I'd like to go to sleep now.
- 11 'I like / I'd like a sandwich, please.' 'Sure. What kind of sandwich?'
- 12 'What kind of music do you like / would you like?' 'All kinds.'

## Do this! Don't do that! Let's do this!



We use **come/look/go/wait/do/be** etc when we tell somebody to do something:

- 'Come here and **look** at this!'    'What is it?'
- I don't want to talk to you. **Go** away!
- I'm not ready yet. Please **wait** for me.
- Please **be** quiet. I'm working.

also

- Bye! **Have** a good holiday! / **Have** a nice time! / **Have** a good flight! / **Have** fun!  
(= I hope you have a good holiday etc.)
- 'Have a chocolate.'    'Oh, thanks.'  
(= would you like a chocolate?)

We use **don't ...** when we tell somebody not to do something:

- Be careful! **Don't fall**.
- Please **don't go**. Stay here with me.
- Be here on time. **Don't be late**.

You can say **Let's ...** when you want people to do things with you. **Let's** = **Let us**.

- It's a nice day. **Let's go out**.  
(= *you and I* can go out)
- Come on! **Let's dance**.  
(= *you and I* can dance)
- Are you ready? **Let's go**.
- Let's have** fish for dinner tonight.
- A: Shall we go out tonight?  
B: No, I'm tired. **Let's stay at home**.



The negative is **Let's not ...**:

- It's cold. **Let's not go out**. Let's stay at home.
- Let's not have** fish for dinner tonight. Let's have chicken.

Or you can say **Don't let's ...**:

- It's cold. **Don't let's go out**. Let's stay at home.

# Exercises

# Unit 35

35.1 Look at the pictures. What are the people saying? Some sentences are positive (buy/come etc.) and some are negative (don't buy / don't come etc.). Use these verbs:

be buy come drink drop forget have sit sleep smile



35.2 Complete the sentences. Use let's with:

go for a swim go to a restaurant take a taxi wait a little watch TV

- 1 Would you like to play tennis?
- 2 Do you want to walk home?
- 3 Shall I put a CD on?
- 4 Shall we have dinner at home?
- 5 Would you like to go now?

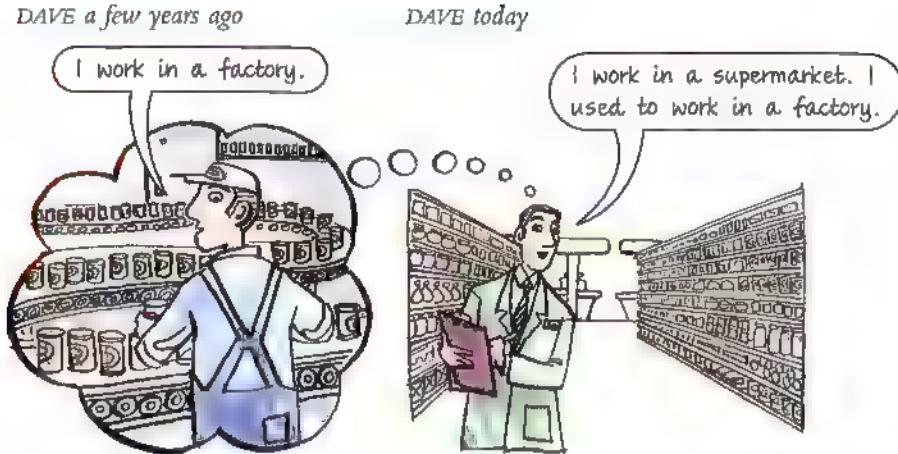
No, ... *let's go for a swim*  
No,  
No,  
No,  
No,

35.3 Answer with No, don't ... or No, let's not ... .

- 1 Shall I wait for you?
- 2 Shall we go home now?
- 3 Shall we go out?
- 4 Do you want me to close the window?
- 5 Shall I phone you tonight?
- 6 Do you think we should wait for Andy?
- 7 Do you want me to turn on the light?
- 8 Shall we go by bus?

*No, don't wait for me.*  
*No, let's not go home yet.*

I used to ...



Dave used to work in a factory. Now he works in a supermarket.

Dave **used to work** in a factory = he worked in a factory before, but he doesn't work there now:



You can say I used to work ... / she used to have ... / they used to be ... etc.

I/you/we/they he/she/it	<b>used to</b>	<b>be</b> <b>work</b> <b>have</b> <b>play</b> etc.
----------------------------	----------------	-------------------------------------------------------------

- When I was a child, I **used to like** chocolate.
- I **used to read** a lot of books, but I don't read much these days.
- Liz has got short hair now, but it **used to be** very long.
- They **used to live** in the same street as us, so we **used to see** them a lot. But we don't see them very often these days.
- Helen **used to have** a piano, but she sold it a few years ago.



The negative is I didn't use to ...

When I was a child, I didn't use to like tomatoes.

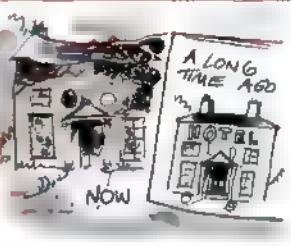
The question is did you use to ... ?

Where did you use to live before you came here?

We use **used to** ... only for the past. You cannot say 'I use to ...' for the present.

- I used to play tennis. These days I play golf. (*not* I use to play golf)
- We usually get up early. (*not* We use to get up early)

## 36.1 Look at the pictures. Complete the sentences with used to ... .

 <p>1 This is me a few years ago.</p> <p><b>She used to have long hair.</b></p>	 <p>2 When I was younger ...</p> <p><b>He</b> football.</p>	 <p>3 I'm a hairdresser now.</p> <p>a taxi driver.</p>
 <p>4 We live in London now.</p> <p>in the country.</p>	 <p>5 This is me 20 years ago. I never wear glasses now.</p>	 <p>This building ...</p>

## 36.2 Karen works very hard and has very little free time. A few years ago, things were different.

**Karen a few years ago**

- Do you do any sport? → Yes, I swim every day and I play volleyball.
- Do you go out much? → Yes, most evenings.
- Do you play a musical instrument? → Yes, the guitar.
- Do you like reading? → Yes, I read a lot.
- Do you travel much? → Yes, I go away two or three times a year.

**Karen now**



I work very hard in my job. I don't have any free time.

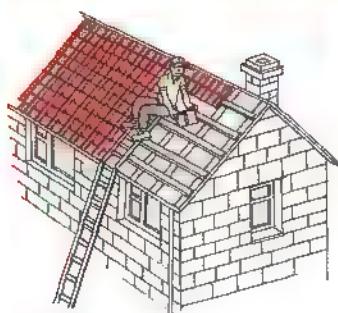
Write sentences about Karen with used to ... .

1 She used to swim every day.	4
2 She	5
3	6

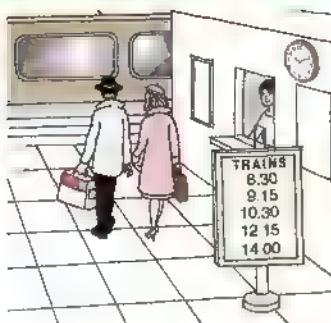
## 36.3 Complete these sentences. Use used to or the present simple (I play / he lives etc.).

- 1 I used to play tennis. I stopped playing a few years ago.
- 2 'Do you do any sport?' 'Yes, I play basketball.'
- 3 'Have you got a car?' 'No, I had one, but I sold it.'
- 4 George was a waiter. Now he's the manager of a hotel.
- 5 'Do you go to work by car?' 'Sometimes, but most days I take the bus.'
- 6 When I was a child, I never ate meat, but I eat it now.
- 7 Mary loves watching TV. She watches TV every evening.
- 8 We lived near the airport, but we moved to the city centre a few years ago.
- 9 Normally I start work at 7 o'clock, so I get up very early.
- 10 What games did you play when you were a child?

## there is      there are



**There's** a man on the roof.



**There's** a train at 10.30.

SUNDAY  
MONDAY  
TUESDAY  
WEDNESDAY  
THURSDAY  
FRIDAY  
SATURDAY

7

**There are** seven days in a week.

singular

**there is ...**      (**there's**)

**is there ... ?**

**there is not ...**      (**there isn't**  
or **there's not**)

**There's** a big tree in the garden.

**There's** nothing on TV tonight.

A: Have you got any money?  
B: Yes, **there's** some in my bag.

A: Excuse me, **is there** a hotel near here?  
B: Yes, **there is**. / No, **there isn't**.

We can't go skiing. **There isn't** any snow.

plural

**there are ...**

**are there ... ?**

**there are not ...**      (**there aren't**)

**There** are some big trees in the garden.

**There** are a lot of accidents on this road.

A: **Are there** any restaurants near here?  
B: Yes, **there are**. / No, **there aren't**.

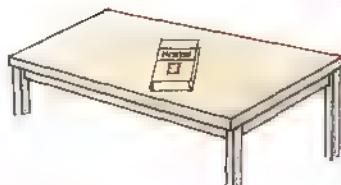
This restaurant is very quiet. **There aren't** many people here.

How many players **are there** in a football team?

**There are** 11 players in a football team.

**there is** and **it is**

**there is**



**There's** a book on the table.  
(not It's a book on the table.)

**it is**



I like **this book**. **It's** interesting.  
(**It** = **this book**)

Compare:

'What's **that noise**?'    'It's a train.'    (**It** = **that noise**)

**There's** a train at 10.30. **It's** a fast train.    (**It** = **the 10.30 train**)

**There's** a lot of salt in **this soup**.

I don't like **this soup**. **It's** too salty.    (**It** = **this soup**)

37.1 Kentham is a small town. Look at the information in the box and write sentences about Kentham with **There is/are** or **There isn't/aren't**.

1 a castle?	No
2 any restaurants?	Yes (a lot)
3 a hospital?	Yes
4 a swimming pool?	No
5 any cinemas?	Yes (two)
6 a university?	No
7 any big hotels?	No

1 **There isn't a castle.**  
 2 **There are a lot of restaurants.**  
 3  
 4  
 5  
 6  
 7 ..

37.2 Write sentences about your town (or a town that you know). Use **There is/are** or **There isn't/aren't**.

1 **There are a few restaurants.**  
 2 **There's a big park.**  
 3  
 4  
 5  
 6

37.3 Write **there is / there isn't / is there or there are / there aren't / are there**.

1 Kentham isn't an old town. **There aren't** any old buildings.  
 2 Look! **There is** a photograph of your brother in the newspaper!  
 3 'Excuse me, **is there** a bank near here?' 'Yes, at the end of the street.'  
 4 **There are** five people in my family: my parents, my two sisters and me.  
 5 'How many students **are there** in the class?' 'Twenty.'  
 6 The road is usually very quiet. **There is** much traffic.  
 7 **Is there** a bus from the city centre to the airport? 'Yes, every 20 minutes.'  
 8 **Are there** any problems? 'No, everything is OK.'  
 9 **There aren't** anywhere to sit down. **There are** any chairs.

37.4 Write sentences with **There are ...**. Choose from the boxes.

seven	twenty-six
eight	thirty
fifteen	fifty

letters	days
players	days
planets	states

September	the solar system
the USA	a week
a rugby team	the English alphabet

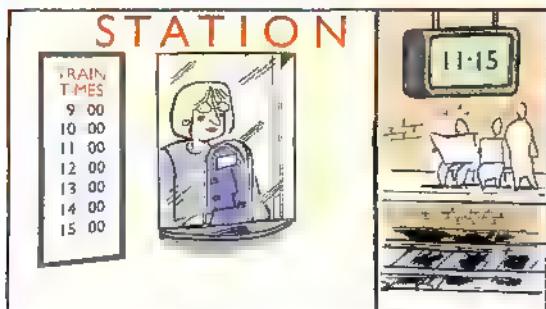
1 **There are seven days in a week.**  
 2  
 3  
 4  
 5  
 6

37.5 Write **there's / is there or it's / is it**.

1 'There's **an** a train at 10.30. 'Is it **a** fast train?'  
 2 I'm not going to buy this shirt. **It is** too expensive.  
 3 'What's wrong?' '**There is** something in my eye.'  
 4 **There is** a red car outside your house. **It is** yours?  
 5 'Is there **anything good** on TV tonight?' 'Yes, **there is** a film at 8.15.'  
 6 'What's that building?' '**It is** a school.'  
 7 'Is there **a restaurant** in this hotel?' 'No, I'm afraid not.'

# A there was/were there will be

**there was / there were (past)**



**There is** a train every hour.

The time now is 11.15.  
**There was** a train at 11 o'clock.

Compare:

**there is/are (present)**

- There is** a good film on TV tonight.
- We are staying at a very big hotel.
- There are** 550 rooms.
- Are there** any phone messages for me this morning?
- I'm hungry, but **there isn't** anything to eat.

**there was/were (past)**

- There was** a good film on TV last night.
- We stayed at a very big hotel.
- There were** 550 rooms.
- Were there** any phone messages for me yesterday?
- I was hungry when I got home, but **there wasn't** anything to eat.

B

**there has been / there have been (present perfect)**



- Look! **There's been** an accident.  
(**there's been** = **there has been**)
- This road is very dangerous. **There have been** many accidents.

Compare **there was** (past):

- There was** an accident **last night**.  
(not There has been an accident last night.)

For past simple and present perfect, see Unit 20.

C

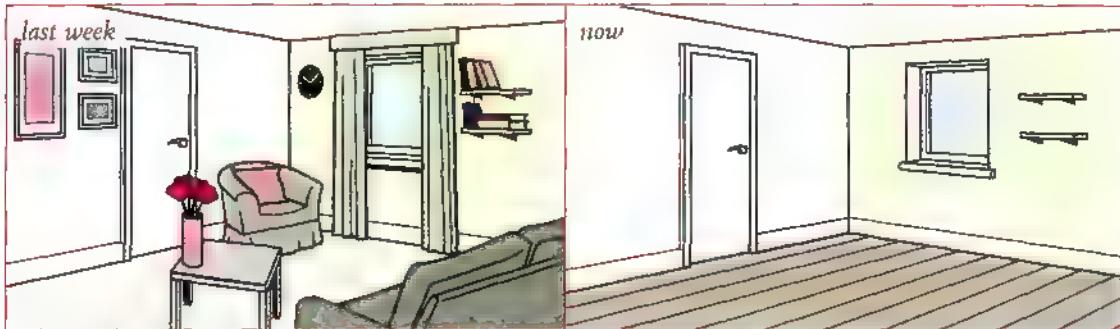
**there will be**



- Do you think **there will be** a lot of people at the party on Saturday?
- The manager of the company is leaving, so **there will be** a new manager soon.
- I'm going away tomorrow. I'll do my packing today because **there won't be** time tomorrow.  
(**there won't be** = **there will not be**)

38.1 Look at the two pictures. Now the room is empty, but what was in the room last week? Choose from the box and write sentences with **There was ... or There were ...**.

an armchair	a carpet	some flowers	a sofa
some books	a clock	three pictures	a small table



- 1 **There was a clock** on the wall near the window.
- 2 ..... on the floor.
- 3 ..... on the wall near the door.
- 4 ..... in the middle of the room.
- 5 ..... on the table.
- 6 ..... on the shelves.
- 7 ..... in the corner near the door.
- 8 ..... opposite the armchair.

38.2 Write **there was / there wasn't / was there or there were / there weren't / were there**.

- 1 I was hungry, but ..... **there wasn't** anything to eat.
- 2 **Were there** any phone messages for me yesterday?
- 3 I opened the envelope, but it was empty. ..... nothing in it.
- 4 'We stayed at a very nice hotel.' 'Really?' ..... a swimming pool?'
- 5 'Did you buy any eggs?' 'No, ..... any in the shop.'
- 6 The wallet was empty. ..... any money in it.
- 7 ' ..... many people at the meeting?' 'No, very few.'
- 8 We didn't visit the museum. ..... enough time.
- 9 I'm sorry I'm late. ..... a lot of traffic.
- 10 Twenty years ago ..... many tourists here. Now there are a lot.

38.3 Write **there + is / are / was / were / has been / have been / will be**.

- 1 **There was** a good film on TV last night.
- 2 ..... 24 hours in a day.
- 3 ..... a party at the club last Friday, but I didn't go.
- 4 'Where can I buy a newspaper?' ..... a shop at the end of the street.'
- 5 'Why are those policemen outside the bank?' ..... a robbery.'
- 6 When we arrived at the theatre, ..... a long queue outside.
- 7 When you arrive tomorrow, ..... somebody at the station to meet you.
- 8 Ten years ago ..... 500 children at the school. Now ..... more than a thousand.
- 9 Last week I went back to the town where I was born. It's very different now. .... a lot of changes.
- 10 I think everything will be OK. I don't think ..... any problems.

## It ...

We use it for time/day/distance/weather:

*time*



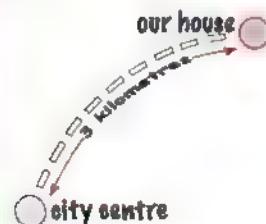
- What time is it?
- It's half past ten.
- It's late.
- It's time to go home.

*day*



- What day is it?
- It's Thursday.
- It's 16 March.
- It was my birthday yesterday.

*distance*



- It's three kilometres from our house to the city centre.
- How far is it from New York to Los Angeles?
- It's a long way from here to the station.
- We can walk home. It isn't far.

We use **far** in questions (**is it far?**) and negatives (**it isn't far**).  
In positive sentences, we use **a long way** (**it's a long way**).

*weather*



- It's raining. It isn't raining. Is it snowing?
- It rains a lot here. It didn't rain yesterday.  
Does it snow very often?
- It's warm/hot/cold/fine/cloudy/windy/sunny/foggy/dark etc.
- It's a nice day today.

Compare **it** and **there**:

- It rains a lot in winter.  
There is a lot of rain in winter.
- It was very windy.  
There was a strong wind yesterday.

B

It's nice to ... etc.

It's	easy / difficult / impossible / dangerous / safe expensive / interesting / nice / wonderful / terrible etc.	to ...
------	----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------	--------

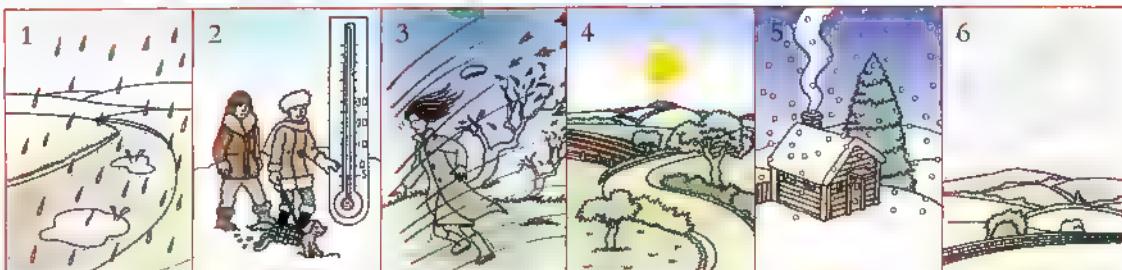
- It's nice to see you again.
- It's impossible to understand her.
- It wasn't easy to find your house.

C

Don't forget it:

- It's raining again. (*not* Is raining again)
- Is it true that you're going away? (*not* Is true that ...)

## 39.1 Write about the weather in the pictures. Use It's ... .



1 It's raining.

4

2

5

3

6

## 39.2 Write it is (it's) or is it.

- 1 What time is it?
- 2 We must go now. is it very late.
- 3 Is it true that Bill can fly a helicopter?
- 4 'What day is it today? Tuesday?' 'No, it's Wednesday.'
- 5 It's ten kilometres from the airport to the city centre.
- 6 Is it possible to phone you at your office?
- 7 'Do you want to walk to the hotel?' 'I don't know. How far is it?'
- 8 It's Lisa's birthday today. She's 27.
- 9 I don't believe it! It's impossible.

## 39.3 Write questions with How far ... ?

- 1 (here / the station) How far is it from here to the station?
- 2 (the hotel / the beach) How is it from the hotel to the beach?
- 3 (New York / Washington)
- 4 (your house / the airport)

## 39.4 Write it or there.

- 1 The weather isn't so nice today. It's cloudy.
- 2 There was a strong wind yesterday.
- 3 It's hot in this room. Open a window.
- 4 It was a nice day yesterday. It was warm and sunny.
- 5 There was a storm last night. Did you hear it?
- 6 I was afraid because it was very dark.
- 7 It's often cold here, but there isn't much rain.
- 8 It's a long way from here to the nearest shop.

## 39.5 Complete the sentences. Choose from the boxes.

<b>it's</b>	easy	dangerous
	difficult	nice
	impossible	interesting

<b>to</b>	work in this office	get up early
	visit different places	go out alone
	see you again	make friends

- 1 If you go to bed late, it's difficult to get up early in the morning.
- 2 Hello, Jane. How are you?
- 3 There is too much noise.
- 4 Everybody is very nice at work.
- 5 I like travelling.
- 6 Some cities are not safe. at night.

## I am, I don't etc.



She isn't tired, but he **is**.  
(he **is** = he is tired)



He likes tea, but she **doesn't**.  
(she **doesn't** = she doesn't like tea)

In these examples, it is not necessary to repeat some words ('he is *tired*', 'she doesn't *like tea*'')

You can use these verbs in the same way:

**am/is/are**  
**was/were**  
**have/has**  
**do/does/did**  
**can**  
**will**  
**might**  
**must**

- I haven't got a car, but my sister **has**. (= my sister has got a car)
- A: Please help me.  
B: I'm sorry. I **can't**. (= I can't help you)
- A: Are you tired?  
B: I **was**, but I'm **not** now. (= I was tired, but I'm not tired now)
- A: Do you think Jane **will** phone this evening?  
B: She **might**. (= she might phone)
- A: Are you **going** now?  
B: Yes, I'm afraid I **must**. (= I must go)

You *cannot* use '**'m**/**'s**/**'ve** etc. (*short forms*) in this way. You must use **am/is/have** etc.:

- She isn't tired, but he **is**. (not ... but he's)

But you *can* use **isn't** / **haven't** / **won't** etc. (*negative short forms*):

- My sister has got a car, but I **haven't**.
- 'Are you and Jane working tomorrow?' 'I am, but Jane **isn't**'

**B** You can use **I am** / **I'm not** etc. after **Yes** and **No**:

- 'Are you tired?' 'Yes, I **am**. / No, I'm **not**'
- 'Will Alan be here tomorrow?' 'Yes, he **will**. / No, he **won't**'
- 'Is there a bus to the airport?' 'Yes, there **is**. / No, there **isn't**'

**C** We use **do/does** for the *present simple* (→ Units 6-7):

- I don't like hot weather, but Sue **does**. (= Sue likes hot weather)
- Sue works hard, but I **don't**. (= I don't work hard)
- 'Do you enjoy your work?' 'Yes, I **do**.'

We use **did** for the *past simple* (→ Unit 12):

- A: Did you and Chris enjoy the film?  
B: I **did**, but Chris **didn't**. (= I enjoyed it, but Chris didn't enjoy it)
- 'I had a good time.' 'I **did** too.' (= I enjoyed it too)
- 'Did it rain yesterday?' 'No, it **didn't**'

**40.1 Complete these sentences. Use only one verb (is/have/can etc.) each time.**

- 1 Kate wasn't hungry, but we ..... **were** .
- 2 I'm not married, but my brother ..... .
- 3 Bill can't help you, but I ..... .
- 4 I haven't seen the film, but Tom ..... .
- 5 Karen won't be here, but Chris ..... .
- 6 You weren't late, but I ..... .

**40.2 Complete these sentences with a negative verb (isn't/haven't/can't etc.).**

- 1 My sister can play the piano, but I ..... **can't** .
- 2 Sam is working today, but I ..... .
- 3 I was working, but my friends ..... .
- 4 Mark has been to China, but I ..... .
- 5 I'm ready to go, but Tom ..... .
- 6 I've got a key, but Sally ..... .

**40.3 Complete these sentences with do/does/did or don't/doesn't/didn't.**

- 1 I don't like hot weather, but Sue ..... **does** .
- 2 Sue likes hot weather, but I ..... **don't** .
- 3 My mother wears glasses, but my father ..... .
- 4 You don't know Paul very well, but I ..... .
- 5 I didn't enjoy the party, but my friends ..... .
- 6 I don't watch TV much, but Peter ..... .
- 7 Kate lives in London, but her parents ..... .
- 8 You had breakfast this morning, but I ..... .

**40.4 Complete the sentences. Write about yourself and other people.**

- 1 I didn't ..... **go out last night**, but my friends did.
- 2 I like ..... , but
- 3 I don't ..... , but
- 4 I'm
- 5 I haven't

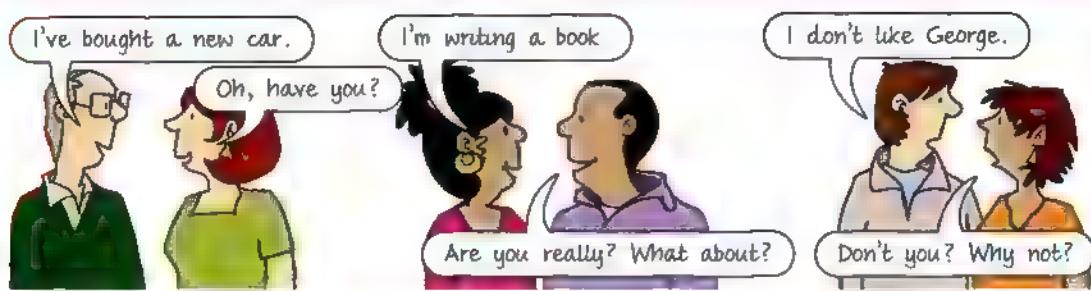
**40.5 Put in a verb, positive or negative.**

- 1 'Are you tired?' 'I ..... **was** ..... earlier, but I'm not now.'
- 2 Steve is happy today, but he ..... yesterday.
- 3 The post office isn't open yet, but the shops ..... .
- 4 I haven't got a telescope, but I know somebody who .....
- 5 I would like to help you, but I'm afraid I .....
- 6 I don't usually go to work by car, but I ..... yesterday.
- 7 A: Have you ever been to the United States?  
B: No, but Sandra ..... . She went there on holiday last year.
- 8 'Do you and Chris watch TV a lot?' 'I ..... , but Chris doesn't.'
- 9 I've been invited to Sam's wedding, but Kate ..... .
- 10 'Do you think Sarah will pass her driving test?' 'Yes, I'm sure she .....
- 11 'Are you going out tonight?' 'I ..... . I don't know for sure.'

**40.6 Answer these questions about yourself. Use Yes, I have. / No, I'm not. etc.**

- 1 Are you American? ..... **No, I'm not.**
- 2 Have you got a car?
- 3 Do you feel OK?
- 4 Is it snowing?
- 5 Are you hungry?
- 6 Do you like classical music?
- 7 Will you be in Paris tomorrow?
- 8 Have you ever broken your arm?
- 9 Did you buy anything yesterday?
- 10 Were you asleep at 3 a.m.?

## Have you? Are you? Don't you? etc.



You can say **have you?** / **is it?** / **can't he?** etc. to show that you are interested or surprised:

- 'You're late.'   'Oh, am I? I'm sorry.'
- 'I was ill last week.'   'Were you? I didn't know that.'
- 'It's raining again.'   'Is it? It was sunny ten minutes ago.'
- 'There's a letter for you.'   'Is there? Where is it?'
- 'Bill can't drive.'   'Can't he? I didn't know that.'
- 'I'm not hungry.'   'Aren't you? I am.'
- 'Sue isn't at work today.'   'Isn't she? Is she ill?'

Use **do/does** for the *present simple*, and **did** for the *past simple*:

- 'I speak four languages.'   'Do you? Which ones?'
- 'Tim doesn't eat meat.'   'Doesn't he? Does he eat fish?'
- 'Nicole got married last week.'   'Did she? Really?'

## B Question tags

You can use **have you?** / **is it?** / **can't she?** etc. at the end of a sentence.

These 'mini-questions' are *question tags*.



*positive sentence → negative question tag*

It's a beautiful day,  
Sally lives in London,  
You closed the window,  
Those shoes are nice,  
Tom will be here soon,

isn't it?  
doesn't she?  
didn't you?  
aren't they?  
won't he?

Yes, it's perfect.  
Yes, that's right.  
Yes, I think so.  
Yes, very nice.  
Yes, probably.

*negative sentence → positive question tag*

That isn't your car,  
You haven't met my mother,  
Sally doesn't go out much,  
You won't be late,

is it?  
have you?  
does she?  
will you?

No, it's my mother's.  
No, I haven't.  
No, she doesn't.  
No, I'm never late.

# Exercises

# Unit 41

## 41.1 Answer with Do you? / Doesn't she? / Did they? etc.

- 1 I speak four languages.
- 2 I work in a bank.
- 3 I didn't go to work yesterday.
- 4 Jane doesn't like me.
- 5 You look tired.
- 6 Kate phoned me last night.

Do you

- ? Which ones?
- ? I work in a bank too.
- ? Were you ill?
- ? Why not?
- ? I feel fine.
- ? What did she say?

## 41.2 Answer with Have you? / Haven't you? / Did she? / Didn't she? etc.

- 1 I've bought a new car.
- 2 Tim doesn't eat meat.
- 3 I've lost my key.
- 4 Sue can't drive.
- 5 I was born in Italy.
- 6 I didn't sleep well last night.
- 7 There's a film on TV tonight.
- 8 I'm not happy.
- 9 I saw Paula last week.
- 10 Maria works in a factory.
- 11 I won't be here next week.
- 12 The clock isn't working.

Have you  
Doesn't he

- ? What make is it?
- ? Does he eat fish?
- ? When did you last have it?
- ? She should learn.
- ? I didn't know that.
- ? Was the bed uncomfortable?
- ? Are you going to watch it?
- ? Why not?
- ? How is she?
- ? What kind of factory?
- ? Where will you be?
- ? It was working yesterday.

## 41.3 Complete these sentences with a question tag (isn't it? / haven't you? etc.).

- 1 It's a beautiful day, isn't it ?
- 2 These flowers are nice, ?
- 3 Jane was at the party, ?
- 4 You've been to Paris, ?
- 5 You speak German, ?
- 6 Martin looks tired, ?
- 7 You'll help me, ?

- Yes, it's perfect.
- Yes, what are they?
- Yes, but I didn't speak to her.
- Yes, many times.
- Yes, but not very well.
- Yes, he works very hard.
- Yes, of course I will.

## 41.4 Complete these sentences with a question tag, positive (is it? / do you? etc.) or negative (isn't it? / don't you? etc.).

- 1 You haven't got a car, have you ?
- 2 You aren't tired, ?
- 3 Lisa is a very nice person, ?
- 4 You can play the piano, ?
- 5 You don't know Mike's sister, ?
- 6 Sarah went to university, ?
- 7 The film wasn't very good, ?
- 8 Anna lives near you, ?
- 9 You won't tell anybody what I said, ?

- No, I can't drive.
- No, I feel fine.
- Yes, everybody likes her.
- Yes, but I'm not very good.
- No, I've never met her.
- Yes, she studied psychology.
- No, it was terrible.
- That's right. In the same street.
- No, of course not.

## too/either      so am I / neither do I etc.

## A too and either



We use **too** and **either** at the end of a sentence.

We use **too** after a positive verb:

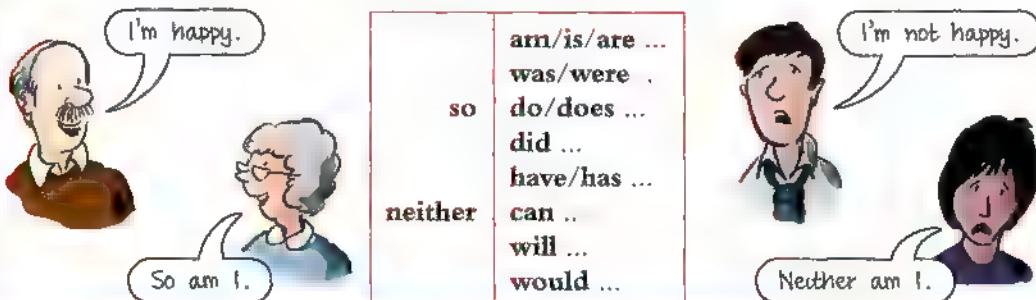
- A: I'm happy.  
B: I'm happy **too**.
- A: I enjoyed the film.  
B: I **enjoyed it too**.
- Jane is a doctor. Her husband is a doctor **too**.

We use **either** after a negative verb:

- A: I'm not happy.  
B: I'm **not happy either**.  
(not I'm not ... too)
- A: I can't cook.  
B: I **can't either**. (not I can't too)
- Bill doesn't watch TV. He **doesn't read newspapers either**.

## B

## so am I / neither do I etc.



**so am I** = I am too  
**so have I** = I have too (etc.):

- A: I'm working.  
B: **So am I.** (= I'm working too)
- A: I was late for work today.  
B: **So was Sam.** (= Sam was late too)
- A: I work in a bank.  
B: **So do I.**
- A: We went to the cinema last night.  
B: Did you? **So did we.**
- A: I'd like to go to Australia.  
B: **So would I.**

**neither am I** = I'm not either  
**neither can I** = I can't either (etc.):

- A: I haven't got a key.  
B: **Neither have I.** (= I haven't either)
- A: Kate can't cook.  
B: **Neither can Tom.**  
(= Tom can't either)
- A: I won't (= will not) be here tomorrow.  
B: **Neither will I.**
- A: I never go to the cinema.  
B: **Neither do I.**

You can also use **Nor** (= Neither):

- A: I'm not married.  
**Nor am I.** or **Neither am I.**

Remember: **So am I** (*not So I am*), **Neither have I** (*not Neither I have*).

## 42.1 Write too or either.

- 1 I'm happy.
- 2 I'm not hungry.
- 3 I'm going out.
- 4 It rained on Saturday.
- 5 Jenny can't drive a car.
- 6 I don't like shopping.
- 7 Emma's mother is a teacher.

I'm happy too.  
 I'm not hungry.  
 I'm going out.  
 It rained on Sunday.  
 She can't ride a bicycle.  
 I don't like shopping.  
 Her father is a teacher.

## 42.2 Answer with So ... I (So am I / So do I / So can I etc.).

- 1 I went to bed late last night.
- 2 I'm thirsty.
- 3 I've just had dinner.
- 4 I need a holiday.
- 5 I'll be late tomorrow.
- 6 I was very tired this morning.

So did I.

## Answer with Neither ... I.

- 7 I can't go to the party.
- 8 I didn't phone Alex last night.
- 9 I haven't got any money.
- 10 I'm not going out tomorrow.
- 11 I don't know what to do.

## 42.3 You are talking to Maria. Write sentences about yourself. Where possible, use So ... I or Neither ... I. Look at these examples carefully:



I'm tired today.

I don't work hard.

Maria

You can answer: So am I. or I'm not.

You can answer: Neither do I. or I do.

You

- 1 I'm learning English.
- 2 I can ride a bicycle.
- 3 I'm not American.
- 4 I like cooking.
- 5 I don't like cold weather.
- 6 I slept well last night.
- 7 I've never been to Scotland.
- 8 I don't use my phone much.
- 9 I'm going out tomorrow evening.
- 10 I haven't got a headache.
- 11 I didn't watch TV last night.
- 12 I go to the cinema a lot.

# isn't, haven't, don't etc. (negatives)

We use **not** (**n't**) in negative sentences:

*positive* → *negative*

am	<b>am not</b> ('m not)
is	<b>is not</b> (isn't or 's not)
are	<b>are not</b> (aren't or 're not)
was	<b>was not</b> (wasn't)
were	<b>were not</b> (weren't)
have	<b>have not</b> (haven't)
has	<b>has not</b> (hasn't)
will	<b>will not</b> (won't)
can	<b>cannot</b> (can't)
could	<b>could not</b> (couldn't)
must	<b>must not</b> (mustn't)
should	<b>should not</b> (shouldn't)
would	<b>would not</b> (wouldn't)

- I'm not tired.
- It isn't (or It's not) raining.
- They aren't (or They're not) here.
- Julian wasn't hungry.
- The shops weren't open.
- I haven't finished my work.
- Sue hasn't got a car.
- We won't be here tomorrow.
- George can't drive.
- I couldn't sleep last night.
- I mustn't forget to phone Jane.
- You shouldn't work so hard.
- I wouldn't like to be an actor.

B

**don't/doesn't/didn't**

*present simple negative*

I/we/you/they	<b>do not</b> (don't)
he/she/it	<b>does not</b> (doesn't)

work/live/go etc.

*past simple negative*

I/they/he/she etc.	<b>did not</b> (didn't)
--------------------	-------------------------

*positive* → *negative*

I want to go out.	→ I <b>don't want</b> to go out.
They work hard.	→ They <b>don't work</b> hard.
Liz plays the guitar.	→ Liz <b>doesn't play</b> the guitar.
My father likes his job.	→ My father <b>doesn't like</b> his job.
I got up early this morning.	→ I <b>didn't get</b> up early this morning.
They worked hard yesterday.	→ They <b>didn't work</b> hard yesterday.
We played tennis.	→ We <b>didn't play</b> tennis.
Diane had dinner with us.	→ Diane <b>didn't have</b> dinner with us.

**Don't ...**

<b>Look!</b>	→ <b>Don't look!</b>
<b>Wait for me.</b>	→ <b>Don't wait for me.</b>

Sometimes **do** is the main verb (**don't do / doesn't do / didn't do**):

<b>Do</b> something!	→ <b>Don't do</b> anything!
Sue <b>does</b> a lot at weekends.	→ Sue <b>doesn't do</b> much at weekends.
I <b>did</b> what you said.	→ I <b>didn't do</b> what you said.

## 43.1 Make these sentences negative.

- 1 He's gone away. He hasn't gone away.
- 2 They're married. They aren't married.
- 3 I've had dinner. I haven't had dinner.
- 4 It's cold today. It isn't cold today.
- 5 We'll be late. We won't be late.
- 6 You should go. You shouldn't go.

## 43.2 Make these sentences negative. Use don't/doesn't/didn't.

- 1 She saw me. She didn't see me.
- 2 I like cheese. I don't like cheese.
- 3 They understood. They didn't understand.
- 4 He lives here. He doesn't live here.
- 5 Go away! Don't go away!
- 6 I did the shopping. I didn't do the shopping.

## 43.3 Make these sentences negative.

- 1 She can swim. She can't swim.
- 2 They've arrived. They haven't arrived.
- 3 I went to the bank. I didn't go to the bank.
- 4 He speaks German. He doesn't speak German.
- 5 We were angry. We weren't angry.
- 6 He'll be pleased. He won't be pleased.
- 7 Phone me tonight. Don't phone me tonight.
- 8 It rained yesterday. It didn't rain yesterday.
- 9 I could hear them. I couldn't hear them.
- 10 I believe you. I don't believe you.

## 43.4 Complete these sentences with a negative verb (isn't/haven't/don't etc.).

- 1 They aren't rich. They haven't got much money.
- 2 'Would you like something to eat?' 'No, thank you. I am hungry.'
- 3 I haven't find my glasses. Have you seen them?
- 4 Steve doesn't use email much. He prefers to talk on the phone.
- 5 We can walk to the station from here. It isn't very far.
- 6 'Where's Jane?' 'I don't know. I haven't seen her today.'
- 7 Be careful! Don't fall!
- 8 We went to the cinema last night. I didn't like the film very much.
- 9 I've been to Japan many times, but I haven't been to Korea.
- 10 Julia isn't be here tomorrow. She's going away.
- 11 'Who broke that window?' 'Not me. I didn't do it.'
- 12 We didn't see what happened. We were looking at the time.
- 13 Lisa bought a new coat a few days ago, but she haven't worn it yet.
- 14 You mustn't drive so fast. It's dangerous.

## 43.5 You ask Gary some questions. He answers 'Yes' or 'No'. Write sentences about Gary, positive or negative.

**You**

Are you married?  
Do you live in London?  
Were you born in London?  
Do you like London?  
Would you like to live in the country?  
Can you drive?  
Have you got a car?  
Do you read newspapers?  
Are you interested in politics?  
Do you watch TV most evenings?  
Did you watch TV last night?  
Did you go out last night?

**Gary**

No.	1	He isn't married.
Yes.	2	He lives in London.
No.	3	
No.	4	
Yes.	5	
Yes.	6	
No.	7	
No.	8	
No.	9	
Yes.	10	
No.	11	
Yes.	12	

is it ... ? have you ... ? do they ... ? etc.  
(questions 1)

<i>positive</i>	<b>you</b>	<b>are</b>	<b>You are eating.</b>
<i>question</i>	<b>are</b>	<b>you</b>	<b>Are you eating?</b> <b>What are you eating?</b>

In questions, the first verb (is/are/have etc.) is before the subject:

<i>positive</i>		<i>question</i>	
<i>subject + verb</i>		<i>verb + subject</i>	
I <b>am</b> late.	→	<b>Am</b> I late?	
That seat <b>is</b> free.	→	<b>Is</b> that seat free?	
She <b>was</b> angry.	→	<b>Why was</b> she angry?	
David <b>has</b> gone.	→	<b>Where has</b> David gone?	
You <b>have</b> got a car.	→	<b>Have</b> you got a car?	
They <b>will</b> be here soon.	→	<b>When will</b> they be here?	
Paula <b>can</b> swim.	→	<b>Can</b> Paula swim?	

Remember: the subject is after the first verb.

- Where **has** David gone? (*not* Where **has gone** David?)
- Are those people waiting for something? (*not* Are waiting ... ?)
- When **was** the telephone invented? (*not* When **was invented** ... ?)

## B do ... ? / does ... ? / did ... ?

<i>present simple questions</i>	<b>do</b> I/we/you/they	<b>work/live/go etc ... ?</b>
	<b>does</b> he/she/it	
<i>past simple questions</i>	<b>did</b> I/they/he/she etc.	

<i>positive</i>		<i>question</i>
They <b>work</b> hard.	→	<b>Do</b> they work hard?
You <b>watch</b> television.	→	How often <b>do</b> you watch television?
Chris <b>works</b> hard.	→	<b>Does</b> Chris work hard?
She <b>gets</b> up early.	→	What time <b>does</b> she get up?
They <b>worked</b> hard.	→	<b>Did</b> they work hard?
You <b>had</b> dinner.	→	What <b>did</b> you have for dinner?
She <b>got</b> up early.	→	What time <b>did</b> she get up?

Sometimes **do** is the main verb (do you **do** / did he **do** etc.):

- What **do** you usually **do** at weekends?
- 'What **does** your brother **do**?' 'He **works** in a bank.'
- 'I **broke** my finger last week.' 'How **did** you **do** that?' (*not* How **did** you **that**?)

## C Why isn't ... ? / Why don't ... ? etc. (Why + negative):

- Where's John? Why **isn't** he here? (*not* Why he **isn't** here?)
- Why **can't** Paula come to the meeting tomorrow? (*not* Why Paula **can't** ... ?)
- Why **didn't** you phone me last night?

## 44.1 Write questions.

- 1 I can swim. (and you?)
- 2 I work hard. (and Jack?)
- 3 I was late this morning. (and you?)
- 4 I've got a key. (and Kate?)
- 5 I'll be here tomorrow. (and you?)
- 6 I'm going out this evening. (and Paul?)
- 7 I like my job. (and you?)
- 8 I live near here. (and Nicole?)
- 9 I enjoyed the film. (and you?)
- 10 I had a good holiday. (and you?)

**Can you swim?**

**Does Jack work hard?**

## 44.2 You are talking to a friend about driving. Write the full questions.

You

- 1 (have / a car?) **Have you got a car?**
- 2 (use / a lot?) ..... it .....
- 3 (use / yesterday?) .....
- 4 (enjoy driving?) .....
- 5 (a good driver?) .....
- 6 (ever / have / an accident?) .....



Yes, I have.  
Yes, nearly every day.  
Yes, to go to work.  
Not very much.  
I think I am.  
No, never.

## 44.3 Make questions with these words. Put the words in the right order.

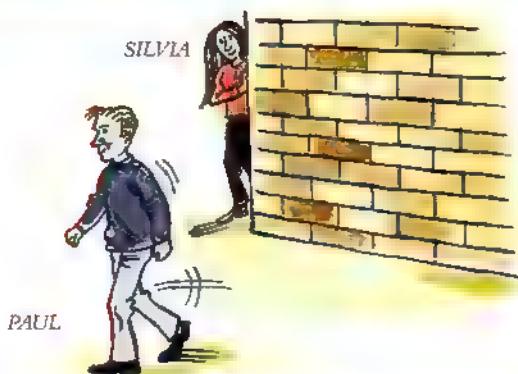
- 1 (has / gone / where / David?) **Where has David gone?**
- 2 (working / Rachel / is / today?) **Is Rachel working today?**
- 3 (the children / what / are / doing?) **What** .....
- 4 (made / is / how / cheese?) .....
- 5 (to the party / coming / is / your sister?) .....
- 6 (you / the truth / tell / don't / why?) .....
- 7 (your guests / have / yet / arrived?) .....
- 8 (leave / what time / your train / does?) .....
- 9 (to work / Emily / why / go / didn't?) .....
- 10 (your car / in the accident / was / damaged?) .....

## 44.4 Complete the questions.

- 1 I want to go out.
- 2 Kate and Paul aren't going to the party.
- 3 I'm reading.
- 4 Sue went to bed early.
- 5 My parents are going on holiday.
- 6 I saw Tom a few days ago.
- 7 I can't come to the party.
- 8 Tina has gone away.
- 9 I need some money.
- 10 Angela doesn't like me.
- 11 It rains sometimes.
- 12 I did the shopping.

Where **do you want to go?**  
Why **aren't they going?**  
What  
What time ..  
When  
Where ..  
Why ..  
Where ..  
How much ..  
Why ..  
How often ..  
When ..

# Who saw you? Who did you see? (questions 2)



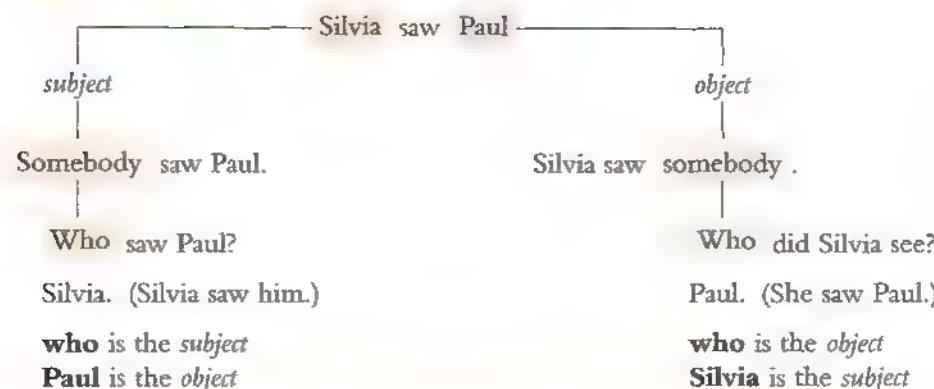
Silvia saw Paul.

Who **saw** Paul?

Silvia. (Silvia saw him.)

Who **did** Silvia **see**?

Paul. (She saw Paul.)



**B** In these questions, **who/what** is the *subject*:

- Who lives** in this house? (= somebody lives in it – who?)  
(not Who does live?)
- What happened?** (= something happened – what?)  
(not What did happen?)
- What's happening?** (What's = What is)
- Who's got** my key? (Who's = Who has)

In these questions, **who/what** is the *object*:

- Who did **you** meet yesterday? (= **you** met somebody – who?)
- What did **Paul** say? (= **Paul** said something – what?)
- Who are **you** phoning?
- What was **Silvia** wearing?

Compare:

<input type="checkbox"/> George likes oranges.	→ <b>Who likes</b> oranges? – George.
	<b>What</b> does George like? – Oranges.
<input type="checkbox"/> Jane won a new car.	→ <b>Who won</b> a new car? – Jane.
	<b>What</b> did Jane win? – A new car.

Use **who** for people (somebody). Use **what** for things, ideas etc. (something):

- Who** is your favourite **singer**?
- What** is your favourite **song**?

**45.1 Make questions with who or what. In these questions, who/what is the subject.**

- 1 Somebody broke the window.
- 2 Something fell off the shelf.
- 3 Somebody wants to see you.
- 4 Somebody took my umbrella.
- 5 Something made me ill.
- 6 Somebody is coming.

Who broke the window?

What

me?

**45.2 Make questions with who or what (subject or object).**

- 1 I bought something.
- 2 Somebody lives in this house.
- 3 I phoned somebody.
- 4 Something happened last night.
- 5 Somebody knows the answer.
- 6 Somebody did the washing-up.
- 7 Jane did something.
- 8 Something woke me up.
- 9 Somebody saw the accident.
- 10 I saw somebody.
- 11 Somebody has got my pen.
- 12 This word means something.

What did you buy?

Who lives in this house?

**45.3 You want the missing information (XXXXX). Write questions with who or what.**

1 I lost **XXXXX** yesterday, but fortunately **XXXXX** found it and gave it back to me.

What did you lose?  
Who found it?

2 **XXXXX** phoned me last night. She wanted **XXXXX**.

Who  
What

3 I needed some advice, so I asked **XXXXX**. He said **XXXXX**.

.....

4 I hear that **XXXXX** got married last week. **XXXXX** told me.

.....

5 I met **XXXXX** on my way home this evening. She told me **XXXXX**.

.....

6 Steve and I played tennis yesterday. **XXXXX** won. After the game we **XXXXX**.

.....

7 It was my birthday last week and I had some presents. **XXXXX** gave me a book and Catherine gave me **XXXXX**.

.....

Who is she talking to? What is it like?  
(questions 3)

Julia is talking to somebody.

Who is she talking to?

In questions beginning **Who ... ?** / **What ... ?** / **Where ... ?** / **Which ... ?**, prepositions (**to/from/with** etc.) usually go at the end:

- 'Where** are you **from**?' 'I'm from Thailand.'
- 'Jack was afraid.' '**What** was he afraid **of**?'
- '**Who** do these books belong **to**?' 'They're mine.'
- 'Tom's father is in hospital.' '**Which** hospital is he **in**?'
- 'Kate is going on holiday.' '**Who** with?' / '**Who** is she going **with**?'
- 'Can we talk?' 'Sure. **What** do you want to talk **about**?'

## B

What's it like? / What are they like? etc.



What's it like? = What is it like?

What's it like? = tell me something about it – is it good or bad, big or small, old or new (etc.)?

When we say '**What is it like?**', **like** is a *preposition*. It is not the verb **like** ('Do you **like** your new house?' etc.).

- A: There's a new restaurant in our street.  
B: **What's it like?** Is it good?  
A: I don't know. I haven't eaten there yet.
- A: **What's** your new teacher **like**?  
B: She's very good. We learn a lot.
- A: I met Nicole's parents yesterday.  
B: Did you? **What** are they **like**?  
A: They're very nice.
- A: Did you have a good holiday? **What** was the weather **like**?  
B: It was lovely. It was sunny every day.

# Exercises

# Unit 46

## 46.1 You want the missing information (XXXXX). Write questions with who or what.

1

The letter is from XXXXX.

Who is the letter from?

2

I'm looking for a XXXXX.

What \_\_\_\_\_ you

3

I went to the cinema with XXXXX.

What did you

4

The film was about XXXXX.

What was the film about?

5

I gave the money to XXXXX.

Who did you give the money to?

6

The book was written by XXXXX.

Who wrote the book?

## 46.2 Write questions about the people in the pictures. Use these verbs + a preposition:

go    listen    look    talk-    talk    wait



1 Who is she talking to?

4 What

2 What

5 What

3 Which restaurant

6 Which bus

## 46.3 Write questions beginning Which ... ?

1 Tom's father is in hospital.

Which hospital is he in?

2 We stayed at a hotel.

you

3 Jack plays for a football team.

4 I went to school in this town.

## 46.4 You want some information about another country. You ask somebody who has been there. Ask questions with What is/are ... like?

1 (the roads)    What are the roads like?

2 (the food)

3 (the people)

4 (the weather)

## 46.5 Ask questions with What was/were ... like?

1 Your friend has just come back from holiday. Ask about the weather.  
What was the weather like?

2 Your friend has just come back from the cinema. Ask about the film.

3 Your friend has just finished an English course. Ask about the lessons.

4 Your friend has just come back from holiday. Ask about the hotel.

# What ... ?   Which ... ?   How ... ?

## (questions 4)

**What + noun** (**What colour ... ? / What kind ... ? etc.**)

<input type="checkbox"/> <b>What colour</b> is your car?	<input type="checkbox"/> <b>What colour</b> are your eyes?
<input type="checkbox"/> <b>What size</b> is this shirt?	<input type="checkbox"/> <b>What make</b> is your TV set?
<input type="checkbox"/> <b>What time</b> is it?	<input type="checkbox"/> <b>What day</b> is it today?
<input type="checkbox"/> <b>What kind</b> of job do you want? (or <b>What type</b> of job ... ? / <b>What sort</b> of job ... ?)	

**What** without a noun:

- What's** your favourite colour?
- What** do you want to do tonight?

**Which + noun** (things or people):

- Which train** did you catch – the 9.50 or the 10.30?
- Which doctor** did you see – Doctor Ellis, Doctor Gray or Doctor Hill?

We use **which** without a noun for things, not people:

- Which** is bigger – Canada or Australia?

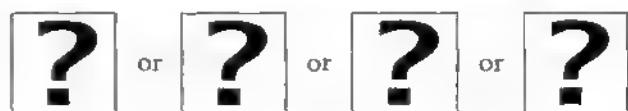
We use **who** for people (without a noun):

- Who** is taller – Joe or Gary? (not **Which** is taller?)

**What or which?**

We use **which** when we are thinking about a small number of possibilities (perhaps 2, 3 or 4):

- We can go this way or that way.  
**Which way** shall we go?
- There are four umbrellas here.  
**Which** is yours?



WHICH?

**What** is more general:

- What's** the capital of Argentina? (of all the cities in Argentina)
- What sort** of music do you like? (of all kinds of music)

Compare:

- What colour** are his eyes? (not **Which colour**?)  
**Which colour** do you prefer, **pink** or **yellow**?
- What** is the longest river in the world?  
**Which** is the longest river – the **Mississippi**, the **Amazon** or the **Nile**?

**How ... ?**

- ‘**How** was the party last night?’ ‘It was great.’
- ‘**How** do you usually go to work?’ ‘By bus.’

You can use **how** + **adjective/adverb** (**how tall** / **how old** / **how often** etc.):

<b>How</b>	<b>tall</b> are you? ‘I’m 1 metre 70.’ <b>big</b> is the house? ‘Not very big.’ <b>old</b> is your mother? ‘She’s 45.’ <b>far</b> is it from here to the airport? ‘Five kilometres.’ <b>often</b> do you use your car? ‘Every day.’ <b>long</b> have they been married? ‘Ten years.’ <b>much</b> was the meal? ‘Thirty pounds.’
------------	---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

## 47.1 Write questions with what.

- 1 I've got a new TV set.
- 2 I want a job.
- 3 I've got a new sweater.
- 4 I got up early this morning.
- 5 I like music.
- 6 I want to buy a car.

(make?) **What make is it?**  
 (kind?) **What kind of job do you want?**  
 (colour?) What ...  
 (time?) ..... get up?  
 (type?) .....  
 (kind?) .....

## 47.2 Complete the questions. Use Which ... ?



## 47.3 Write what/which/who.

- 1 **What** is that man's name?
- 2 **Which** way shall we go? Left or right?
- 3 You can have tea or coffee. ..... do you prefer?
- 4 '..... day is it today?' 'Friday.'
- 5 This is a nice office. ..... desk is yours?
- 6 ..... is your favourite sport?
- 7 ..... is more expensive, meat or fish?
- 8 ..... is older, Liz or Steve?
- 9 ..... kind of camera have you got?
- 10 A: I've got three cameras.  
B: ..... camera do you use most?
- 11 ..... nationality are you?

## 47.4 Complete the questions with How + adjective or adverb (high/long etc.).

- 1 **How high** is Mount Everest?
- 2 ..... is it to the station?
- 3 ..... is Helen?
- 4 ..... do the buses run?
- 5 ..... is the water in the pool?
- 6 ..... have you lived here?

Nearly 9000 metres.  
 It's about two kilometres from here.  
 She's 26.  
 Every ten minutes.  
 Two metres.  
 Nearly three years.

## 47.5 Write questions with How ... ?

- 1 Are you 1 metre 70? 1.75? 1.80? **How tall are you?**
- 2 Is this box one kilogram? Two? Three?
- 3 Are you 20 years old? 22? 25?
- 4 Did you spend £20? £30? £50?
- 5 Do you watch TV every day? Once a week? Never?
- 6 Is it 1000 miles from Paris to Moscow? 1500? 2000?

# How long does it take ... ?

A How long does it take from ... to ... ?



How long does it take by plane from New York to Washington?

It takes an hour.

- How long does it take by train from London to Manchester?
- It takes two hours by train from London to Manchester.
- How long does it take by car from your house to the station?
- It takes ten minutes by car from my house to the station.

B How long does it take to do something?

How long	does did will	it take to ... ?
----------	---------------------	------------------

It	takes took will take		a week a long time three hours	to ...
	doesn't didn't won't	take	long	

- How long does it take to cross the Atlantic by ship?
- 'I came by train.' 'Did you? How long did it take (to get here)?'
- How long will it take to get from here to the hotel?
- It takes a long time to learn a language.
- It doesn't take long to cook an omelette.
- It won't take long to fix the computer.

C How long does it take you to do something?



How long	does did will	it take	you Tom them	to ... ?
----------	---------------------	---------	--------------------	----------

It	takes took will take	me Tom them	a week a long time three hours	to ...
----	----------------------------	-------------------	--------------------------------------	--------

I started reading the book on Monday.  
I finished it on Wednesday evening.

It took me three days to read it.

- How long will it take me to learn to drive?
- It takes Tom 20 minutes to get to work in the morning.
- It took us an hour to do the shopping.
- Did it take you a long time to find a job?
- It will take me an hour to cook dinner.

# Exercises

# Unit 48

## 48.1 Look at the pictures and write questions with How long ... ?



- 1 How long does it take by plane from London to Amsterdam?
- 2 ...
- 3 ...
- 4 ...

## 48.2 How long does it take to do these things? Write full sentences.

- 1 fly from your city/country to London  
*It takes two hours to fly from Madrid to London.*
- 2 fly from your city/country to New York
- 3 study to be a doctor in your country
- 4 walk from your home to the nearest shop
- 5 get from your home to the nearest airport

## 48.3 Write questions with How long did it take ... ?

- 1 (Jane found a job.)                            *How long did it take her to find a job?*
- 2 (I walked to the station.)                      *you*
- 3 (Tom painted the bathroom.)
- 4 (I learnt to ski.)
- 5 (They repaired the computer.)

## 48.4 Read the situations and write sentences with It took ... .

- 1 I read a book last week. I started reading it on Monday. I finished it three days later.  
*It took me three days to read the book.*
- 2 We walked home last night. We left at 10 o'clock and we arrived home at 10.20.
- 3 I learnt to drive last year. I had my first driving lesson in January. I passed my driving test six months later.
- 4 Mark drove to London yesterday. He left home at 7 o'clock and got to London at 10
- 5 Lisa began looking for a job a long time ago. She got a job last week.
- 6 Write a sentence about yourself.

# Do you know where ... ? I don't know what ... etc.



We say:

Where **is** **Paula?**

**but** **Do you know where Paula is?**  
 (not Do you know where is Paula?)

In the same way we say:

I know	}	where Paula is.
I don't know		

Can you tell me

Compare:

Who are those people?  
 How old is Nicole?  
 What time is it?  
 Where can I go?  
 How much is this camera?  
 When are you going away?  
 Where have they gone?  
 What was Kate wearing?

but

Do you know Can you tell me
--------------------------------

I know I don't know I don't remember
--------------------------------------------

who those people are how old Nicole is what time it is where I can go how much this camera is when you're going away where they have gone what Kate was wearing
--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

Questions with **do/does/did** (present simple and past simple)Where **does he live** ?

**but** **Do you know where he lives** ? (not Do you know where does he live?)

Compare:

How do aeroplanes fly?  
 What does Jane want?  
 Why did she go home?  
 Where did I put the key?

but

Do you know I don't know I don't remember I know
-----------------------------------------------------------

how aeroplanes fly what Jane wants why she went home where I put the key
-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------

Questions beginning **Is ... ? / Do ... ? / Can ... ?** etc. (yes/no questions)

Compare:

Is Jack at home?  
 Have they got a car?  
 Can Brian swim?  
 Do they live near here?  
 Did anybody see you?

but

Do you know I don't know	if or whether
-----------------------------	---------------------

Jack is at home they've got a car Brian can swim they live near here anybody saw you
--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

You can use **if** or **whether** in these sentences:

- Do you know if they've got a car? **or** Do you know **whether** they've got a car?
- I don't know if anybody saw me. **or** I don't know **whether** anybody saw me.

## 49.1 Answer these questions with I don't know where/when/why ... etc.

- 1 Have your friends gone home?
- 2 Is Kate in her office?
- 3 Is the castle very old?
- 4 Will Paul be here soon?
- 5 Was he angry because I was late?
- 6 Has Sally lived here a long time?

(where) I don't know where they've gone.  
 (where) I don't know .....?  
 (how old)  
 (when)  
 (why)  
 (how long)

## 49.2 Complete the sentences.

- 1 (How do aeroplanes fly?)
- 2 (Where does Susan work?)
- 3 (What did Peter say?)
- 4 (Why did he go home early?)
- 5 (What time does the meeting begin?)
- 6 (How did the accident happen?)

Do you know how aeroplanes fly .....?  
 I don't know .....?  
 Do you remember .....?  
 I don't know .....?  
 Do you know .....?  
 I don't remember .....?

## 49.3 Which is right?

- 1 Do you know what time is it / it is? (Do you know what time it is is right)
- 2 Why are you / you are going away?
- 3 I don't know where are they / they are going.
- 4 Can you tell me where is the museum / the museum is?
- 5 Where do you want / you want to go for your holidays?
- 6 Do you know what do elephants eat / elephants eat?
- 7 I don't know how far is it / it is from the hotel to the station.

## 49.4 Write questions with Do you know if ... ?

- 1 (Have they got a car?)
- 2 (Are they married?)
- 3 (Does Sue know Bill?)
- 4 (Will Gary be here tomorrow?)
- 5 (Did he pass his exam?)

Do you know if they've got a car?  
 Do you know .....?

## 49.5 Write questions beginning Do you know ... ?

- 1 (What does Laura want?)
- 2 (Where is Paula?)
- 3 (Is she working today?)
- 4 (What time does she start work?)
- 5 (Are the shops open tomorrow?)
- 6 (Where do Sarah and Tim live?)
- 7 (Did they go to Jane's party?)

Do you know what Laura wants?  
 Do .....?

## 49.6 Use your own ideas to complete these sentences.

- 1 Do you know why the bus was late .....?  
 2 Do you know what time .....?  
 3 Excuse me, can you tell me where .....?  
 4 I don't know what .....?  
 5 Do you know if .....?  
 6 Do you know how much .....?



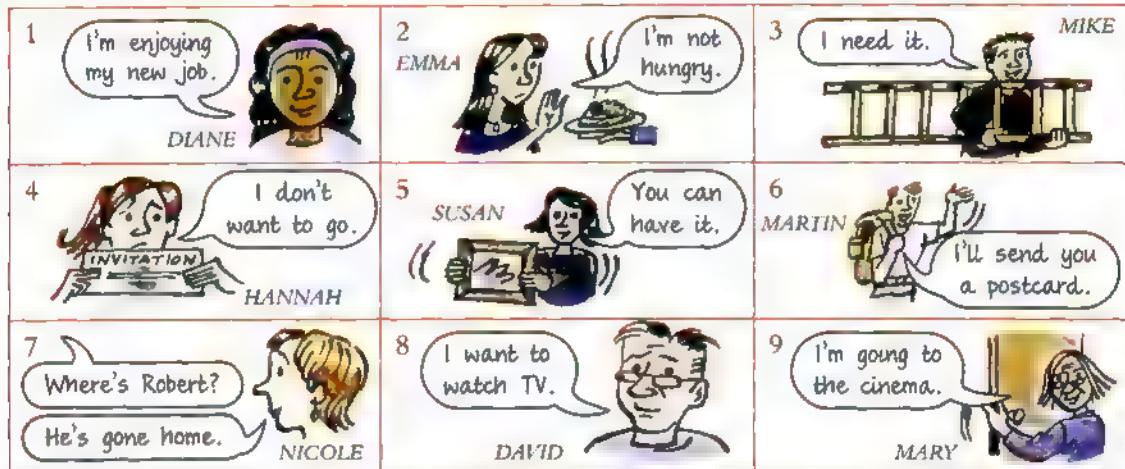
# Exercises

# Unit 50

## 50.1 Read what these people say and write sentences with He/She/They said (that) ... .

1  I've lost my watch.	6  I don't feel very well.
2  I'm very busy.	7  We'll be home late.
3  I can't go to the party.	8  I've just come back from holiday.
4  I have to go out.	9  I'm going to buy a new computer.
5  I'm learning Russian.	10  We haven't got a key.

## 50.2 Use the pictures to complete the sentences.



- 1 I met Diane last week. She said she was enjoying her new job.
- 2 Emma didn't want anything to eat. She said I'm not hungry.
- 3 I wanted to borrow Mike's ladder, but he said I need it.
- 4 Hannah was invited to the party, but she said I don't want to go.
- 5 Susan told me she didn't want the picture. She said You can have it.
- 6 Martin has just gone away on holiday. He said I'll send you a postcard.
- 7 I was looking for Robert. Nicole said Where's Robert?
- 8 'Why did David stay at home?' 'He said I want to watch TV.'
- 9 'Has Mary gone out?' 'I think so. She said I'm going to the cinema.'

## 50.3 Write say/said or tell/told.

1 He <u>said</u> he was tired.	7 The woman <u>said</u> she was a reporter.
2 What did she <u>tell</u> you?	8 The woman <u>told</u> us she was a reporter.
3 Anna <u>said</u> she didn't like Peter.	9 They asked me a lot of questions, but I <u>didn't say</u> them anything.
4 Jack <u>told</u> me that you were ill.	10 They asked me a lot of questions, but I <u>didn't tell</u> anything.
5 Please don't <u>tell</u> Dan what happened.	
6 Did Lucy <u>say</u> she would be late?	

## work/working go/going do/doing

## A work/go/be etc. (infinitive)

We use the infinitive with will/can/must etc.:

will  
shall  
might  
may  
can  
could  
must  
should  
would

<input type="checkbox"/> Anna <b>will</b> be here soon.	→ Units 27–28
<input type="checkbox"/> Shall I open the window?	
<input type="checkbox"/> I <b>might</b> phone you later.	→ Unit 29
<input type="checkbox"/> May I sit here?	
<input type="checkbox"/> I <b>can't</b> meet you tomorrow.	→ Unit 30
<input type="checkbox"/> Could you pass the salt, please?	
<input type="checkbox"/> It's late. I <b>must</b> go now.	→ Unit 31
<input type="checkbox"/> You <b>shouldn't</b> work so hard.	→ Unit 32
<input type="checkbox"/> Would you like some coffee?	→ Unit 34

We use the infinitive with do/does/did:

do/does  
(present simple)  
  
did  
(past simple)

<input type="checkbox"/> Do you <b>work</b> ? → Units 6–7
<input type="checkbox"/> They <b>don't</b> work very hard.
<input type="checkbox"/> Helen <b>doesn't</b> know many people.
<input type="checkbox"/> How much <b>does</b> it <b>cost</b> ?
<input type="checkbox"/> What time <b>did</b> the train <b>leave</b> ? → Unit 12
<input type="checkbox"/> We <b>didn't</b> sleep well.

## B

## to work / to go / to be etc. (to + infinitive)

(I'm) going to ...  
  
(I) have to ...  
  
(I) want to ...  
  
(I) would like to ...  
  
(I) used to ...

<input type="checkbox"/> I'm going to play tennis tomorrow. → Unit 26
<input type="checkbox"/> What are you <b>going to do</b> ?
<input type="checkbox"/> I have to go now. → Unit 33
<input type="checkbox"/> Everybody has <b>to eat</b> .
<input type="checkbox"/> Do you want to go out? → Unit 52
<input type="checkbox"/> They don't want to come with us.
<input type="checkbox"/> I'd like to talk to you. → Unit 34
<input type="checkbox"/> Would you like to go out?
<input type="checkbox"/> Dave used to work in a factory. → Unit 36

## C

## working/going/playing etc.

am/is/are + -ing  
(present continuous)  
  
was/were + -ing  
(past continuous)

<input type="checkbox"/> Please be quiet. I'm <b>working</b> . → Units 3–4, 8, 25
<input type="checkbox"/> Tom isn't <b>working</b> today.
<input type="checkbox"/> What time are you <b>going out</b> ?
<input type="checkbox"/> It was <b>raining</b> , so we didn't go out. → Units 13–14
<input type="checkbox"/> What were you <b>doing</b> when the phone rang?

## 51.1 Complete the sentences. Write: ... phone Paul or ... to phone Paul.

1 I'll ... phone Paul	6 Do you have ... ?
2 I'm going ... to phone Paul	7 You should ...
3 Can you ... Paul?	8 I want ...
4 Shall I ... ?	9 I might ...
5 I'd like ...	10 You must ...

## 51.2 Complete the sentences with a verb from the box. Sometimes you need the infinitive (work/go etc.) and sometimes you need -ing (working/going etc.).

do/doing	get/getting	sleep/sleeping	watch/watching
eat/eating	go-going	stay/staying	wear/wearing
fly/flying	listen/listening	wait/waiting	work/working

- 1 Please be quiet. I'm ... working ... .
- 2 I feel tired today. I didn't ... sleep ... very well last night.
- 3 What time do you usually ... up in the morning?
- 4 'Where are you ... ?' 'To the bank.'
- 5 Did you ... television last night?
- 6 Look at that plane! It's ... very low.
- 7 You can turn off the radio. I'm not ... to it.
- 8 They didn't ... anything because they weren't hungry.
- 9 My friends were ... for me when I arrived.
- 10 'Does Susan always ... glasses?' 'No, only for reading.'
- 11 'What are you ... tonight?' 'I'm ... at home'

## 51.3 Put the verb in the correct form. Choose from:

the infinitive (work/go etc.) or  
to ... (to work / to go etc.) or  
-ing (working/going etc.)

- 1 Shall I ... open ... the window? (open)
- 2 It's late. I have ... to go ... now. (go)
- 3 Amanda isn't ... working ... this week. She's on holiday. (work)
- 4 I'm tired. I don't want ... out. (go)
- 5 It might ... , so take an umbrella with you. (rain)
- 6 What time do you have ... tomorrow morning? (leave)
- 7 I'm sorry I can't ... you. (help)
- 8 My brother is a student. He's ... physics. (study)
- 9 Would you like ... on a trip round the world? (go)
- 10 When you saw Maria, what was she ... ? (wear)
- 11 When you go to London, where are you going ... ? (stay)
- 12 I'm hungry. I must ... something to eat. (have)
- 13 'Where's Gary?' 'He's ... a bath.' (have)
- 14 I used ... a car, but I sold it last year. (have)
- 15 He spoke very quietly. I couldn't ... him. (hear)
- 16 You don't look well. I don't think you should ... to work today. (go)
- 17 I don't know what he said. I wasn't ... to him. (listen)
- 18 I'm sorry I'm late. I had ... a phone call. (make)
- 19 I want ... what happened. (know) You must ... me. (tell)
- 20 May I ... your phone? (use)

to ... (I want to do) and  
-ing (I enjoy doing)

## A verbs + to ... (I want to do)

want	plan	decide	try		+ to ... (to do / to work / to be etc.)
hope	expect	offer	forget		
need	promise	refuse	learn		

- What do you **want to do** this evening?
- It's not very late. We don't **need to go** home yet.
- Tina has **decided to sell** her car.
- You **forgot to switch off** the light when you went out.
- My brother is **learning to drive**.
- I **tried to read** my book, but I was too tired.

## B

## verbs + -ing (I enjoy doing)

enjoy	stop	suggest	+ -ing (doing / working / being etc.)
mind	finish		

- I **enjoy dancing**. (not enjoy to dance)
- I don't mind **getting up** early.
- Has it stopped **raining**?
- Sonia suggested **going** to the cinema.



## C

## verbs + -ing or to ...

like	love	start	continue	+ -ing (doing etc.) or to ... (to do etc.)
prefer	hate	begin		

- Do you **like getting** up early? or Do you like **to get** up early?
- I **prefer travelling** by car. or I prefer **to travel** by car.
- Anna **loves dancing**. or Anna loves **to dance**.
- I **hate being** late. or I hate **to be** late.
- It **started raining**. or It started **to rain**.

## D

## would like to ... etc.

would like	would love	+ to ... (to do / to work / to be etc.)
would prefer	would hate	

- Julia **would like to meet** you.
- I'd **love to go** to Australia. (I'd = I would)
- 'Would you like **to sit down**?' 'No, I'd prefer **to stand**, thank you.'
- I like this city very much. I **wouldn't like to move**.
- I'd **hate to lose** my address book.

# Exercises

# Unit 52

## 52.1 Put the verb in the right form, to ... or -ing.

- 1 I enjoy dancing. (dance)
- 2 What do you want to do tonight? (do)
- 3 Bye! I hope you again soon. (see)
- 4 I learnt when I was five years old. (swim)
- 5 Have you finished the kitchen? (clean)
- 6 Where's Anna? I need her something. (ask)
- 7 Do you enjoy other countries? (visit)

- 8 The weather was nice, so I suggested for a walk by the river. (go)
- 9 Where's Bill? He promised here on time. (be)
- 10 I'm not in a hurry. I don't mind . (wait)
- 11 What have you decided ? (do)
- 12 Gary was very angry and refused to me. (speak)
- 13 I'm tired. I want to bed. (go)
- 14 I was very upset and started . (cry)
- 15 I'm trying . (work) Please stop . (talk)

## 52.2 Complete the sentences using to ... or -ing. Use these verbs:

go go help lose rain read see send wait watch

- 1 'Have you ever been to Australia?' 'No, but I'd love to go.'
- 2 Jane had a lot to do, so I offered her.
- 3 I'm surprised that you're here. I didn't expect you.
- 4 Nicole has a lot of books. She enjoys .
- 5 This ring was my grandmother's. I'd hate it.
- 6 Don't forget us a postcard when you're on holiday.
- 7 I'm not going out until it stops .
- 8 What shall we do this afternoon? Would you like to the beach?
- 9 When I'm tired in the evenings, I like television.
- 10 'Shall we go now?' 'No, I'd prefer a few minutes.'

## 52.3 Complete the answers to the questions.



1 Do you usually get up early?  
2 Do you ever go to museums?  
3 Would you like to go to a museum now?  
4 Do you often write letters?  
5 Have you ever been to New York?  
6 Do you often travel by train?  
7 Shall we walk home or take a taxi?

Yes, I like to get up early  
Yes, I enjoy .  
No, I'm hungry. I'd prefer to a restaurant.  
No, I don't like .  
No, but I'd love one day.  
Yes, I enjoy .  
I don't mind , but a taxi would be quicker.

## 52.4 Complete these sentences. Write about yourself. Use to ... or -ing.

- 1 I enjoy .
- 2 I don't like .
- 3 If it's a nice day tomorrow, I'd like .
- 4 When I'm on holiday, I like .
- 5 I don't mind , but
- 6 I wouldn't like .

## I want you to ... I told you to ...

A I want you to ...



The woman wants to go.

The man doesn't want the woman to go.  
He wants her to stay.

We say:

I want	you	somebody	to do something
	Sarah		

- I want you to be happy. (not I want that you are happy)
- They didn't want anybody to know their secret.
- Do you want me to lend you some money?

We use would like in the same way:

- Would you like me to lend you some money?

B

We also use this structure (*verb* + somebody + to ...) with:

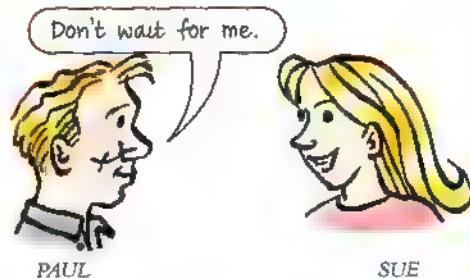
	verb	+	somebody	+	to ...
ask	Sue asked		a friend	to lend	her some money.
tell	I told		you	to be	careful.
advise	What do you advise		me	to do?	
expect	I didn't expect		them	to be	here.
persuade	We persuaded		Gary	to come	with us.
teach	I am teaching		my brother	to swim.	

C

I told you to ... / I told you not to ...



→ Jane told me to wait for her.



→ Paul told Sue not to wait for him.

D

make and let

After make and let, we do not use to:

- He's very funny. He makes me laugh. (not makes me to laugh)
- At school our teacher made us work very hard.
- Sue let me use her computer because mine wasn't working. (not let me to use)

You can say Let's ... (= Let us) when you want people to do things with you:

- Come on! Let's dance.
- 'Do you want to go out tonight?' 'No, I'm tired. Let's stay at home.'

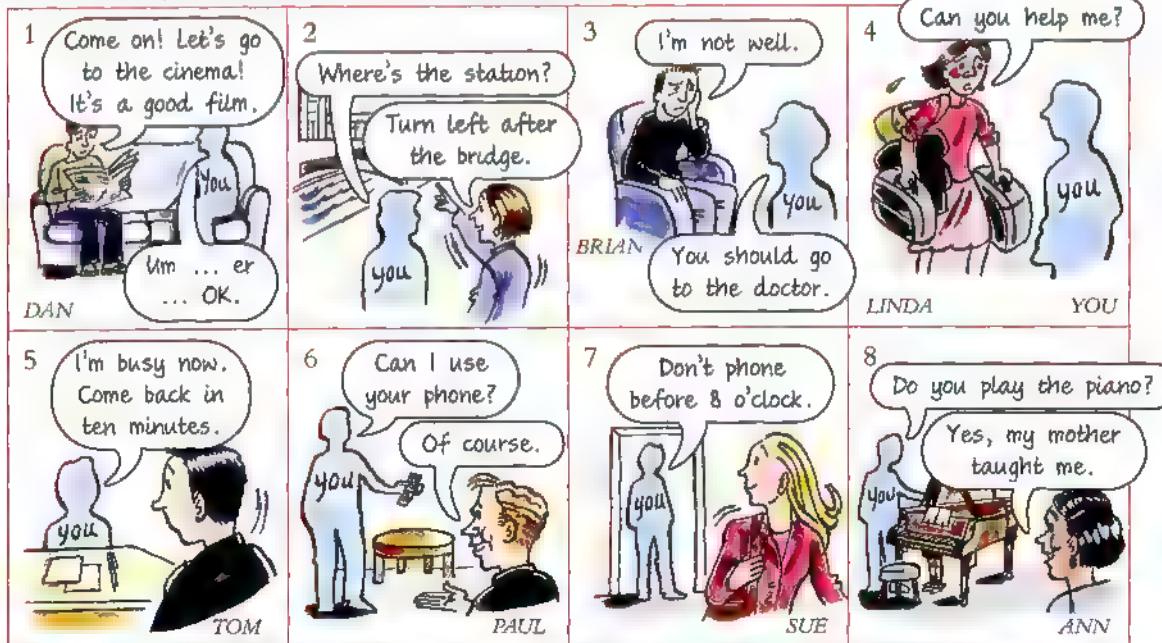
# Exercises

# Unit 53

## 53.1 Write sentences beginning I want you ... / I don't want you ... / Do you want me ... ?

- 1 (you must come with me) I want you to come with me.
- 2 (listen carefully) I want
- 3 (please don't be angry) I don't
- 4 (shall I wait for you?) Do you
- 5 (don't phone me tonight)
- 6 (you must meet Sarah)

## 53.2 Look at the pictures and complete the sentences.



- 1 Dan persuaded me to go to the cinema.
- 2 I wanted to get to the station. A woman told you
- 3 Brian wasn't well. I advised you
- 4 Linda had a lot of luggage. She asked you
- 5 I was too busy to talk to Tom. I told you
- 6 I wanted to make a phone call. Paul let you
- 7 Sue is going to phone later. I told you
- 8 Ann's mother taught you

## 53.3 Complete these sentences with the verbs in the list. Sometimes to is necessary (to go / to wait etc.); sometimes to is not necessary (go/wait etc.).

arrive   borrow   get   go   go   make   repeat   tell   think   wait

- 1 Please stay here. I don't want you to go yet.
- 2 I didn't hear what she said, so I asked her it.
- 3 'Shall we begin?' 'No, let's a few minutes'
- 4 Are they already here? I expected them much later.
- 5 Kevin's parents didn't want him married.
- 6 I want to stay here. You can't make me with you.
- 7 'Is that your bicycle?' 'No, it's John's. He let me it'
- 8 Rachel can't come to the party. She told me you.
- 9 Would you like a drink? Would you like me some coffee?
- 10 'Kate doesn't like me.' 'What makes you that?'

## I went to the shop to ...

Paula wanted a newspaper, so she went to the shop.

Why did she go to the shop?  
To get a newspaper.

She went to the shop to get a newspaper.



**to ... (to get / to see etc.)** tells us *why* a person does something:

- 'Why are you going out?' 'To get some bread.'
- Catherine went to the station to meet her friend.
- Sue turned on the television to watch the news.
- I'd like to go to Spain to learn Spanish.

**money/time to (do something):**

- We need some money to buy food.
- I haven't got time to watch television.

**B**

**to ... and for ...**

**to + verb**

(**to get / to see etc.**)

- I went to the shop to get a newspaper.  
(not for get)
- They're going to Brazil to see their friends.
- We need some money to buy food.

**for + noun**

(**for a newspaper / for food etc.**)

- I went to the shop for a newspaper.
- They're going to Brazil for a holiday.
- We need some money for food.

**C**

**wait for ... :**

- Please wait for me.
- Are you waiting for the bus?

**wait to (do something):**

- Hurry up! I'm waiting to go.
- Are you waiting to see the doctor?

**wait for (somebody/something) to ... :**

- I can't go out yet. I'm waiting for John to phone.
- Are you waiting for the doctor to come?



**54.1 Write sentences beginning I went to ... . Choose from the boxes.**

the cafe	the post office	+ buy some food	get some stamps
the chemist	the supermarket	get some medicine	meet a friend

1 I went to the post office to get some stamps.

2 I went

3

4

**54.2 Complete the sentences. Choose from the box.**

to get some fresh air	to read the newspaper	to wake him up
to open this door	to see who it was	to watch the news

1 I turned on the television to watch the news

2 Alice sat down in an armchair

3 Do I need a key

4 I went for a walk by the river

5 I knocked on the door of David's room

6 The doorbell rang, so I looked out of the window

**54.3 Use your own ideas to finish these sentences. Use to ... .**

1 I went to the shop to get a newspaper

2 I'm very busy. I haven't got time

3 I phoned Ann

4 I'm going out

5 I borrowed some money

**54.4 Write to or for.**

1 I went out to get some bread.

2 We went to a restaurant have dinner.

3 Robert wants to go to university study economics.

4 I'm going to London an interview next week.

5 I'm going to London visit some friends of mine.

6 Have you got time a cup of coffee?

7 I got up late this morning. I didn't have time wash.

8 Everybody needs money live.

9 We didn't have any money a taxi, so we walked home.

10 The office is very small. There's space only a desk and chair.

11 A: Excuse me, are you waiting use the phone?

B: No, I'm waiting somebody.

**54.5 Complete these sentences. Choose from:**

John / phone it / to arrive you / tell me the film / begin

1 I can't go out yet. I'm waiting for John to phone

2 I sat down in the cinema and waited

3 We called an ambulance and waited

4 'Do you know what to do?' 'No, I'm waiting

## go to ...    go on ...    go for ...    go -ing

A go to ... (go to work / go to London / go to a concert etc.)

- What time do you usually **go to work**?
- I'm **going to China** next week.
- Sophie didn't want to **go to the concert**.
- 'Where's Tom?' 'He's **gone to bed**.'
- I **went to the dentist** yesterday.

go to



go to sleep = start to sleep:

- I was very tired and **went to sleep** quickly.

go home (without to)

- I'm **going home** now. (not going to home)

B

go on ...

go on	holiday a trip a tour an excursion a cruise strike
-------	-------------------------------------------------------------------

- We're **going on holiday** next week.
- Children often **go on school trips**.
- When we were in Scotland, we **went on a lot of excursions** to different places.
- Workers at the airport have **gone on strike**. (= they are refusing to work)

C

go for ...

go (somewhere) for	a walk a run a swim a drink a meal
--------------------	------------------------------------------------

- 'Where's Emma?' 'She's **gone for a walk**.'
- Do you **go for a run** every morning?
- The water looks nice. I'm **going for a swim**.
- I met Chris in town, so we **went for a coffee**.
- Shall we **go out for a meal**? I know a good restaurant.

D

go + -ing

We use go + -ing for many sports (**swimming** / **skiing** etc.) and also **shopping**.

I go he is <b>going</b> we <b>went</b> they have <b>gone</b> she wants to <b>go</b>	shopping swimming fishing sailing skiing jogging    etc.
-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------	-------------------------------------------------------------------------

- Are you **going shopping** this afternoon?
- It's a nice day. Let's **go swimming**. (or Let's **go for a swim**.)
- Richard has a small boat and he often **goes sailing**.
- I **went jogging** before breakfast this morning.



## 55.1 Write to/on/for where necessary.

- 1 I'm going to China next week.
- 2 Richard often goes — sailing. (*no preposition*)
- 3 Sue went — Mexico last year.
- 4 Would you like to go — the cinema this evening?
- 5 Jack goes — jogging every morning.
- 6 I'm going out — a walk. Do you want to come?
- 7 I'm tired because I went — bed very late last night.
- 8 Martin is going — holiday — Italy next week.
- 9 The weather was warm and the river was clean, so we went — a swim.
- 10 The taxi drivers went — strike when I was in New York.
- 11 I need some stamps, so I'm going — the post office.
- 12 It's late. I have to go — home now.
- 13 Would you like to go — a tour of the city?
- 14 Shall we go out — dinner this evening?
- 15 My parents are going — a cruise this summer.

## 55.2 Use the pictures to complete the sentences. Use go/goes-going/went + -ing.



- 1 Richard has a boat. He often goes sailing.
- 2 Last Saturday Diane went sailing.
- 3 Gary swims every day.
- 4 Nicole is going on holiday next month. She is going.
- 5 Peter is going out later. He has to walk.
- 6 Sarah jogged after work yesterday.

## 55.3 Complete the sentences. Use the words in the box. Use to/on/for if necessary.

<del>a swim</del>	holiday	Portugal	shopping	sleep
a walk	home	riding	skiing	university

- 1 The water looks nice. Let's go for a swim.
- 2 After leaving school, Tina went — where she studied psychology.
- 3 I'm going — now. I have to buy a few things.
- 4 I was very tired last night. I sat down in an armchair and went —.
- 5 I wasn't enjoying the party, so I went — early.
- 6 We live near the mountains. In winter we go — most weekends.
- 7 Richard has got a horse. He goes — a lot.
- 8 The weather is nice. Shall we go — along the river?
- 9 A: Are you going — soon?  
B: Yes, next month. We're going —. We've never been —.

## get

**A** get a letter / get a job etc. (get + noun) = receive/buy/find:

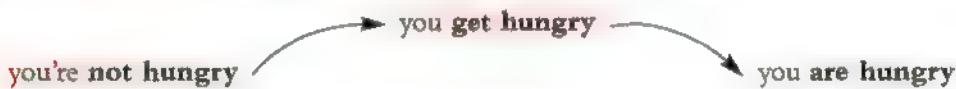


- 'Did you **get** my postcard?'    'Yes, I **got** it yesterday.' (= receive)
- I like your sweater. Where did you **get** it? (= buy)
- Is it difficult to **get** a job at the moment? (= find)
- (on the phone) 'Hello, can I speak to Lisa, please?'    'Sure. I'll **get** her.'

also get a bus / a train / a taxi (= take a bus/train etc.):

- 'Did you walk here?'    'No, I **got** the bus.'

**B** get hungry / get cold / get tired etc. (get + adjective) = become:



- If you don't eat, you **get hungry**.
- Drink your coffee. It's **getting cold**.
- I'm sorry your mother is ill. I hope she **gets better** soon.
- It was raining very hard. We didn't have an umbrella, so we **got very wet**.

also get married

Nicole and Frank are **getting married** soon.

get dressed (= put your clothes on)

I got up and **got dressed** quickly.

get lost (= lose your way)

We didn't have a map, so we **got lost**.

**C** get to a place = arrive:

- I usually **get to work** before 8.30. (= arrive at work)
- We left London at 10 o'clock and **got to Manchester** at 12.45.

get to

get here/there (without to):

- How did you **get here**? By bus?

get home (without to):

- What time did you **get home** last night?

**D**

get in/out/on/off



get in (a car)



get out (of a car)



get on



get off  
(a bus / a train / a plane)

- Kate **got in the car** and drove away. (You can also say: Kate **got into** the car and ...)
- A car stopped and a man **got out**. (but A man **got out of** the car.)
- We **got on the bus** outside the hotel and **got off** in Church Street.

## 56.1 Complete these sentences. Use get/gets and choose from the box.

a doctor	a lot of rain	a taxi	my postcard	the job
a good salary	a new computer	a ticket	some milk	your jacket

- 1 Did you get my postcard ? I sent it a week ago.
- 2 Where did you ..... ? It's very nice.
- 3 Quick! This man is ill. We must .....
- 4 I don't want to walk home. Let's .....
- 5 Tom has an interview tomorrow. I hope he .....
- 6 When you go out, can you ..... ?
- 7 'Are you going to the concert?' 'Yes, if I can ..... :
- 8 Margaret has got a well-paid job. She .....
- 9 The weather is horrible here in winter. We .....
- 10 I'm going to ..... The one I have is too slow.

## 56.2 Complete these sentences. Use getting + these words:

~~old~~ dark late married ready

- 1 Drink your coffee. It's getting cold.
- 2 Turn on the light. It's .....
- 3 'I'm ..... next week.' 'Really? Congratulations!'
- 4 'Where's Karen?' 'She's ..... to go out.'
- 5 It's ..... . It's time to go home.

## 56.3 Complete the sentences. Use get/gets/got + these words:

angry better hungry lost married old wet

- 1 If you don't eat, you get hungry .
- 2 Don't go out in the rain. You'll .....
- 3 My brother ..... last year. His wife's name is Sarah.
- 4 Martin is always very calm. He never .....
- 5 We tried to find the hotel, but we .....
- 6 Everybody wants to stay young, but we all .....
- 7 Yesterday the weather wasn't so good at first, but it ..... during the day.

## 56.4 Write sentences with I left ... and got to ...

- 1 home / 7.30 → work / 8.15  
I left home at 7.30 and got to work at 8.15.
- 2 London / 10.15 → Bristol / 11.45  
I left London at 10.15 and .....
- 3 the party / 11.15 → home / midnight  
I left .....
- 4 Write a sentence about yourself.  
I left .....

## 56.5 Write got in / got out of / got on / got off.

- 1 Kate ..... the car and drove away.
- 2 I ..... the bus and walked to my house from the bus stop.
- 3 Isabel ..... the car, shut the door and went into a shop.
- 4 I made a stupid mistake. I ..... the wrong train.

# do and make

**Do** is a general word for actions:

- What are you **doing** this evening? (*not* What are you **making**?)
- 'Shall I open the window?' 'No, it's OK. I'll **do** it.'
- Rachel's job is very boring. She **does** the same thing every day.
- I **did** a lot of things yesterday.

**What do you do?** = What's your job?:

- 'What do you **do**?' 'I work in a bank.'

B

**Make** = produce/create. For example:



She's **making** coffee. He has **made** a cake. They **make** umbrellas. It was **made** in China.

Compare **do** and **make**:

- I **did** a lot yesterday. I **cleaned** my room, I **wrote** some letters and I **made** a cake.
- A: What do you **do** in your free time? Sport? Reading? Hobbies?  
B: I **make** clothes. I **make** dresses and jackets. I also **make** toys for my children.

C

Expressions with **do**

<b>do</b>	an exam / a test a course homework housework somebody a favour an exercise
-----------	-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

- I'm **doing** my driving test next week.
- John has just **done** a training course.
- Our children have to **do** a lot of **homework**.
- I hate **doing** housework, especially cleaning.
- Sue, could you **do** me a favour?
- I go for a run and **do** exercises every morning.

also **do the shopping** / **do the washing** / **do the washing-up** / **do the ironing** / **do the cooking** etc.:

- I **did the washing**, but I didn't **do the shopping**.

D

Expressions with **make**

<b>make</b>	a mistake an appointment a phone call a list a noise a bed
-------------	---------------------------------------------------------------------------

- I'm sorry, I **made** a mistake.
- I need to **make** an appointment to see the doctor.
- Excuse me, I have to **make** a phone call.
- Have you **made** a shopping list?
- It's late. Don't **make** a noise.
- Sometimes I forget to **make** my bed in the morning.

We say **make a film** *but* **take a photograph**:

- When was this film **made**? *but* When was this photograph **taken**?

## 57.1 Write make/making/made or do/doing/did/done.

- 1 'Shall I open the window?' 'No, it's OK. I'll do it.'
- 2 What did you ..... at the weekend? Did you go away?
- 3 Do you know how to ..... bread?
- 4 Paper is ..... from wood.
- 5 Richard didn't help me. He sat in an armchair and ..... nothing.
- 6 'What do you .....?' 'I'm a doctor.'
- 7 I asked you to clean the bathroom. Have you ..... it?
- 8 'What do they ..... in that factory?' 'Shoes.'
- 9 I'm ..... some coffee. Would you like some?
- 10 Why are you angry with me? I didn't ..... anything wrong.
- 11 'What are you ..... tomorrow afternoon?' 'I'm working.'

## 57.2 What are these people doing?



1	He's <u>making</u> a cake.	6
2	They <u>.....</u>	7
3	He <u>.....</u>	8
4	<u>.....</u>	9
5	<u>.....</u>	10

## 57.3 Write make or do in the correct form.

- 1 I hate doing housework, especially cleaning.
- 2 Why do you always ..... the same mistake?
- 3 'Can you ..... me a favour?' 'It depends what it is.'
- 4 'Have you ..... your homework?' 'Not yet.'
- 5 I need to see the dentist, but I haven't ..... an appointment.
- 6 I'm ..... a course in photography at the moment. It's very good.
- 7 The last time I ..... an exam was ten years ago.
- 8 How many phone calls did you ..... yesterday?
- 9 When you've finished Exercise 1, you can ..... Exercise 2.
- 10 There's something wrong with the car. The engine is ..... a strange noise.
- 11 It was a bad mistake. It was the worst mistake I've ever ......
- 12 Let's ..... a list of all the things we have to ..... today.

## have

have and have got

I've got (something) or I have (something) = it is mine:

- I've got a new car. or I have a new car.
- Sue has got long hair. or Sue has long hair.
- Have they got any children? or Do they have any children?
- Tim hasn't got a job. or Tim doesn't have a job.
- How much time have you got? or How much time do you have?

also

I've got	a headache / (a) toothache / a pain (in my leg etc.)
I have	a cold / a cough / a sore throat / a temperature / flu etc.

- I've got a headache. or I have a headache.
- Have you got a cold? or Do you have a cold?

The past is I had (without got) / I didn't have / Did you have? etc.:

- When I first met Sue, she had short hair.
- He didn't have any money because he didn't have a job.
- Did you have enough time to do everything you wanted?

## B

have breakfast / have a shower etc.

In these expressions have = eat/drink/take etc. You can't use 'have got'.

have	breakfast / lunch / dinner a meal / a sandwich / a pizza etc. a cup of coffee / a glass of milk etc. something to eat/drink	<input type="checkbox"/> 'Where's Liz?' 'She's having lunch.' <input type="checkbox"/> I don't usually have breakfast. <input type="checkbox"/> I had three cups of coffee this morning. <input type="checkbox"/> 'Have a biscuit!' 'Oh, thank you.'
------	--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------	---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

We also use have (not have got) in these expressions:

have	a bath / a shower a rest / a holiday / a party a nice time / a good trip / fun etc. a walk / a swim / a game (of tennis etc.) a dream / an accident a baby a look (at something)	<input type="checkbox"/> I had a shower this morning. <input type="checkbox"/> We're having a party next week. You must come. <input type="checkbox"/> Enjoy your holiday. Have a nice time! <input type="checkbox"/> Did you have a good time in Tokyo? <input type="checkbox"/> Sandra has just had a baby. <input type="checkbox"/> Can I have a look at your newspaper?
------	----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------	-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

## C

Compare:

Have got or have

- I've got / I have a new shower. It's very good.

Have (not have got)

- I have a shower every morning.  
(not I've got a shower every morning)
- A: Where's Paul?  
B: He's having a shower.  
(= he's washing now)

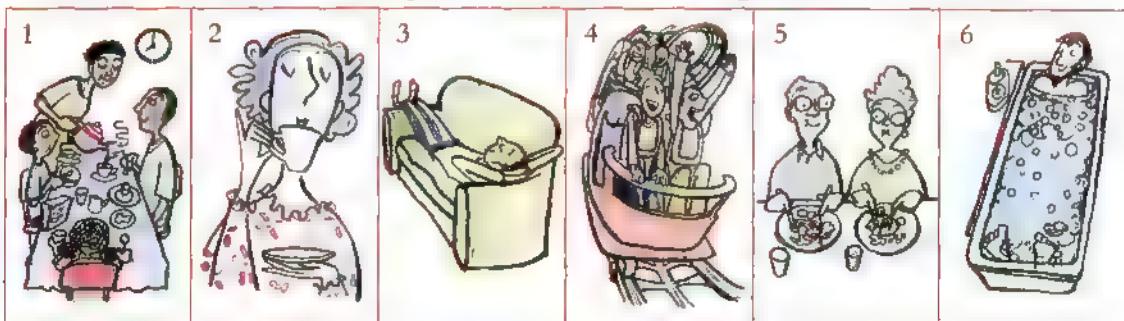


## 58.1 Write the correct form of have or have got.

1 I didn't have	time to do the shopping yesterday.	(I / not / have)
2 Has Lisa got (OR Does Lisa have)	a car? 'No, she can't drive.'	(Lisa / have?)
3 He can't open the door.	a key.	(he / not / have)
4	a cold last week. He's better now.	(Gary / have)
5 What's wrong?	a headache?	(you / have?)
6 We wanted to go by taxi, but	enough money	(we / not / have)
7 Liz is very busy.	much free time.	(she / not / have)
8	any problems when you were on holiday?	(you / have?)

## 58.2 What are these people doing? Choose from the list:

a bath    breakfast    a cup of tea    dinner    a good time    a rest



1 They're having breakfast.	4 They
2 She	5
3 He	6

## 58.3 What do you say in these situations? Use have.

- 1 Emily is going on holiday. What do you say to her before she goes?  
Have a nice holiday!
- 2 You meet Claire at the airport. She has just got off her plane. Ask her about the flight.  
Did you have a good flight?
- 3 Tim is going on a long trip. What do you say to him before he leaves?
- 4 It's Monday morning. You are at work. Ask Paula about her weekend.
- 5 Paul has just come home after playing tennis with a friend. Ask him about the game.
- 6 Rachel is going out this evening. What do you say to her before she goes?
- 7 Mark has just returned from holiday. Ask him about his holiday.

## 58.4 Complete the sentences. Use have/had and choose from the list.

an accident    a glass of water    a look    a walk    a party    something to eat

- 1 We had a party a few weeks ago. We invited 50 people.
- 2 'Shall we have something to eat'? 'No, I'm not hungry.'
- 3 I was thirsty, so I had a glass of water.
- 4 I like to get up early and have a walk before breakfast.
- 5 Tina is a very good driver. She has never had an accident.
- 6 There's something wrong with the engine of my car. Can you have a look at it?

## I/me      he/him      they/them etc.

People



subject	I	we	you	he	she	they
object	me	us	you	him	her	them

subject

I I know Tom.  
we We know Tom.  
you You know Tom.  
he He knows Tom.  
she She knows Tom.  
they They know Tom.

object

Tom knows me.  
Tom knows us.  
Tom knows you.  
Tom knows him.  
Tom knows her.  
Tom knows them.

KO W  
KO my

Things

It's nice. I like it.



subject	it
object	it

They're nice.  
I like them.

they
them

- I don't want this book. You can have it.
- I don't want these books. You can have them.
- Diane never drinks milk. She doesn't like it.
- I never go to parties. I don't like them.

We use **me/her/them** etc. (object) after a preposition (for/to/with etc.):

- This letter isn't for me. It's for you.
- Who is that woman? Why are you looking at her?
- We're going to the cinema. Do you want to come with us?
- Sue and Kevin are going to the cinema. Do you want to go with them?
- 'Where's the newspaper?' 'You're sitting on it.'

give it/them to ... :

- I want that book. Please give it to me.
- Robert needs these books. Can you give them to him, please?

## 59.1 Complete the sentences with him/her/them.

- 1 I don't know those girls. Do you know them ?
- 2 I don't know that man. Do you know him ?
- 3 I don't know those people. Do you know them ?
- 4 I don't know David's wife. Do you know her ?
- 5 I don't know Mr Stevens. Do you know him ?
- 6 I don't know Sarah's parents. Do you know them ?
- 7 I don't know the woman in the black coat. Do you know her ?

*those - e tex*

## 59.2 Complete the sentences. Use I/me/you/she/her etc.

- 1 I want to see her, but she doesn't want to see me.
- 2 They want to see me, but I don't want to see them.
- 3 She wants to see him, but he doesn't want to see her.
- 4 We want to see them, but they don't want to see us.
- 5 He wants to see us, but we don't want to see him.
- 6 They want to see her, but she doesn't want to see them.
- 7 I want to see them, but they don't want to see me.
- 8 You want to see her, but she doesn't want to see you.

*them  
her  
we us  
him  
them  
me  
you*

## 59.3 Write sentences beginning I like ... , I don't like ... or Do you like ... ?

- 1 I don't eat tomatoes. I don't like them.
- 2 George is a very nice man. I like .
- 3 This jacket isn't very nice. I don't .
- 4 This is my new car. Do ?
- 5 Mrs Clark is not very friendly. I .
- 6 These are my new shoes. ?

## 59.4 Complete the sentences. Use I/me/he/him etc.

- 1 Who is that woman? Why are you looking at her ?
- 2 'Do you know that man?' 'Yes, I work with him' .
- 3 Where are the tickets? I can't find them .
- 4 I can't find my keys. Where are they ?
- 5 We're going out. You can come with us .
- 6 I've got a new computer. Do you want to see it ?
- 7 Maria likes music. She plays the piano.
- 8 I don't like dogs. I'm afraid of them .
- 9 I'm talking to you. Please listen to me .
- 10 Where is Anna? I want to talk to her .
- 11 You can have these CDs. I don't want them .
- 12 My brother has a new job, but he doesn't like it very much.

## 59.5 Complete the sentences.

- 1 I need that book. Can you give it to me ?
- 2 He wants the key. Can you give it ?
- 3 She wants the keys. Can you give them ?
- 4 I want that letter. Can you give it ?
- 5 They want the money. Can you give it ?
- 6 We want the photographs. Can you give them ?

# my/his/their etc.



I →	my
we →	our
you →	your
he →	his
she →	her
they →	their

I like my house.  
We like our house.  
You like your house.  
He likes his house.  
She likes her house.  
They like their house.

it → its

Oxford (= it) is famous for its university.

We use my/your/his etc. + noun:

my hands    his new car    her parents  
our clothes    your best friend    their room

B

## his/her/their

DONNA



her car

(= Donna's car)



her husband

(= Donna's husband)



her children

(= Donna's children)



ANDY



his bicycle



his sister



his parents



MR AND MRS LEE



their son



their daughter



their children



C

## its and it's

its              Oxford is famous for its university.

it's (= it is)    I like Oxford. It's a nice place. (= It is a nice place.)

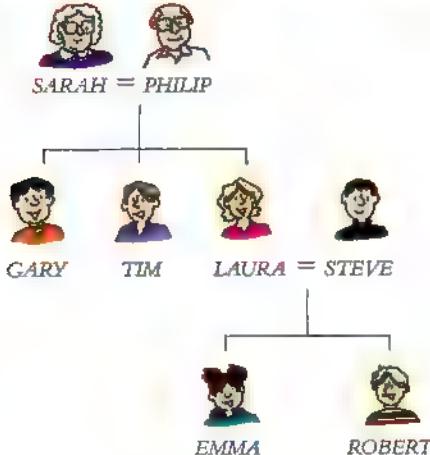
## 60.1 Complete the sentences in the same way.

- 1 I'm going to wash my hands.
- 2 She's going to wash ..... hands.
- 3 We're going to wash ......
- 4 He's going to wash ......
- 5 They're going to wash ......
- 6 Are you going to wash .....?

## 60.2 Complete the sentences in the same way.

- 1 He lives with his parents.
- 2 They live with ..... parents.
- 3 We ..... parents.
- 4 Jane lives ......
- 5 I ..... parents.
- 6 John ......
- 7 Do you live .....?
- 8 Most children ......

## 60.3 Look at the family tree, and complete the sentences with his/her/their.



- 1 I saw Sarah with her husband, Philip.
- 2 I saw Laura and Steve with ..... children.
- 3 I saw Steve with ..... wife, Laura.
- 4 I saw Gary with ..... brother, Tim.
- 5 I saw Laura with ..... brother, Tim.
- 6 I saw Sarah and Philip with ..... son, Tim.
- 7 I saw Laura with ..... parents.
- 8 I saw Emma and Robert with ..... parents.

## 60.4 Write my/our/your/his/her/their/its.

- 1 Do you like your job?
- 2 I know Mr Watson, but I don't know ..... wife.
- 3 Alice and Tom live in London. ..... son lives in Australia.
- 4 We're going to have a party. We're going to invite all ..... friends.
- 5 Anna is going out with ..... friends this evening.
- 6 I like tennis. It's ..... favourite sport.
- 7 'Is that ..... car?' 'No, I haven't got a car.'
- 8 I want to phone Maria. Do you know ..... phone number?
- 9 Do you think most people are happy in ..... jobs?
- 10 I'm going to wash ..... hair before I go out.
- 11 This is a beautiful tree. ..... leaves are a beautiful colour.
- 12 John has a brother and a sister. ..... brother is 25, and ..... sister is 21.

## 60.5 Complete the sentences. Use my/his/their etc. with these words:

coat    homework    house    husband    job    key    name

- 1 Jim doesn't enjoy his job. It's not very interesting.
- 2 I can't get in. I haven't got ......
- 3 Sally is married. ..... works in a bank.
- 4 Please take off ..... and sit down.
- 5 'What are the children doing?' 'They're doing .....'
- 6 'Do you know that man?' 'Yes, but I don't know .....'
- 7 We live in Barton Street. ..... is at the end on the left.

## Whose is this? It's mine/yours/hers etc.



I → my → mine	we → our → ours	you → your → yours	he → his → his	she → her → hers	they → their → theirs
---------------	-----------------	--------------------	----------------	------------------	-----------------------

It's my money.	It's mine.
It's our money.	It's ours.
It's your money.	It's yours.
It's his money.	It's his.
It's her money.	It's hers.
It's their money.	It's theirs.

## B

We use **my/your** etc.+ noun (**my hands / your book** etc.):

- My hands are cold.
- Is this your book?
- Helen gave me her umbrella.
- It's their problem, not our problem.

We use **mine/yours** etc. without a noun:

- Is this book **mine** or **yours**? (= my book or your book)
- I didn't have an umbrella, so Helen gave me **hers**. (= her umbrella)
- It's their problem, not **ours**. (= not our problem)
- We went in our car, and they went in **theirs**. (= their car)

You can use **his** with or without a noun:

- 'Is this **his camera** or **hers**?'    'It's **his**'

## C

a friend of **mine** / a friend of **his** / some friends of **yours** etc.

- I went out to meet a friend of **mine**. (not a friend of me)
- Tom was in the restaurant with a friend of **his**. (not a friend of him)
- Are those people friends of **yours**? (not friends of you)

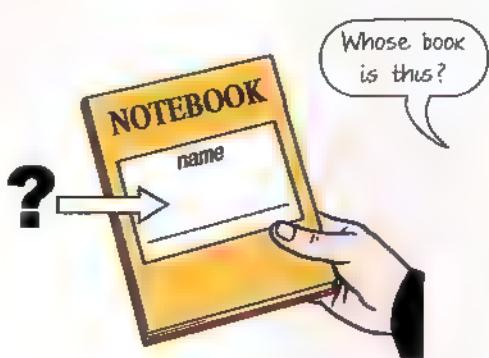
## D

Whose ... ?

- Whose book is this? (= Is it your book?  
his book? my book? etc.)

You can use **whose** with or without a noun:

<input type="checkbox"/> Whose money is this? Whose is this?	}	It's mine.
<input type="checkbox"/> Whose shoes are these? Whose are these?		



## 61.1 Complete the sentences with mine/yours etc.

1 It's your money. It's <u>yours</u> .	5 It's their house. It's <u>                </u>
2 It's my bag. It's <u>                </u> .	6 They're your books. They're <u>                </u>
3 It's our car. It's <u>                </u> .	7 They're my glasses. They're <u>                </u>
4 They're her shoes. They're <u>                </u> .	8 It's his coat. It's <u>                </u>

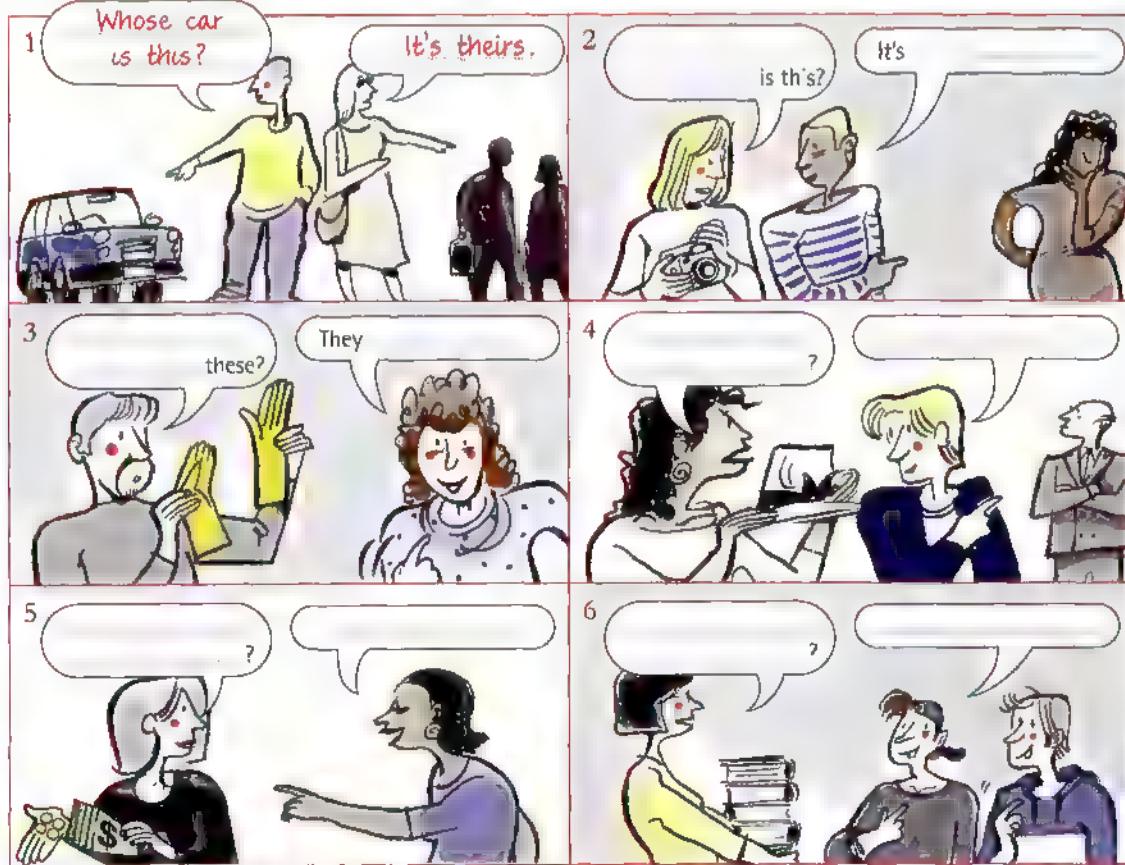
## 61.2 Choose the right word.

- 1 It's their/theirs problem, not our/ours. (their and ours are right)
- 2 This is a nice camera. Is it your/yours?
- 3 That's not my/mine umbrella. My/Mine is black.
- 4 Whose books are these? Your/Yours or my/mine?
- 5 Catherine is going out with her/hers friends this evening.
- 6 My/Mine room is bigger than her/hers.
- 7 They've got two children, but I don't know their/theirs names.
- 8 Can we use your washing machine? Our/Ours isn't working.

## 61.3 Complete these sentences. Use friend(s) of mine/yours etc.

- 1 I went to the cinema with a friend of mine.
- 2 They went on holiday with some friends of theirs.
- 3 She's going out with a friend.
- 4 We had dinner with some                 .
- 5 I played tennis with a                 .
- 6 Tom is going to meet a                 .
- 7 Do you know those people? Are they                 ?

## 61.4 Look at the pictures. What are the people saying?



# I/me/my/mine



**I etc.**  
(→ Unit 59)

**me etc.**  
(→ Unit 59)

**my etc.**  
(→ Unit 60)

**mine etc.**  
(→ Unit 61)

	I know Tom.	Tom knows me.	It's my car.	It's mine.
	We know Tom.	Tom knows us.	It's our car.	It's ours.
	You know Tom.	Tom knows you.	It's your car.	It's yours.
	He knows Tom.	Tom knows him.	It's his car.	It's his.
	She knows Tom.	Tom knows her.	It's her car.	It's hers.
	They know Tom.	Tom knows them.	It's their car.	It's theirs.

B Study these examples:

- 'Do **you** know that man?'    'Yes, I know **him**, but I can't remember **his name**.'
- **She** was very pleased because **we** invited **her** to stay with **us** at **our house**.
- A: Where are the children? Have **you** seen them?  
B: Yes, **they** are playing with **their friends** in the park.
- That's **my pen**. Can **you** give it to **me**, please?
- 'Is this **your umbrella**?'    'No, it's **yours**.'
- He didn't have an umbrella, so **she** gave **him hers**. (= she gave her umbrella to him)
- I'm going out with a friend of **mine** this evening. (*not a friend of me*)

## 62.1 Answer the questions in the same way.

 <p>1      Do you know that man?</p> <p>Yes, I know him, but I can't remember his name.</p>	 <p>2      Do you know that woman?</p> <p>Yes, I know ..... , but I can't remember .....</p>
 <p>3      Do you know those people?</p> <p>Yes, I ..... , but I ..... names.</p>	 <p>4      Do you know me?</p> <p>Yes, I ..... , but I ..... house.</p>

## 62.2 Complete the sentences in the same way.

- 1 We invited her to stay with us at our house
- 2 He invited us to stay with ..... at his house.
- 3 They invited me to stay with ..... house.
- 4 I invited them to stay ..... house.
- 5 She invited us to stay ..... house.
- 6 Did you invite him ..... house?

## 62.3 Complete the sentences in the same way.

- 1 I gave him my address, and he gave me his
- 2 I gave her my address, and she gave me
- 3 He gave me his address, and I gave
- 4 We gave them ..... address, and they gave
- 5 She gave him ..... address, and he gave
- 6 You gave us ..... address, and we gave
- 7 They gave you ..... address, and you gave

## 62.4 Write him/her/yours etc.

- 1 Where's Amanda? Have you seen her ?
- 2 Where are my keys? Where did I put ..... ?
- 3 This letter is for Bill. Can you give it to ..... ?
- 4 We don't see ..... neighbours much. They're not at home very often.
- 5 'I can't find my pen. Can I use ..... ?' 'Yes, of course.'
- 6 We're going to the cinema. Why don't you come with ..... ?
- 7 Did your sister pass ..... exams?
- 8 Some people talk about ..... jobs all the time.
- 9 Last night I went out for a meal with a friend of .....

# myself/yourself/themselves etc.



He's looking at **himself**.



**Help yourself!**



They're enjoying **themselves**.

I → me	→ myself
he → him	→ himself
she → her	→ herself
you → you	→ <b>yourself</b> <b>yourselves</b>
we → us	→ <b>ourselves</b>
they → them	→ <b>themselves</b>

- I looked at **myself** in the mirror.
- He cut **himself** with a knife.
- She fell off her bike, but she didn't hurt **herself**.
- Please help **yourself**. (*one person*)
- Please help **yourselves**. (*two or more people*)
- We had a good holiday. **We enjoyed ourselves**.
- They had a nice time. **They enjoyed themselves**.

B

Compare:

**me/him/them** etc.



**She is looking at him.**

*different people*



**myself/himself/themselves** etc.



**He is looking at himself.**

*the same person*



- You never talk to **me**.

- I didn't pay for **them**.

- I'm sorry. Did I hurt **you**?

- Sometimes I talk to **myself**.

- They paid for **themselves**.

- Be careful. Don't hurt **yourself**.

C

**by myself / by yourself** etc. = alone:

- I went on holiday **by myself**. (= I went alone)

- 'Was she with friends?' 'No, she was **by herself**'

D

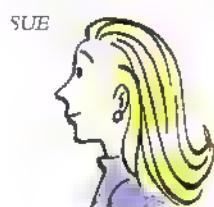
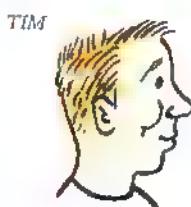
**each other**

- Kate and Helen are good friends. They know **each other** well.

(= Kate knows Helen / Helen knows Kate)

- Paul and I live near **each other**. (= he lives near me / I live near him)

Compare **each other** and **-selves**:



- Tim and Sue looked at **each other**.

(= he looked at her, she looked at him)



- Tim and Sue looked at **themselves**

(= he looked at himself, she looked at herself)

## 63.1 Complete the sentences with myself/yourself etc.

- 1 He looked at ... himself ... in the mirror.
- 2 I'm not angry with you. I'm angry with ... .
- 3 Karen had a good time in Australia. She enjoyed ... .
- 4 My friends had a good time in Australia. They enjoyed ... .
- 5 I picked up a very hot plate and burnt ... .
- 6 He never thinks about other people. He only thinks about ... .
- 7 I want to know more about you. Tell me about ... . (one person)
- 8 Goodbye! Have a good trip and look after ... ! (two people)

## 63.2 Write sentences with by myself / by yourself etc.

- 1 I went on holiday alone. ... went on holiday by myself.
- 2 When I saw him, he was alone. When I saw him, he ...
- 3 Don't go out alone. ...
- 4 I went to the cinema alone. ...
- 5 My sister lives alone. ...
- 6 Many people live alone. ...

## 63.3 Write sentences with each other.



## 63.4 Complete the sentences. Use:

each other or ourselves/yourselves/themselves or us/you/them

- 1 Paul and I live near ... each other .
- 2 Who are those people? Do you know ... them ... ?
- 3 You can help Tom, and Tom can help you. So you and Tom can help ... .
- 4 There's food in the kitchen. If you and Chris are hungry, you can help ... .
- 5 We didn't go to Emily's party. She didn't invite ... .
- 6 When we go on holiday, we always enjoy ... .
- 7 Mary and Jane were at school together, but they never see ... now.
- 8 Diane and I are very good friends. We've known ... for a long time.
- 9 'Did you see Sam and Laura at the party?' 'Yes, but I didn't speak to ... .'
- 10 Many people talk to ... when they're alone.

# -'s (Kate's camera / my brother's car etc.)



Kate's camera  
(*her* camera)

my brother's car  
(*his* car)

the manager's office  
(*his* or *her* office)

We normally use -'s for people:

- I stayed at **my sister's** house. (*not* the house of my sister)
- Have you met **Mr Black's** wife? (*not* the wife of Mr Black)
- Are you going to **James's** party?
- Paul is a **man's** name. Paula is a **woman's** name.

You can use -'s without a noun after it:

- Sophie's hair is longer than **Kate's**. (= Kate's hair)
- 'Whose umbrella is this?' 'It's **my mother's**.' (= my mother's umbrella)
- 'Where were you last night?' 'I was at **Paul's**.' (= Paul's house)

## B friend's and friends'



my friend's house = one friend  
(= *his* house or *her* house)

We write 's after  
**friend/student/mother** etc. (*singular*):

my mother's car (*one mother*)  
my father's car (*one father*)



my friends' house = two or more friends  
(= *their* house)

We write ' after  
**friends/students/parents** etc. (*plural*):

my parents' car (*two parents*)

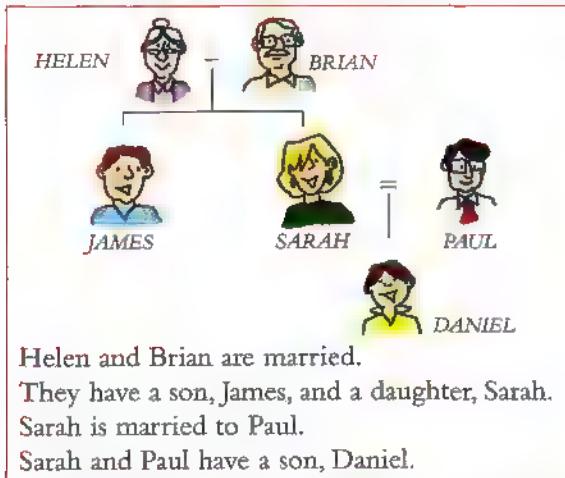
## C We use of ... for things, places etc. :

- Look at the roof **of that building**. (*not* that building's roof)
- We didn't see the beginning **of the film**. (*not* the film's beginning)
- What's the name **of this village**?
- Do you know the cause **of the problem**?
- You can sit in the back **of the car**.
- Madrid is the capital **of Spain**.

# Exercises

# Unit 64

## 64.1 Look at the family tree. Complete the sentences about the people in the family.



- 1 Brian is Helen's husband.
- 2 Sarah is Daniel's mother.
- 3 Helen is                          wife.
- 4 James is Sarah's
- 5 James is                          uncle.
- 6 Sarah is                          wife.
- 7 Helen is Daniel's
- 8 Sarah is James's
- 9 Paul is                          husband.
- 10 Paul is Daniel's
- 11 Daniel is                          nephew.

## 64.2 Look at the pictures and answer the questions. Use one word only.



- 1 Whose is this?  
Alice's
- 3 And this?  
\_\_\_\_\_
- 5 And this?  
\_\_\_\_\_
- 2 Whose is this?  
\_\_\_\_\_
- 4 And these?  
\_\_\_\_\_
- 6 And these?  
\_\_\_\_\_

## 64.3 Are these sentences OK? Change them where necessary.

- 1 I stayed at the house of my sister.
- 2 What is the name of this village?
- 3 Do you like the colour of this coat?
- 4 Do you know the phone number of Simon?
- 5 The job of my brother is very interesting.
- 6 Write your name at the top of the page.
- 7 For me, the morning is the best part of the day.
- 8 The favourite colour of Paula is blue.
- 9 When is the birthday of your mother?
- 10 The house of my parents isn't very big.
- 11 The walls of this house are very thin.
- 12 The car stopped at the end of the street.
- 13 Are you going to the party of Silvia next week?
- 14 The manager of the hotel is not here at the moment.

my sister's house

OK

# a/an ...



He's got **a** camera.



She's waiting for **a** taxi.



It's **a** beautiful day.

**a** ... = one thing or person:

- Rachel works in **a bank**. (*not in bank*)
- Can I ask **a question**? (*not ask question*)
- I haven't got **a computer**.
- There's **a woman** at the bus stop.

**B** **an** (*not a*) before **a/e/i/o/u**:

- Do you want **an apple** or **a banana**?
- I'm going to buy **a hat** and **an umbrella**.
- There was **an interesting programme** on TV last night.

**also** **an hour** (**h** is not pronounced: **an hour**)

**but** **a university** (pronounced *y*university)  
**a European country** (pronounced *y*european)

**another** (= **an + other**) is one word:

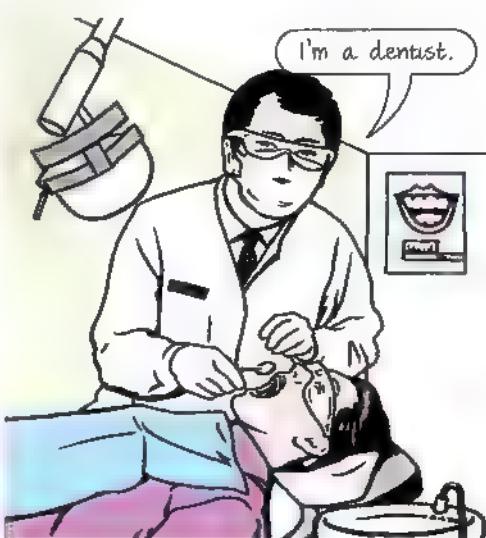
- Can I have **another cup** of coffee?

**C** We use **a/an** ... when we say what a thing or a person is. For example:

- The sun is **a star**.
- Football is **a game**.
- Dallas is **a city in Texas**.
- A mouse is **an animal**. It's **a small animal**.
- Joe is **a very nice person**.

We use **a/an** ... for jobs etc.:

- A: What's your job?  
B: I'm **a dentist**. (*not I'm dentist*)
- 'What does Mark do?'    'He's **an engineer**'
- Would you like to be **a teacher**?
- Beethoven was **a composer**.
- Picasso was **a famous painter**.
- Are you **a student**?



## 65.1 Write a or an.

1 an old book	4 an airport	7 a university
2 a window	5 a new airport	8 an hour
3 a horse	6 an organisation	9 an economic problem

## 65.2 What are these things? Choose from the box.

bird	fruit	mountain	river	musical instrument
flower	game	planet	tool	vegetable

1 A duck is a bird.  
 2 A carrot is a vegetable.  
 3 Tennis is a game.  
 4 A hammer is a tool.  
 5 Everest is a mountain.  
 6 Saturn is a planet.  
 7 A banana is a fruit.  
 8 The Amazon is a river.  
 9 A rose is a flower.  
 10 A trumpet is a musical instrument.

## 65.3 What are their jobs? Choose from the list and complete the sentences.

architect	dentist	shop assistant	photographer
electrician	nurse	taxi driver	



1 She's a dentist.  
 2 He's an electrician.  
 3 She is a nurse.  
 4 I'm a taxi driver.  
 5  
 6  
 7  
 8 And you? I'm a shop assistant.

## 65.4 Write sentences. Choose from the two boxes. Use a/an where necessary.

I want to ask you	Rebecca works in
Tom never wears	Jane wants to learn
I can't ride	Mike lives in
My brother is	This evening I'm going to

+

old house	artist
party	question
bookshop	foreign language
hat	bicycle

1 I want to ask you a question.  
 2  
 3  
 4  
 5  
 6  
 7  
 8

## train(s) bus(es) (singular and plural)

The plural of a noun is usually -s:

<i>singular</i> (= one)	→ <i>plural</i> (= two or more)
a flower	→ some <b>flowers</b>
a train	→ two <b>trains</b>
one week	→ a few <b>weeks</b>
a nice place	→ some nice <b>places</b>
this student	→ these <b>students</b>



a flower      some flowers

**Spelling** (→ Appendix 5):

-s / -sh / -ch / -x →	-es	bus → buses	dish → dishes
	also	church → churches	box → boxes
		potato → potatoes	tomato → tomatoes
	-y → -ies	baby → babies	dictionary → dictionaries
		party → parties	
but	-ay / -ey / -oy → -ys	day → days	monkey → monkeys      boy → boys
	-f / -fe → -ves	shelf → shelves	knife → knives      wife → wives

## B

These things are plural in English:



scissors



glasses



trousers



jeans



shorts



tights



pyjamas

- Do you wear **glasses**?
- Where are the **scissors**? I need them.

You can also say **a pair of scissors** / **a pair of trousers** / **a pair of pyjamas** etc. :

- I need a new **pair of jeans**. or I need **some new jeans**. (*not a new jeans*)

## C

Some plurals do *not* end in -s:

this <b>man</b> → these <b>men</b>	one <b>foot</b> → two <b>feet</b>	that <b>sheep</b> → those <b>sheep</b>
a <b>woman</b> → some <b>women</b>	a <b>tooth</b> → all my <b>teeth</b>	a <b>fish</b> → a lot of <b>fish</b>
a <b>child</b> → many <b>children</b>	a <b>mouse</b> → some <b>mice</b>	

*also* a person → two people / some people / a lot of people etc. :

- She's a nice person.
- They are nice people. (*not nice persons*)

## D

**People** is plural (= they), so we say **people are** / **people have** etc. :

- A lot of people speak English. (*not speaks*)
- I like the people here. They are very friendly.

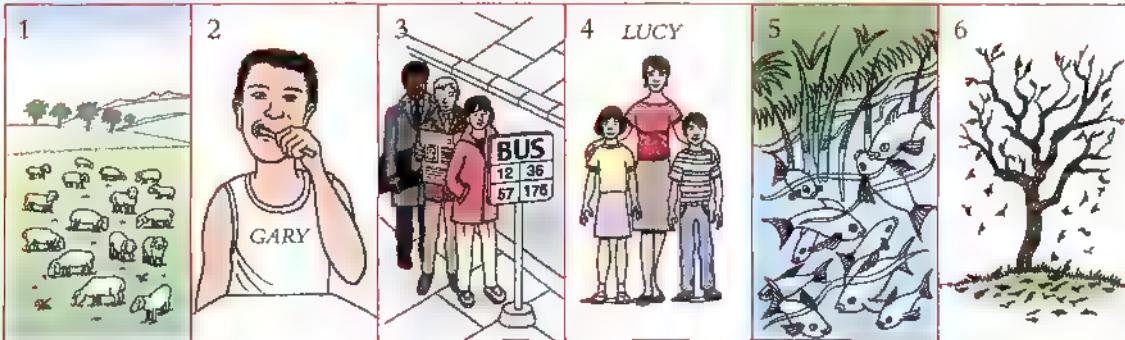
**Police** is plural:

- The police want to talk to anybody who saw the accident. (*not The police wants*)

## 66.1 Write the plural.

1 flower	<b>flowers</b>	5 umbrella	9 family
2 boat		6 address	10 foot
3 woman		7 knife	11 hohday
4 city		8 sandwich	12 potato

## 66.2 Look at the pictures and complete the sentences.



1 There are a lot of **sheep** in the field.  
 2 Gary is cleaning his .....  
 3 There are three ..... at the bus stop.  
 4 Lucy has got two .....  
 5 There are a lot of ..... in the river.  
 6 The ..... are falling from the tree.

## 66.3 Are these sentences OK? Change the sentences where necessary.

1 I'm going to buy some flowers.  
 2 I need a new jeans.

OK

I need a new pair of jeans. OR  
 I need some new jeans.

3 It's a lovely park with a lot of beautiful tree.  
 4 There was a woman in the car with two mens.  
 5 Sheep eat grass.  
 6 David is married and has three child.  
 7 Most of my friend are student.  
 8 He put on his pyjama and went to bed.  
 9 We went fishing, but we didn't catch many fish.  
 10 Do you know many persons in this town?  
 11 I like your trouser. Where did you get it?  
 12 The town centre is usually full of tourist.  
 13 I don't like mice. I'm afraid of them.  
 14 This scissor isn't very sharp.

## 66.4 Which is right? Complete the sentences.

1 It's a nice place. Many people ..... go ..... there on holiday.  
 2 Some people ..... always late.  
 3 The new city hall is not a very beautiful building. Most people ..... like it.  
 4 A lot of people ..... television every day.  
 5 Three people ..... injured in the accident.  
 6 How many people ..... in that house?  
 7 ..... the police know the cause of the explosion?  
 8 The police ..... looking for the stolen car.  
 9 I need my glasses, but I can't find .....  
 10 I'm going to buy ..... new jeans today.

go or goes?  
 is or are?

don't or doesn't?  
 watch or watches?  
 was or were?  
 live or lives?  
 Do or Does?  
 is or are?  
 it or them?  
 a or some?

# a bottle / some water (countable/uncountable 1)

**A** A noun can be *countable* or *uncountable*.

Countable nouns

For example: (a) **car** (a) **man** (a) **bottle** (a) **house** (a) **key** (an) **idea** (an) **accident**

You can use **one/two/three** (etc.) + *countable nouns* (you can count them):



one **bottle**



two **bottles**



three **men**



four **houses**

Countable nouns can be *singular* (= one) or *plural* (= two or more):

<i>singular</i>	<b>a car</b>	<b>the car</b>	<b>my car</b>	etc.
<i>plural</i>	<b>cars</b>	<b>two cars</b>	<b>the cars</b>	<b>some cars</b> <b>many cars</b> etc.

- I've got **a car**.
- New **cars** are very expensive.
- There aren't **many cars** in the car park.

You can't use the singular (**car/bottle/key** etc.) alone. You need **a/an**:

- We can't get into the house without **a key**. (*not* without key)

**B**

Uncountable nouns

For example: **water**   **air**   **rice**   **salt**   **plastic**   **money**   **music**   **tennis**



**water**



**salt**



**money**



**music**

You can't say **one/two/three** (etc.) + these things:   ~~one water~~   ~~two musics~~

Uncountable nouns have only *one* form:

**money**   **the money**   **my money**   **some money**   **much money** etc.

- I've got **some money**.
- There isn't **much money** in the box.
- Money** isn't everything.

You can't use **a/an** + *uncountable nouns*:   ~~a money~~   ~~a music~~   ~~a water~~

But you can say **a piece of ...** / **a bottle of ...** etc. + *uncountable noun*:

**a bottle of water**  
**a piece of cheese**  
**a bowl of rice**

**a carton of milk**  
**a bottle of perfume**  
**a cup of coffee**

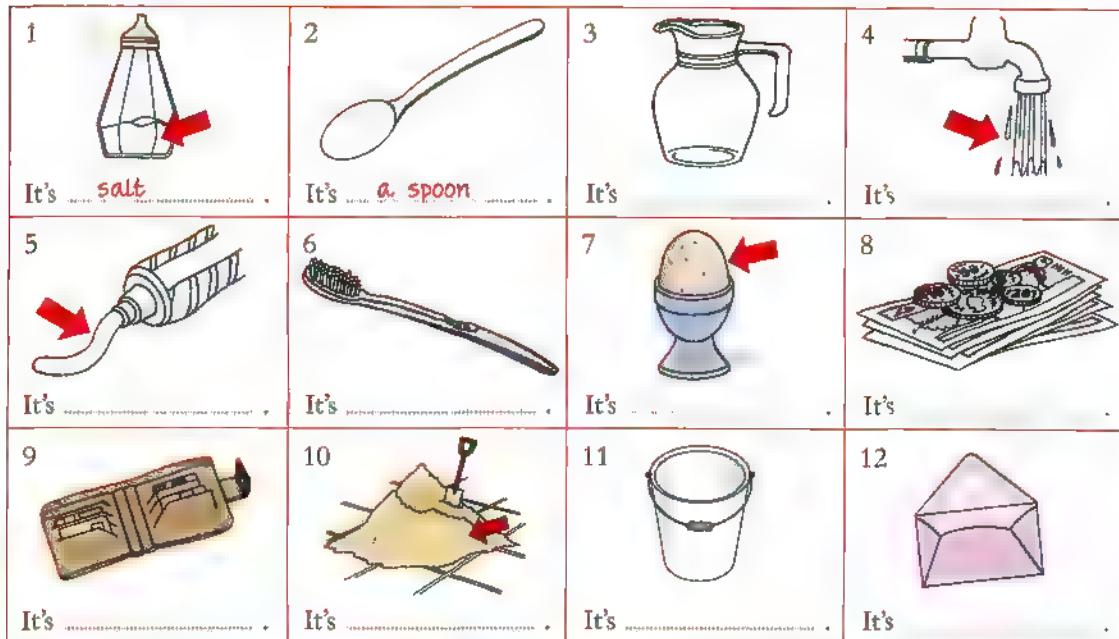
**a bar of chocolate**  
**a piece of music**  
**a game of tennis**

# Exercises

# Unit 67

67.1 What are these things? Some are countable and some are uncountable. Write a/an if necessary. The names of these things are:

bucket	envelope	money	sand	toothbrush	wallet
egg	jug	-salt-	-spoon-	toothpaste	water

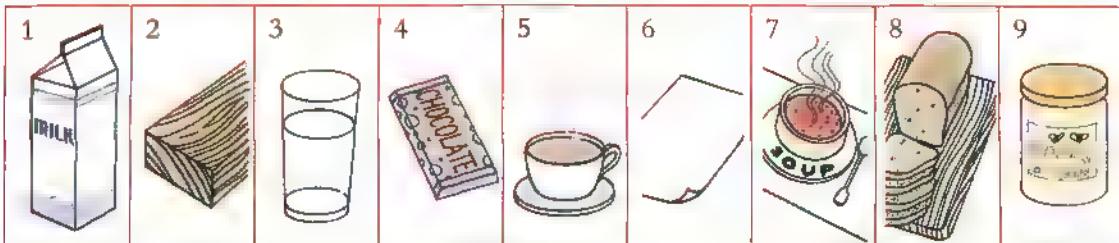


67.2 Some of these sentences are OK, but some need a/an. Write a/an where necessary.

1 I haven't got watch.      a watch  
 2 Do you like cheese?      OK  
 3 I never wear hat.  
 4 Are you looking for job?  
 5 Kate doesn't eat meat.  
 6 Kate eats apple every day.  
 7 I'm going to party tonight.  
 8 Music is wonderful thing.

9 Jamaica is island.  
 10 I don't need key.  
 11 Everybody needs food.  
 12 I've got good idea.  
 13 Can you drive car?  
 14 Do you want cup of coffee?  
 15 I don't like coffee without milk.  
 16 Don't go out without umbrella

67.3 What are these things? Write a ... of ... for each picture. Use the words in the boxes.



bar	cup	loaf
bowl	glass	piece
carton	jar	piece

+

bread	milk	tea
chocolate	paper	water
honey	soup	wood

1 a carton of milk      4      7  
 2                          5      8  
 3                          6      9

# a cake / some cake / some cakes (countable/uncountable 2)

A

## a/an and some

**a/an + singular countable nouns (car/apple/shoe etc.):**

- I need a new car.
- Would you like an apple?



an apple

**some + plural countable nouns (cars/apples/shoes etc.):**

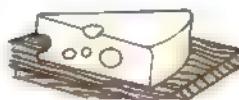
- I need some new shoes.
- Would you like some apples?



some apples

**some + uncountable nouns (water/money/music etc.):**

- I need some water.
- Would you like some cheese?  
(or Would you like a piece of cheese?)

some cheese or  
a piece of cheese

## Compare a and some:

- Nicole bought a hat, some shoes and some perfume.
- I read a newspaper, made some phone calls, and listened to some music.

B

Many nouns are sometimes countable and sometimes uncountable. For example:



a cake



some cakes



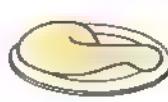
some cake or a piece of cake



a chicken



some chickens



some chicken or a piece of chicken

## Compare a paper (= a newspaper) and some paper:

- I want something to read. I'm going to buy a paper.
- but  I want to make a shopping list. I need some paper / a piece of paper. (not a paper)

C

Be careful with:

advice    bread    furniture    hair    information    news    weather    work

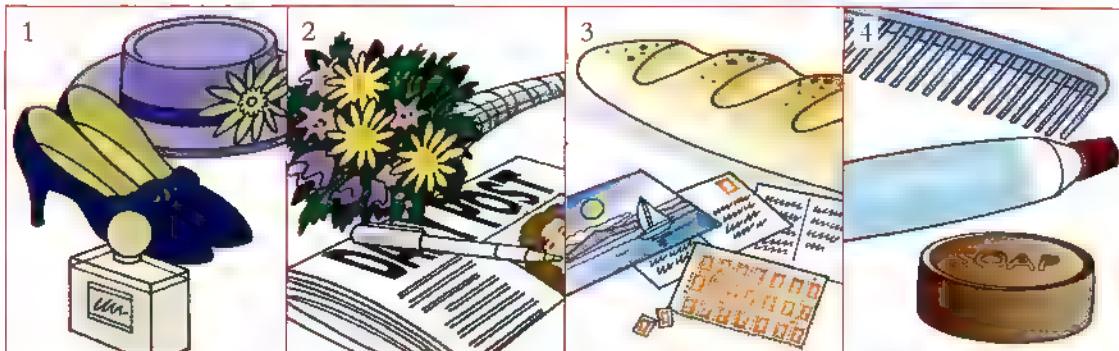
These nouns are usually uncountable. So you can't say **a/an ... (a-bread, an-advice)**, and they can't be plural (**advices, furnitures** etc.).

- Can I talk to you? I need some advice. (not an advice)
- I'm going to buy some bread. (not a bread)
- They've got some very nice furniture in their house. (not furnitures)
- Silvia has got very long hair. (not hairs)
- I'd like some information about hotels in London. (not informations)
- Listen! I've just had some good news. (not a good news)
- It's nice weather today. (not a nice weather)
- 'Do you like your job?' 'Yes, but it's hard work.' (not a hard work)

We say **a job** (but not a work):

- I've got a new job. (not a new work)

## 68.1 What did you buy? Use the pictures to write sentences (I bought ...).



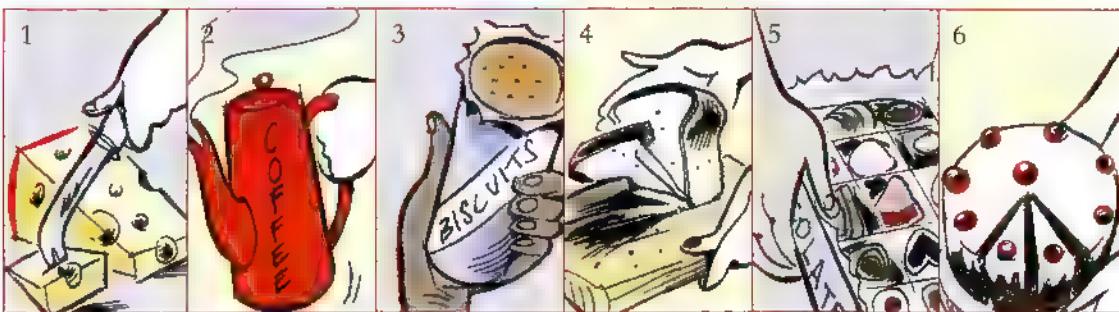
1 I bought some perfume, a hat and some shoes.

2 I bought

3

4

## 68.2 Write sentences with Would you like a ... ? or Would you like some ... ?



1 Would you like some cheese?

4

?

2 Would you like

5

?

3 Would

6

?

## 68.3 Write a/an or some.

1 I read a book and listened to some music.

2 I need some money. I want to buy some food.

3 We met interesting people at the party.

4 I'm going to open the window to get some fresh air.

5 Rachel didn't eat much for lunch – only an apple and some bread.

6 We live in a big house. There's some nice garden with some beautiful trees.

7 I'm going to make a table. First I need some wood.

8 Listen to me carefully. I'm going to give you some advice.

9 I want to write a letter. I need some paper and a pen.

## 68.4 Which is right?

1 I'm going to buy some new shoe/shoes. (shoes is right)

2 Martin has got brown eye/eyes.

3 Paula has got short black hair/hairs.

4 The tour guide gave us some information/informations about the city.

5 We're going to buy some new chair/chairs.

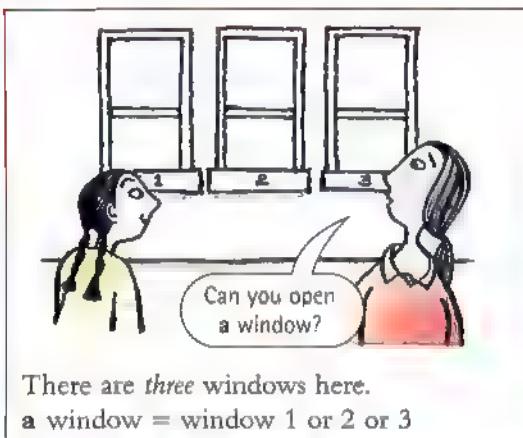
6 We're going to buy some new furniture/furnitures.

7 It's hard to find a work/job at the moment.

8 We had wonderful weather / a wonderful weather when we were on holiday.

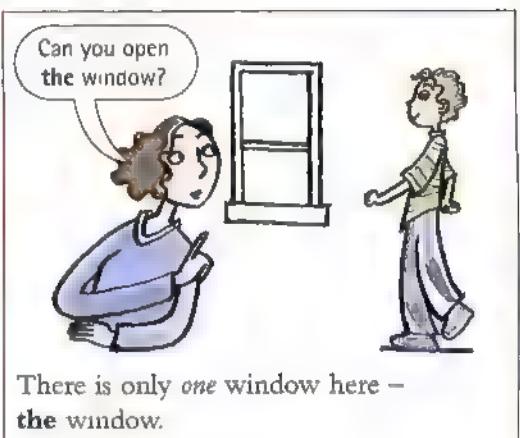
## a/an and the

a/an



- I've got **a car**.  
(there are many cars and I've got one)
- Can I ask **a question**? (there are many questions – can I ask one?)
- Is there **a hotel** near here? (there are many hotels – is there one near here?)
- Paris is **an interesting city**. (there are many interesting cities and Paris is one)
- Lisa is **a student**.  
(there are many students and Lisa is one)

the



- I'm going to clean **the car** tomorrow.  
(= my car)
- Can you repeat **the question**, please?  
(= the question that you asked)
- We enjoyed our holiday. **The hotel** was very nice. (= our hotel)
- Paris is **the capital of France**.  
(there is only one capital of France)
- Lisa is **the youngest student** in her class.  
(there is only one youngest student in her class)

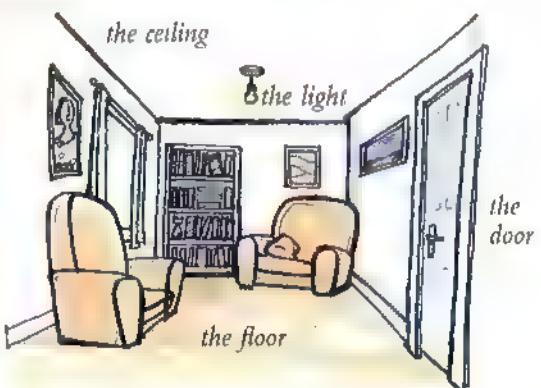
Compare **a** and **the**:

- I bought **a jacket** and **a shirt**. **The jacket** was cheap, but **the shirt** was expensive.  
(= **the jacket and the shirt that I bought**)

**B**We say **the ...** when it is clear which thing or person we mean. For example:

**the door / the ceiling / the floor / the carpet / the light etc.** (of a room)  
**the roof / the garden / the kitchen / the bathroom etc.** (of a house)  
**the centre / the station / the airport / the town hall etc.** (of a town)

- 'Where's Tom? 'In **the kitchen**.'  
(= the kitchen of this house or flat)
- Turn off **the light** and close **the door**.  
(= the light and the door of the room)
- Do you live far from **the centre**?  
(= the centre of your town)
- I'd like to speak to **the manager**, please.  
(= the manager of this shop etc.)



## 69.1 Write a/an or the.

- 1 We enjoyed our trip. The hotel was very nice.
- 2 'Can I ask a question?' 'Sure. What do you want to know?'
- 3 You look very tired. You need a holiday.
- 4 'Where's Tom?' 'He's in the garden.'
- 5 Eve is an interesting person. You should meet her.
- 6 A: Excuse me, can you tell me how to get to the city centre?  
B: Yes, go straight on and then take the next turning left.
- 7 A: Shall we go out for a meal this evening?  
B: Yes, that's a good idea.
- 8 It's a nice morning. Let's go for a walk.
- 9 Amanda is a student. When she finishes her studies, she wants to be a journalist.  
She lives with two friends in an apartment near the college where she is studying.  
The apartment is small, but she likes it.
- 10 Peter and Mary have got two children, a boy and a girl. The boy is seven years old, and the girl is three. Peter works in a factory. Mary hasn't got a job at the moment.

## 69.2 Complete the sentences. Use a or the + these words:

**airport    cup    dictionary    door    floor    picture**



## 69.3 These sentences are not correct. Put in a/an or the where necessary.

- 1 Don't forget to turn off light when you go out. turn off the light
- 2 Enjoy your trip, and don't forget to send me postcard.
- 3 What is name of this village?
- 4 Canada is very big country.
- 5 What is largest city in Canada?
- 6 I like this room, but I don't like colour of carpet.
- 7 'Are you OK?' 'No, I've got headache.'
- 8 We live in old house near station.
- 9 What is name of director of film we saw last night?

## the ...

**A**

We use **the** when it is clear which thing or person we mean:

- What is **the name** of this street? (there is only one name)
- Who is **the best player** in your team? (there is only one best player)
- Can you tell me **the time**, please? (= the time now)
- My office is on **the first floor**. (= the first floor of the building)

Don't forget **the**:

- Do you live near **the city centre**? (not near city centre)
- Excuse me, where is **the nearest bank**? (not where is nearest ...)

**B**

**the same** ...

- We live in **the same street**. (not in same street)
- 'Are these two books different?' 'No, they're **the same**.' (not they're same)

**C**

We say:

**the sun / the moon / the world / the sky / the sea / the country**

- The sky** is blue and **the sun** is shining.
- Do you live in a town or in **the country**?

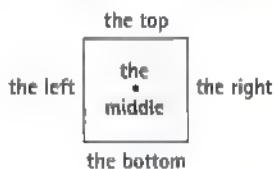


**the police / the fire brigade / the army** (of a city, country etc.)

- My brother is a soldier. He's in **the army**.
- What do you think of **the police**? Do they do a good job?

**the top / the end / the middle / the left** etc.

- Write your name at **the top** of the page.
- My house is at **the end** of the street.
- The table is in **the middle** of the room.
- Do you drive on **the right** or on **the left** in your country?



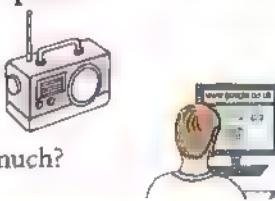
(play) **the piano / the guitar / the trumpet** etc. (musical instruments)

- Paula is learning to play **the piano**.



**the radio**

- I listen to **the radio** a lot.



**the Internet**

- Do you use **the Internet** much?

We do *not* use **the** with:

**television / TV**

- I watch **TV** a lot.
- What's on **television** tonight?

**but** Can you turn off **the television**? (= the TV set)



**breakfast / lunch / dinner**

- What did you have for **breakfast**? (not the breakfast)
- Dinner** is ready!

**next / last + week/month/year/summer/Monday** etc.

- I'm not working **next week**. (not the next week)
- Did you have a holiday **last summer**? (not the last summer)

## 70.1 Put in the where necessary. Write 'OK' if the sentence is already correct.

- 1 What is name of this street?
- 2 What's on television tonight?
- 3 Our apartment is on second floor.
- 4 Would you like to go to moon?
- 5 Which is best hotel in this town?
- 6 What time is lunch?
- 7 How far is it to city centre?
- 8 We're going away at end of May.
- 9 What are you doing next weekend?
- 10 I didn't like her first time I met her.
- 11 I'm going out after dinner.
- 12 Internet is a good way of getting information.
- 13 My sister got married last month.
- 14 My dictionary is on top shelf on right.
- 15 We live in country about ten miles from nearest town.

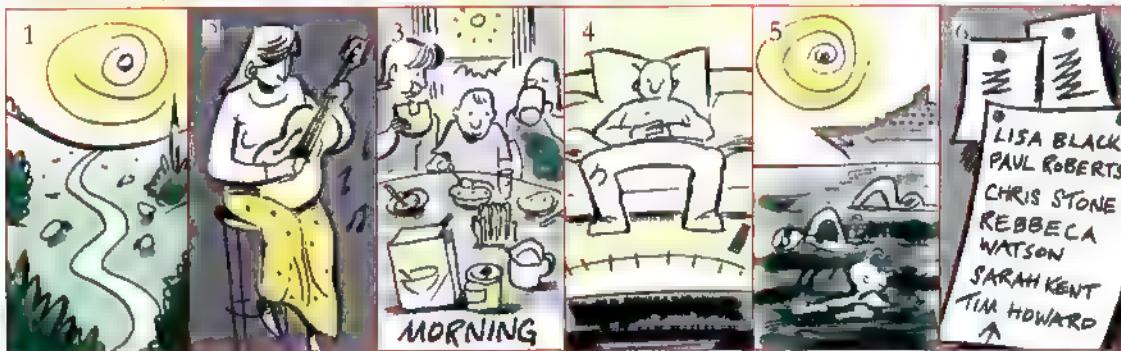
the name  
OK

## 70.2 Complete the sentences. Use the same + these words:

age      colour      problem      street      time

- 1 I live in North Street and you live in North Street. We live in **the same street**
- 2 I arrived at 8.30 and you arrived at 8.30. We arrived at .....
- 3 Jim is 25 and Sue is 25. Jim and Sue are .....
- 4 My shirt is dark blue and so is my jacket. My shirt and jacket are .....
- 5 I've got no money and you've got no money. We've got .....

## 70.3 Look at the pictures and complete the sentences. Use the if necessary.



- 1 **The sun** ..... is shining.
- 2 She's playing ..... .
- 3 They're having ..... .
- 4 He's watching .....
- 5 They're swimming in .....
- 6 Tim's name is at ..... of the list.

## 70.4 Complete these sentences. Choose from the list. Use the if necessary.

capital      dinner      police      lunch      middle      name      sky      television

- 1 We had **dinner** ..... at a restaurant last night.
- 2 We stayed at a very nice hotel, but I don't remember .....
- 3 ..... is very clear tonight. You can see all the stars.
- 4 Sometimes there are some good films on ..... late at night.
- 5 Somebody was trying to break into the shop, so I called ..... police.
- 6 Tokyo is ..... of Japan.
- 7 'What did you have for ..... ?' 'A salad.'
- 8 I woke up in ..... of the night.

## go to work go home go to the cinema



She's at work.



They're going to school



He's in bed

We say:

(go) **to work**, (be) **at work**, start **work**, finish **work**

- Bye! I'm **going to work** now. (*not to the work*)
- I **finish work** at 5 o'clock every day.

(go) **to school**, (be) **at school**, start **school**, leave **school** etc.

- What did you learn **at school** today? (*not at the school*)
- Some children don't like **school**.

(go) **to university/college**, (be) **at university/college**

- Helen wants to **go to university** when she **leaves school**.
- What did you **study at college**?

(go) **to hospital**, (be) **in hospital**

- Jack had an accident. He had to **go to hospital**.

(go) **to prison**, (be) **in prison**

- Why is he **in prison**? What did he do?

(go) **to church**, (be) **in/at church**

- David usually goes **to church** on Sundays.

(go) **to bed**, (be) **in bed**

- I'm tired. I'm **going to bed**. (*not to the bed*)
- 'Where's Jane?' 'She's **in bed**.'

(go) **home**, (be) **at home** etc.

- I'm tired. I'm **going home**. (*not to home*)
- Are you going out tonight, or are you **staying at home**?

We say:

(go to) **the cinema / the theatre / the bank / the post office / the station / the airport / the city centre**

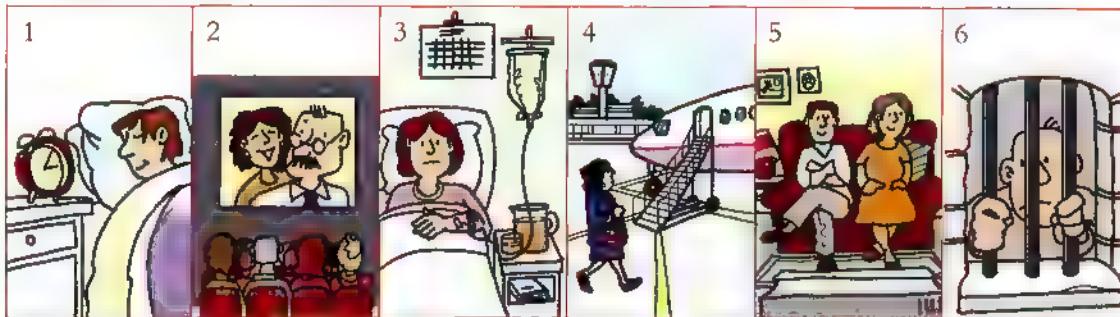
- I never go to **the theatre**, but I go to **the cinema** a lot.
- 'Are you going to **the bank**?' 'No, to **the post office**.'
- The number 5 bus goes to **the airport**; the number 8 goes to **the city centre**.

(go to) **the doctor, the dentist**

- You're not well. Why don't you go to **the doctor**?
- I have to go to **the dentist** tomorrow.



## 71.1 Where are these people? Complete the sentences. Sometimes you need the.



1 He's in bed.      3 She's in hospital.      5 They're at home.  
 2 They're at supermarket.      4 She's at supermarket.      6 He's in office.

## 71.2 Complete the sentences. Choose from the list. Use the if necessary.

**bank      bed      church      home      post office      school      station**

1 I need to change some money. I have to go to the bank.  
 2 David usually goes to church on Sundays.  
 3 In Britain, children go to school from the age of five.  
 4 There were a lot of people at station waiting for the train.  
 5 I phoned you last night, but you weren't at home.  
 6 I'm going to bed now. Goodnight!  
 7 I'm going to post office to get some stamps.

## 71.3 Complete the sentences. Sometimes you need the.

1 If you want to catch a plane, you go to the airport.  
 2 If you want to see a film, you go to cinema.  
 3 If you are tired and you want to sleep, you go to bed.  
 4 If you rob a bank and the police catch you, you go to prison.  
 5 If you have a problem with your teeth, you go to dentist.  
 6 If you want to study after you leave school, you go to university.  
 7 If you are badly injured in an accident, you go to hospital.

## 71.4 Are these sentences OK? Correct the sentences where necessary.

1 We went to cinema last night.      ... to the cinema.  
 2 I finish work at 5 o'clock every day.      ... OK.  
 3 Lisa wasn't feeling well yesterday, so she went to doctor.      ... the doctor.  
 4 I wasn't feeling well this morning, so I stayed in bed.      ... OK.  
 5 Why is Angela always late for work?  
 6 'Where are your children?'      'They're at school.'  
 7 We have no money in bank.      ... OK.  
 8 When I was younger, I went to church every Sunday.  
 9 What time do you usually get home from work?  
 10 Do you live far from city centre?  
 11 'Where shall we meet?'      'At station.'  
 12 Jim is ill. He's in hospital.  
 13 Kate takes her children to school every day.  
 14 Would you like to go to university?  
 15 Would you like to go to theatre this evening?

## I like music

## I hate exams



Do not use **the** for general ideas:

- I like **music**, especially **classical music**.  
(not the music ... the classical music)
- We don't eat **meat** very often. (not the meat)
- Life** is not possible without **water**.  
(not The life ... the water)
- I hate **exams**. (not the exams)
- Do you know a shop that sells **foreign newspapers**?
- I'm not very good at writing **letters**.



Do not use **the** for games and sports:

- My favourite sports are **football** and **skiing**. (not the football ... the skiing)

Do not use **the** for languages or school subjects (**history/geography/physics/biology etc.**):

- Do you think **English** is difficult? (not the English)
- Tom's brother is studying **physics** and **chemistry**.

## B

## flowers or the flowers?

Compare:

<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><input type="checkbox"/> <b>Flowers</b> are beautiful. (= flowers in general)</li>        <li><input type="checkbox"/> I don't like <b>cold weather</b>. (= cold weather in general)</li>        <li><input type="checkbox"/> We don't eat <b>fish</b> very often. (= fish in general)</li>        <li><input type="checkbox"/> Are you interested in <b>history</b>? (= history in general)</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><input type="checkbox"/> I love this <b>garden</b>. <b>The flowers</b> are beautiful. (= the flowers in this garden)</li>        <li><input type="checkbox"/> <b>The weather</b> isn't very good today. (= the weather today)</li>        <li><input type="checkbox"/> We had a great meal last night. <b>The fish</b> was excellent. (= the fish we ate last night)</li>        <li><input type="checkbox"/> Do you know much about <b>the history</b> of your country?</li> </ul>
----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------	--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------



## 72.1 What do you think about these things?

big cities	computer games	exams	jazz	parties
chocolate	dogs	housework	museums	tennis

Choose seven of these things and write sentences with:

I like ...   I don't like ...   I love ...   I hate ...   or ... is/are all right

1 I hate exams.   or   I like exams.   or   Exams are all right. (etc.)

2

3

4

5

6

7

8

## 72.2 Are you interested in these things? Write sentences with:

I'm (very) interested in ...	I know a lot about ...	I don't know much about ...
I'm not interested in ...	I know a little about ...	I don't know anything about ...

1 (history)   I'm very interested in history.

2 (politics)

I

3 (sport)

4 (art)

5 (astronomy)

6 (economics)

## 72.3 Which is right?

1 My favourite sport is football / the football. (football is right)

2 I like this hotel. Rooms / The rooms are very nice. (The rooms is right)

3 Everybody needs friends / the friends.

4 Jane doesn't go to parties / the parties very often.

5 I went shopping this morning. Shops / The shops were very busy.

6 'Where's milk / the milk?' 'It's in the fridge.'

7 I don't like milk / the milk. I never drink it.

8 'Do you do any sports?' 'Yes, I play basketball / the basketball.'

9 'What does your brother do?' 'He sells computers / the computers.'

10 We went for a swim in the river. Water / The water was very cold.

11 I don't like swimming in cold water / the cold water.

12 Excuse me, can you pass salt / the salt, please?

13 I like this town. I like people / the people here.

14 Vegetables / The vegetables are good for you.

15 Houses / The houses in this street are all the same.

16 I can't sing this song. I don't know words / the words.

17 I enjoy taking photographs / the photographs. It's my hobby.

18 Do you want to see photographs / the photographs that I took when I was on holiday?

19 English / The English is used a lot in international business / the international business.

20 Money / The money doesn't always bring happiness / the happiness.

# the ... (names of places)

**A** Places (continents, countries, states, islands, towns etc.)

In general we do *not* use **the** with names of places:

- France is a very large country. (*not the France*)
- Cairo is the capital of Egypt.
- Corsica is an island in the Mediterranean.
- Peru is in South America.

the

But we use **the** in names with 'republic'/'states'/'kingdom':

the Czech Republic  
the United States of America (the USA)  
the United Kingdom (the UK)

the

**B** the -s (plural names)

We use **the** with *plural* names of countries/islands/mountains:

the Netherlands    the Canary Islands  
the Philippines    the Alps

the

**C** Seas, rivers etc.

We use **the** with names of oceans/seas/rivers/canals:

the Atlantic (Ocean)	the Mediterranean (Sea)	the Amazon
the (River) Nile	the Suez Canal	the Black Sea

the

**D** Places in towns (streets, buildings etc.)

In general we do *not* use **the** with names of streets, squares etc. :

- Kevin lives in Newton Street.
- Where is Highfield Road, please?
- Times Square is in New York.

the

We do not use **the** with names of airports, stations and many other important buildings:

Kennedy Airport	Westminster Abbey	London Zoo
Victoria Station	Cambridge University	Edinburgh Castle

the

But we use **the** with names of most hotels, museums, theatres and cinemas:

the Regent Hotel	the National Theatre
the Science Museum	the Odeon (cinema)

the

**E** the ... of ...

We use **the** + names with ... of ... :

the Museum of Modern Art	the University of California
the Great Wall of China	the Tower of London

the

We say **the north / the south / the east / the west** (of ...):

- I've been to the north of Italy, but not to the south.

the

## 73.1 Answer these geography questions. Choose from the box. Use **The** if necessary.



1 Cairo  
2 The Atlantic  
3  
4  
5  
6  
7  
8  
9  
10  
11  
12  
13  
14  
15

is the capital of Egypt.  
is between Africa and America.  
is a country in northern Europe.  
is a river in South America.  
is the largest continent in the world.  
is the largest ocean.  
is a river in Europe.  
is a country in East Africa.  
is between Canada and Mexico.  
are mountains in South America.  
is the capital of Thailand.  
are mountains in central Europe.  
is between Saudi Arabia and Africa.  
is an island in the Caribbean.  
are a group of islands near Florida.

Alps  
Amazon  
Andes  
Asia  
**Atlantic**  
Bahamas  
Bangkok  
**Cairo**  
Jamaica  
Kenya  
Pacific  
Red Sea  
Rhine  
Sweden  
United States

## 73.2 Write the where necessary. If the sentence is already correct, write OK.

1 Kevin lives in Newton Street.  
2 We went to see a play at National Theatre.  
3 Have you ever been to China?  
4 Have you ever been to Philippines?  
5 Have you ever been to south of France?  
6 Can you tell me where Regal Cinema is?  
7 Can you tell me where Merrion Street is?  
8 Can you tell me where Museum of Art is?  
9 Europe is bigger than Australia.  
10 Belgium is smaller than Netherlands.  
11 Which river is longer – Mississippi or Nile?  
12 Did you go to National Gallery when you were in London?  
13 We stayed at Park Hotel in Hudson Road.  
14 How far is it from Trafalgar Square to Victoria Station (*in London*)?  
15 Rocky Mountains are in North America.  
16 Texas is famous for oil and cowboys.  
17 I hope to go to United States next year.  
18 Mary comes from west of Ireland.  
19 Alan is a student at Manchester University.  
20 Panama Canal joins Atlantic Ocean and Pacific Ocean.

OK  
at the National Theatre

# this/that/these/those

**this (singular)**



**these (plural)**



**that (singular)**



**those (plural)**



**this  
these**



**this picture**  
(= this picture here)  
**these flowers**  
(= these flowers here)

**that  
those**



**that picture**  
(= that picture there)  
**those people**  
(= those people there)

B

We use **this/that/these/those** with a noun (**this picture / those girls** etc.) or without a noun:

- **This hotel** is expensive, but it's very nice.
- Who's **that girl?** 'I don't know.'
- Do you like **these shoes?** I bought them last week.
- Those **apples** look nice. Can I have one?
- **This** is a nice hotel, but it's very expensive.
- 'Excuse me, is **this** your bag?' 'Oh yes, thank you.'
- Who's **that?** (= Who is that person?)
- Which shoes do you prefer – **these** or **those?**

*-cyascerbus*  
with a noun

without a noun

C

**that** = something that *has happened*:

- 'I'm sorry I forgot to phone you.' 'That's all right.'
- **That** was a really nice meal. Thank you very much.

**that** = what somebody *has just said*:

- 'You're a teacher, aren't you?' 'Yes, **that's** right.'
- 'Martin has got a new job.' 'Has he? I didn't know **that**'
- 'I'm going on holiday next week.' 'Oh, **that's** nice.'

D

We use **this is ...** and **is that ... ?** on the telephone:

- Hi Sarah, **this** is David.  
(**this** = the speaker)
- Is **that** Sarah?  
(**that** = the other person)



We use **this is ...** to introduce people:

- A: Brian, **this** is Chris.
- B: Hello, Chris – nice to meet you.
- C: Hi.



# Exercises

# Unit 74

## 74.1 Complete the sentences. Use this/that/these/those + these words:

birds

house

plates

postcards

<sup>meets</sup> <sup>cuendiente (no más negro)</sup>  
seat

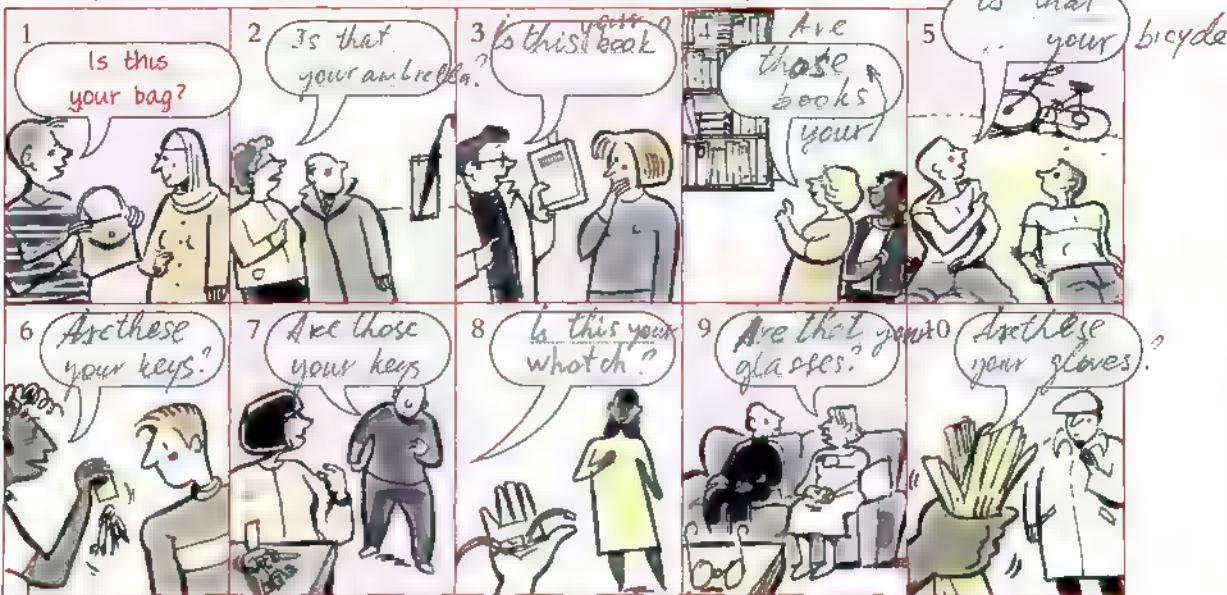
shoes

<sup>camionero</sup>  
(*& camionero*)

these



## 74.2 Write questions: Is this/that your ... ? or Are these/those your ... ?



## 74.3 Complete the sentences with this is or that's or that.

1 A: I'm sorry I'm late.

B: That's all right.

2 A: I can't come to the party tomorrow.

B: Oh, a pity. Why not?

3 on the phone

SUE: Hello, Jane.

JANE: Oh, hi Sue. How are you?

4 A: You're lazy.

B: not true!

5 A: Beth plays the piano very well.

B: Does she? I didn't know.

6 Mark meets Paul's sister, Helen.

PAUL: Mark, my sister, Helen.

MARK: Hi, Helen.

7 A: I'm sorry I was angry yesterday.

B: OK. Forget it!

8 A: You're a friend of Tim's, aren't you?

B: Yes, right.

## one/ones

## A one (= a ...)

These chocolates are good.  
Would you like one?



Would you like **one**?

= Would you like **a chocolate**?

**one** = **a/an** ... (a chocolate / an apple etc.)

□ I need **a pen**. Have you got **one**? (**one** = **a pen**)

□ A: Is there **a bank** near here?

B: Yes, there's **one** at the end of this street. (**one** = **a bank**)

## B

## one and ones

## one (singular)



Which **one**? = Which **hat**?

**one** = **hat/car/girl** etc.

## this one / that one

□ Which **car** is yours? **This one** or **that one**? (= this car or that car)

## the one ...

□ A: Which **hotel** did you stay at?  
B: **The one** opposite the station.  
□ I found this **key**. Is it **the one** you lost?

## the ... one

□ I don't like the black **coat**, but I like **the brown one**.  
□ Don't buy that **camera**. Buy **the other one**.

## a/an ... one

□ This **cup** is dirty. Can I have a **clean one**?  
□ That **biscuit** was nice. I'm going to have **another one**.

## ones (plural)



Which **ones**? = Which **flowers**?

**ones** = **flowers/cars/girls** etc.

## these/those or these ones / those ones

□ Which flowers do you want? **These** or **those**? or  
**These ones** or **those ones**?

## the ones ...

□ A: Which **books** are yours?  
B: **The ones** on the table.  
□ I found these **keys**. Are they **the ones** you lost?

## the ... ones

□ I don't like the red **shoes**, but I like **the green ones**.  
□ Don't buy those **apples**. Buy **the other ones**.

## some ... ones

□ These **cups** are dirty. Can we have **some clean ones**?  
□ My **shoes** are very old. I'm going to buy **some new ones**.

75.1 A asks B some questions. Use the information in the box to write B's answers. Use one (not a/an ...) in the answers.

B doesn't need a car there's a chemist in Mill Road <b>B hasn't got a pen</b>	B has just had a cup of coffee B is going to get a bike B hasn't got an umbrella
-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------	----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

- 1 A: Can you lend me a pen? B: I'm sorry, I haven't got one
- 2 A: Would you like to have a car? B: No, I don't.
- 3 A: Have you got a bike? B: No, but ...
- 4 A: Can you lend me an umbrella? B: I'm sorry, but ...
- 5 A: Would you like a cup of coffee? B: No, thank you.
- 6 A: Is there a chemist near here? B: Yes, ...

75.2 Complete the sentences. Use a/an ... one. Use the words in the list.

better big clean different new old

- 1 This cup is dirty. Can I have a clean one?
- 2 I'm going to sell my car and buy ...
- 3 That's not a very good photograph, but this is ...
- 4 I want today's newspaper. This is ...
- 5 This box is too small. I need ...
- 6 Why do we always go to the same restaurant? Let's go to ...

75.3 A is talking to B. Use the information to complete the conversations. Use one/ones.

1 A stayed at a hotel. It was opposite the station. A: We stayed at a hotel. B: <u>Which one</u> ? A: <u>The one opposite the station.</u>	6 A is looking at a picture. It's on the wall. A: That's an interesting picture. B: <u>...</u> ? A: <u>...</u>
2 A sees some shoes in a shop window. They're green. A: I like those shoes. B: Which <u>...</u> ? A: The <u>...</u>	7 A sees a girl in a group of people. She's tall with long hair. A: Do you know that girl? B: <u>...</u> ? A: <u>...</u>
3 A is looking at a house. It has a red door. A: That's a nice house. B: <u>...</u> ? A: <u>...</u> with <u>...</u>	8 A is looking at some flowers in the garden. They're yellow. A: Those flowers are beautiful. B: <u>...</u> ? A: <u>...</u>
4 A is looking at some CDs. They're on the top shelf. A: Are those your CDs? B: <u>...</u> ? A: <u>...</u>	9 A is looking at a man in a restaurant. He has a moustache and glasses. A: Who's that man? B: <u>...</u> ? A: <u>...</u>
5 A is looking at a jacket in a shop. It's black. A: Do you like that jacket? B: <u>...</u> ? A: <u>...</u>	10 A took some photos at the party last week. A: Did I show you my photos? B: <u>...</u> ? A: <u>...</u>

## some and any

some



any

Use **some** in positive sentences:

- I'm going to buy **some** clothes.
- There's **some** ice in the fridge.
- We made **some** mistakes.

Use **any** in negative sentences:

- I'm **not** going to buy **any** clothes.
- There **isn't** **any** milk in the fridge.
- We **didn't** make **any** mistakes.

**B**

## any and some in questions

In most questions (but not all) we use **any** (**not some**):

- Is there **any** ice in the fridge?
- Has he got **any** friends?
- Do you need **any** help?

We normally use **some** (**not any**) when we *offer* things

(Would you like ... ?):

- A: Would you like **some** coffee?
- B: Yes, please.

or when we *ask for* things (Can I have ... ? etc.):

- A: Can I have **some** soup, please?
- B: Yes. Help yourself.
- A: Can you lend me **some** money?
- B: Sure. How much do you need?

**C**

## some and any without a noun

- I didn't take **any** photographs, but Jane took **some**. (= some photographs)
- You can have **some** coffee, but I don't want **any**. (= any coffee)
- I've just made **some** coffee. Would you like **some**? (= some coffee)
- 'Where's your luggage?' 'I haven't got **any**.' (= any luggage)
- 'Are there **any** biscuits?' 'Yes, there are **some** in the kitchen.' (= some biscuits)

**D**

## something / somebody (or someone)

- She said **something**.
- I saw **somebody** (or **someone**).
- Would you like **something** to eat?
- Somebody**'s at the door.

## anything / anybody (or anyone)

- She **didn't** say **anything**.
- I **didn't** see **anybody** (or **anyone**).
- Are you doing **anything** tonight?
- Where's Sue? Has **anybody** seen her?

## 76.1 Write some or any.

- 1 I bought some cheese, but I didn't buy any bread.
- 2 I'm going to the post office. I need some stamps.
- 3 There aren't any shops in this part of town.
- 4 Gary and Alice haven't got any children.
- 5 Have you got any brothers or sisters?
- 6 There are some beautiful flowers in the garden.
- 7 Do you know any good hotels in London?
- 8 'Would you like some tea?' 'Yes, please.'
- 9 When we were on holiday, we visited some very interesting places.
- 10 Don't buy any rice. We don't need any.
- 11 I went out to buy some oranges, but they didn't have any in the shop.
- 12 I'm thirsty. Can I have some water, please?

## 76.2 Complete the sentences. Use some or any + the words in the box.

air	cheese	help	milk	questions
batteries	friends	languages	photographs	shampoo

- 1 I want to wash my hair. Is there any shampoo?
- 2 The police want to talk to you. They want to ask you some questions.
- 3 I haven't got my camera, so I can't take any photographs.
- 4 Do you speak any foreign languages?
- 5 Yesterday evening I went to a restaurant with some friends of mine.
- 6 Can I have some air in my coffee, please?
- 7 The radio isn't working. There aren't any batteries in it.
- 8 It's hot in this office. I'm going out for some help.
- 9 A: Would you like some cheese?  
B: No, thank you. I've had enough to eat.
- 10 I can do this job alone. I don't need any help.

## 76.3 Complete the sentences. Use some or any.

- 1 Jane didn't take any photographs, but I took some. (I/take)
- 2 'Where's your luggage?' 'I haven't got any'. (I/not/have)
- 3 'Do you need any money?' 'No, thank you.'
- 4 'Can you lend me some money?' 'I'm sorry, but I haven't got any' (I/not/have)
- 5 The tomatoes in the shop didn't look very good, so I didn't buy them. (I/not/buy)
- 6 There were some nice oranges in the shop, so I bought one. (I/buy)
- 7 'How many phone calls did you make yesterday?' 'I made some' (I/not/make)

## 76.4 Write something/somebody or anything/anybody.

- 1 A woman stopped me and said something, but I didn't understand.
- 2 'What's wrong?' 'There's something in my eye.'
- 3 Do you know anything about politics?
- 4 I went to the shop, but I didn't buy anything.
- 5 Something has broken the window. I don't know who.
- 6 There isn't anything in the bag. It's empty.
- 7 I'm looking for my keys. Has anybody seen them?
- 8 Would you like something to drink?
- 9 I didn't eat anything because I wasn't hungry.
- 10 This is a secret. Please don't tell anybody.

## not + any      no      none



The car park is empty.

There aren't any cars }  
There are no cars }

How many cars are there in the car park?  
None.

## not (-n't) + any

- There aren't any cars in the car park.
- Tracey and Jeff haven't got any children.
- You can have some coffee, but I don't want any.

## no + noun (no cars / no garden etc.)

no ... = not any or not a

- There are no cars in the car park. (= there aren't any cars)
- We've got no coffee. (= we haven't got any coffee)
- It's a nice house, but there's no garden. (= there isn't a garden)

We use no ... especially after have (got) and there is/are.

negative verb + any = positive verb + no

- They haven't got any children. or They've got no children.  
(not They haven't got no children)
- There isn't any sugar in your coffee. or There's no sugar in your coffee.

B

## no and none

Use no + noun (no money / no children etc.):

- We've got no money.
- Everything was OK. There were no problems.

Use none alone (without a noun):

- 'How much money have you got?' 'None.' (= no money)
- 'Were there any problems?' 'No, none.' (= no problems)

C

## none and no-one

**none** = 0 (zero)

**no-one** = nobody

**None** is an answer for **How much? / How many?** (things or people):

- 'How much money have you got?' 'None.' (= no money)
- 'How many people did you meet?' 'None.' (= no people)

**No-one** is an answer for **Who?**:

- 'Who did you meet?' 'No-one.' or 'Nobody.'

## 77.1 Write these sentences again with no.

1 We haven't got any money. *We've got no money.*  
 2 There aren't any shops near here. *There are*  
 3 Carla hasn't got any free time.  
 4 There isn't a light in this room.

## Write these sentences again with any.

5 We've got no money. *We haven't got any money.*  
 6 There's no milk in the fridge.  
 7 There are no buses today.  
 8 Tom has got no brothers or sisters.

## 77.2 Write no or any.

1 There's ... *no* ... sugar in your coffee.  
 2 My brother is married, but he hasn't got ..... children.  
 3 Sue doesn't speak ..... foreign languages.  
 4 I'm afraid there's ..... coffee. Would you like some tea?  
 5 'Look at those birds!' 'Birds? Where? I can't see ..... birds.'  
 6 'Do you know where Jessica is?' 'No, I've got ..... idea.'

## Write no, any or none.

7 There aren't ..... pictures on the wall.  
 8 The weather was cold, but there was ..... wind.  
 9 I wanted to buy some oranges, but they didn't have ..... in the shop.  
 10 Everything was correct. There were ..... mistakes.  
 11 'How much luggage have you got?' '.....'  
 12 'How much luggage have you got?' 'I haven't got .....

## 77.3 Complete the sentences. Use any or no + the words in the box.

answer	difference	friends	furniture	heating
money	problems	questions	queue	

1 Everything was OK. There were ..... *no problems* .. .  
 2 Jack and Emily would like to go on holiday, but they've got .....  
 3 I'm not going to answer .....  
 4 He's always alone. He's got .....  
 5 There is ..... between these two machines. They're exactly the same.  
 6 There wasn't ..... in the room. It was completely empty.  
 7 I tried to phone you yesterday, but there was .....  
 8 The house is cold because there isn't .....  
 9 There was ..... outside the cinema, so we didn't have to wait to get our tickets.

## 77.4 Write short answers (one or two words) to these questions. Use none where necessary.

1 How many letters did you write yesterday? *Two... or ... A lot... or ... None.*  
 2 How many sisters have you got?  
 3 How much coffee did you drink yesterday?  
 4 How many photographs have you taken today?  
 5 How many legs has a snake got?

# not + anybody/anyone/anything nobody/no-one/nothing

**not + anybody/anyone  
nobody/no-one  
(for people)**



- There **isn't** { **anybody** } in the room.  
**anyone**
- There **is** { **nobody** } in the room.  
**no-one**
- A: Who is in the room?  
B: **Nobody.** / **No-one.**

**-body** and **-one** are the same:  
**anybody** = **anyone**    **nobody** = **no-one**

**not + anything  
nothing  
(for things)**



- There **isn't** **anything** in the bag.
- There **is** **nothing** in the bag.
- A: What's in the bag?  
B: **Nothing.**

B

**not + anybody/anyone**

- I don't know **anybody** (*or anyone*) here.

**nobody** = **not + anybody**

**no-one** = **not + anyone**

- I'm lonely. I've got **nobody** to talk to.  
(= I haven't got **anybody**)
- The house is empty. There is **no-one** in it. (= There isn't **anyone** in it.)

**not + anything**

- I can't remember **anything**.

**nothing** = **not + anything**

- She said **nothing**.  
(= She didn't say **anything**.)
- There's **nothing** to eat.  
(= There isn't **anything** to eat.)

C

You can use **nobody/no-one/nothing** at the beginning of a sentence or alone (to answer a question):

- The house is empty. **Nobody** lives there. (*not Anybody lives there*)
- 'Who did you speak to?'    '**No-one.**'

- Nothing** happened.  
(*not Anything happened*)
- 'What did you say?'    '**Nothing.**'

D

Remember: *negative verb + anybody/anyone/anything*  
*positive verb + nobody/no-one/nothing*

- He doesn't know **anything**. (*not He doesn't know nothing*)
- Don't tell **anybody**. (*not Don't tell nobody*)
- There **is** **nothing** to do in this town. (*not There isn't nothing*)

## 78.1 Write these sentences again with nobody/no-one or nothing.

- 1 There isn't anything in the bag.
- 2 There isn't anybody in the office.
- 3 I haven't got anything to do.
- 4 There isn't anything on TV.
- 5 There wasn't anyone at home.
- 6 We didn't find anything.

*There's nothing in the bag.*

*There's* \_\_\_\_\_

*I* \_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

## 78.2 Write these sentences again with anybody/anyone or anything.

- 1 There's nothing in the bag.
- 2 There was nobody on the bus.
- 3 I've got nothing to read.
- 4 I've got no-one to help me.
- 5 She heard nothing.
- 6 We've got nothing for dinner.

*There isn't anything in the bag.*

*There wasn't* \_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

## 78.3 Answer these questions with nobody/no-one or nothing.

- 1a What did you say? *Nothing.*
- 2a Who saw you? *Nobody.*
- 3a What do you want? \_\_\_\_\_
- 4a Who did you meet? \_\_\_\_\_

5a Who knows the answer?

6a What did you buy?

7a What happened?

8a Who was late? \_\_\_\_\_

Now answer the same questions with full sentences.

Use nobody/no-one/nothing or anybody/anyone/anything:

1b *I didn't say anything.*

2b *Nobody saw me.*

3b *I don't*

4b *I ..*

5b *.....*

6b *.....*

7b *.....*

8b *.....*

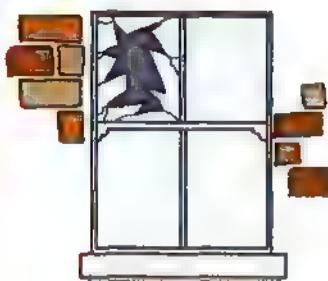
the answer.

## 78.4 Complete the sentences. Use:

**nobody / no-one / nothing or anybody / anyone / anything**

- 1 That house is empty. *Nobody* lives there.
- 2 Jack has a bad memory. He can't remember *anything*.
- 3 Be quiet! Don't say *.....*
- 4 I didn't know about the meeting. *.....* told me.
- 5 'What did you have to eat?' *'.....'* I wasn't hungry.'
- 6 I didn't eat *.....*. I wasn't hungry.
- 7 Helen was sitting alone. She wasn't with *.....*
- 8 I'm afraid I can't help you. There's *.....* I can do.
- 9 I don't know *.....* about car engines.
- 10 The museum is free. It doesn't cost *.....* to go in.
- 11 I heard a knock on the door, but when I opened it, there was *.....* there.
- 12 The hotel receptionist spoke very fast. I didn't understand *.....*
- 13 'What are you doing tonight?' *'.....'* Why?'
- 14 Helen has gone away. *.....* knows where she is. She didn't tell *.....* where she was going.

## somebody/anything/nowhere etc.



**Somebody** (or **Someone**) has broken the window.

**somebody/someone** = a person, but we don't know who

She has got **something** in her mouth.

**something** = a thing, but we don't know what

Tom lives **somewhere** near London.

**somewhere** = in/to a place, but we don't know where

**B***people (-body or -one)*

**somebody or someone**

There is **somebody** (or **someone**) at the door.

**anybody or anyone**

Is there **anybody** (or **anyone**) at the door?

**nobody or no-one**

There isn't **anybody** (or **anyone**) at the door.

There is **nobody** (or **no-one**) at the door.

**-body** and **-one** are the same: **somebody** = **someone**, **nobody** = **no-one** etc.

*things (-thing)*

**something**

Lucy said **something**, but I didn't understand what she said.

**anything**

Are you doing **anything** at the weekend?

**nothing**

I was angry, but I didn't say **anything**.

'What did you say?' 'Nothing.'

*places (-where)*

**somewhere**

Ruth's parents live **somewhere** in the south of England.

**anywhere**

Did you go **anywhere** interesting for your holidays?

**nowhere**

I'm staying here. I'm **not** going **anywhere**.

I don't like this town. There is **nowhere** to go.

**C***something/anybody etc. + adjective (big/cheap/interesting etc.)*

Did you meet **anybody interesting** at the party?

We always go to the same place. Let's go **somewhere different**.

'What's that letter?' 'It's **nothing important**.'

**D***something/anybody etc. + to ...*

I'm hungry. I want **something to eat**. (= something that I can eat)

Tony hasn't got **anybody to talk to**. (= anybody that he can talk to)

There is **nowhere to go** in this town. (= nowhere where people can go)

# Exercises

# Unit 79

## 79.1 Write somebody (or someone) / something / somewhere.

- 1 Lucy said ..... **something**.
- 2 I've lost .....
- 3 Sue and Tom went .....
- 4 I'm going to phone .....

What did she say?  
What have you lost?  
Where did they go?  
Who are you going to phone?

## 79.2 Write nobody (or no-one) / nothing / nowhere.

- 1a What did you say? ..... **Nothing.**
- 2a Where are you going? .....
- 3a What do you want? .....
- 4a Who are you looking for? .....

Now answer the same questions with full sentences.  
Use not + anybody/anything/anywhere.

- 1b I **didn't** say anything.
- 2b I'm not .....
- 3b .....
- 4b .....

## 79.3 Write somebody/anything/nowhere etc.

- 1 It's dark. I can't see ..... **anything**.
- 2 Tom lives ..... **somewhere** near London.
- 3 Do you know ..... about computers?
- 4 'Listen!' 'What? I can't hear .....
- 5 'What are you doing here?' 'I'm waiting for .....
- 6 We need to talk. There's ..... I want to tell you.
- 7 'Did ..... see the accident?' 'No, .....
- 8 We weren't hungry, so we didn't eat .....
- 9 'What's going to happen?' 'I don't know. .... knows.'
- 10 'Do you know ..... in Paris?' 'Yes, a few people.'
- 11 'What's in that cupboard?' '..... It's empty.'
- 12 I'm looking for my glasses. I can't find them .....
- 13 I don't like cold weather. I want to live ..... warm.
- 14 Is there ..... interesting on television tonight?
- 15 Have you ever met ..... famous?

## 79.4 Complete the sentences. Choose from the boxes.

something	anything	nothing
something	anywhere	nowhere
somewhere	nowhere	

do	eat	park	sit
drink	go	read	stay

- 1 We don't go out very much because there's ..... **nowhere to go**
- 2 There isn't any food in the house. We haven't got .....
- 3 I'm bored. I've got .....
- 4 'Why are you standing?' 'Because there isn't .....
- 5 'Would you like ..... ?' 'Yes, please – a glass of water.'
- 6 If you're going to the city centre, take the bus. Don't drive because there's .....
- 7 I want ..... I'm going to buy a magazine.
- 8 I need ..... in London. Can you recommend a hotel?

# every and all

## A every



**Every house** in the street is the same.

**every house** in the street =  
all the houses in the street

We use **every** + *singular noun* (**every house** / **every country** etc.):

- Sarah has been to **every country** in Europe.
- Every summer** we have a holiday by the sea.
- She looks different **every time** I see her.

Use a *singular verb* after **every** ... :

- Every house** in the street is the same. (*not are* the same)
- Every country has** a national flag. (*not have*)

Compare **every** and **all**:

- Every student** in the class passed the exam.
- Every country has** a national flag.

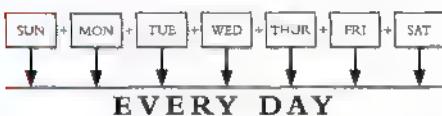
- All the students** in the class passed the exam.
- All countries have** a national flag.

## B

### every day and all day

**every day** = on all days:

*how often?*



- It rained **every day** last week.
- Bill watches TV for about two hours **every evening**. (= on all evenings)

also **every morning/night/summer** etc.

**all day** = the complete day:

*how long?*



- It rained **all day** yesterday.
- On Monday, I watched TV **all evening**. (= the complete evening)

also **all morning/night/summer** etc.

## C

### everybody (or everyone) / everything / everywhere

#### everybody or everyone

(people)

#### everything

(things)

#### everywhere

(places)

- Everybody (or Everyone)** needs friends.

(= all people need friends)

- Have you got **everything** you need?

(= all the things you need)

- I lost my watch. I've looked **everywhere** for it.

(= I've looked in all places)

Use a *singular verb* after **everybody/everyone/everything**:

- Everybody has** problems. (*not Everybody have*)

## 80.1 Complete the sentences. Use every + these words:

day room student time word

- 1 Every student in the class passed the exam.
- 2 My job is very boring. .... is the same.
- 3 Kate is a very good tennis player. When we play, she wins.
- 4 ..... in the hotel has satellite TV.
- 5 'Did you understand what she said?' 'Most of it, but not .....

## 80.2 Complete the sentences with every day or all day.

- 1 Yesterday it rained ..... all day.
- 2 I buy a newspaper ..... , but sometimes I don't read it.
- 3 I'm not going out tomorrow. I'll be at home .....
- 4 I usually drink about four cups of coffee .....
- 5 Paula was ill yesterday, so she stayed in bed .....
- 6 I'm tired now because I've been working hard .....
- 7 Last year we went to the seaside for a week, and it rained .....

## 80.3 Write every or all.

- 1 Bill watches TV for about two hours ..... every evening.
- 2 Julia gets up at 6.30 ..... morning.
- 3 The weather was nice yesterday, so we sat outside ..... afternoon.
- 4 I'm going away on Monday. I'll be away ..... week.
- 5 'How often do you go skiing?' '..... year. Usually in March.'
- 6 A: Were you at home at 10 o'clock yesterday?  
B: Yes, I was at home ..... morning. I went out after lunch.
- 7 My sister loves new cars. She buys one ..... year.
- 8 I saw Sam at the party, but he didn't speak to me ..... evening.
- 9 We go away on holiday for two or three weeks ..... summer.

## 80.4 Write everybody/everything/everywhere.

- 1 Everybody ..... needs friends.
- 2 Chris knows ..... about computers.
- 3 I like the people here. ..... is very friendly.
- 4 This is a nice hotel. It's comfortable and ..... is very clean.
- 5 Kevin never uses his car. He goes ..... by motorcycle.
- 6 Let's get something to eat. ..... is hungry.
- 7 Sue's house is full of books. There are books .....
- 8 You are right. ..... you say is true.

## 80.5 Complete the sentences. Use one word only each time.

- 1 Everybody ..... has problems.
- 2 Are you ready yet? Everybody ..... waiting for you.
- 3 The house is empty. Everyone ..... gone out.
- 4 Gary is very popular. Everybody ..... him.
- 5 This town is completely different now. Everything ..... changed.
- 6 I got home very late last night. I came in quietly because everyone ..... asleep.
- 7 Everybody ..... mistakes!
- 8 A: ..... everything clear? ..... everybody know what to do?  
B: Yes, we all understand.

# all      most      some      any      no/none

**A** Compare:

**children/money/books etc.** (in general):

- Children** like playing.  
(= children in general)
- Money** isn't everything.  
(= money in general)
- I enjoy reading **books**.
- Everybody needs **friends**.

**the children / the money / these books etc.:**

- Where are **the children**?  
(= our children)
- I want to buy a car, but I haven't got **the money**. (= the money for a car)
- Have you read **these books**?
- I often go out with **my friends**.

**most / most of ... , some / some of ... etc.**



all



most



some



any



no / none / not + any

**most/some etc. + noun**

all			
most	of		
some			
any			
no			

**cities  
children  
books  
money**

**most of/some of etc. + the/this/my ... etc.**

all	(of)	the ...
most		this/that ...
some	of	these/those ...
any		my/your ... etc.
none		

- Most children** like playing.  
(= children in general)
- I don't want **any money**.
- Some books** are better than others.
- He's got **no friends**.
- All cities** have the same problems.  
(= cities in general)

- Most of the children at this school** are under 11 years old.
- I don't want **any of this money**.
- Some of these books** are very old
- None of my friends** live near me.

Do not use **of** in these sentences:

- Most people** drive too fast.  
(not Most of people)
- Some birds** can't fly.  
(not Some of birds)

You can say **all the ...** or **all of the ...**  
(with or without **of**):

- All the students in our class** passed the exam. (or **All of the students ...**)
- Silvia has lived in London **all her life**.  
(or ... **all of her life**.)

**C** all of it / most of them / none of us etc.

all		it
most		them
some	of	us
any		you
none		

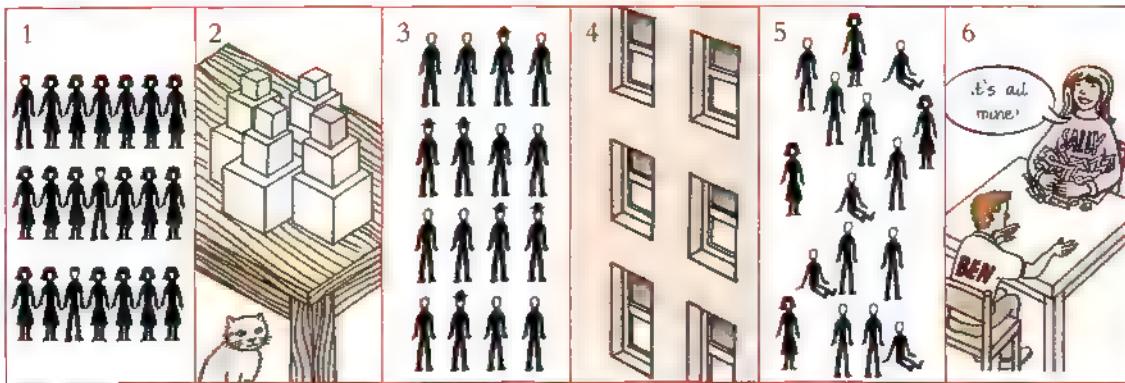
- You can have **some of this cake**, but not **all of it**.
- A: Do you know those people?  
B: **Most of them**, but not **all of them**.
- Some of us** are going out tonight. Why don't you come with us?
- I've got a lot of books, but I haven't read **any of them**.
- 'How many of these books have you read?' 'None of them.'

81.1 Complete the sentences. Use the word in brackets (some/most etc.). Sometimes you need of (some of / most of etc.).

- 1 Most ... children like playing. (most)
- 2 Some of ... this money is yours. (some)
- 3 ..... people never stop talking. (some)
- 4 ..... the shops in the city centre close at 6.30. (most)
- 5 You can change your money in ..... banks. (most)
- 6 I don't like ..... the pictures in the living room. (any)
- 7 He's lost ..... his money. (all)
- 8 ..... my friends are married. (none)
- 9 Do you know ..... the people in this photograph? (any)
- 10 ..... birds can fly. (most)
- 11 I enjoyed ..... the film, but I didn't like the ending. (most)
- 12 ..... sports are very dangerous. (some)
- 13 We can't find anywhere to stay. ..... the hotels are full. (all)
- 14 You must have ..... this cheese. It's delicious. (some)
- 15 The weather was bad when we were on holiday. It rained ..... the time. (most)

81.2 Look at the pictures and answer the questions. Use:

all/most/some/none + of them / of it



- 1 How many of the people are women? **Most of them.**
- 2 How many of the boxes are on the table?
- 3 How many of the men are wearing hats?
- 4 How many of the windows are open?
- 5 How many of the people are standing?
- 6 How much of the money is Ben's?

81.3 Are these sentences OK? Correct the sentences that are wrong.

- 1 Most of children like playing.
- 2 All the students failed the exam.
- 3 Some of people work too hard.
- 4 Some of questions in the exam were very easy.
- 5 I haven't seen any of those people before.
- 6 All of insects have six legs.
- 7 Have you read all these books?
- 8 Most of students in our class are very nice.
- 9 Most of my friends are going to the party.
- 10 I'm very tired this morning – I was awake most of night.

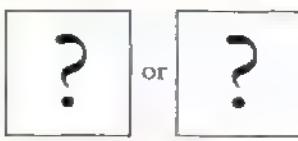
**Most children  
OK**

## both either neither

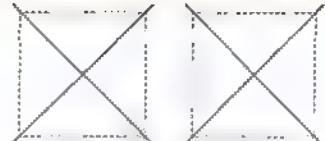
We use **both/either/neither** to talk about two things or people:



both



either



neither (not + either)

- Rebecca has two children. **Both** are married. (**both** = the two children)
- Would you like tea or coffee? You can have **either**. (**either** = tea or coffee)
- A: Do you want to go to the cinema or the theatre?  
B: **Neither**. I want to stay at home. (**neither** = not the cinema or the theatre)

Compare **either** and **neither**:

<input type="checkbox"/> 'Would you like <b>tea</b> or <b>coffee</b> ?'  <input type="checkbox"/> 'I don't mind.' (= tea or coffee) <input type="checkbox"/> 'I <b>don't</b> want <b>either</b> .' (not I don't want neither) <input type="checkbox"/> ' <b>Neither</b> .' (= not tea or coffee)
--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

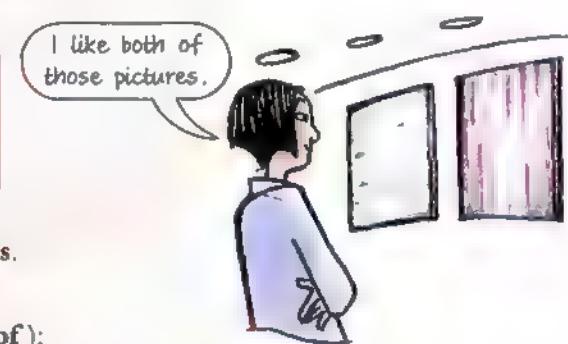
**both/either/neither + noun**

<b>both</b> + plural	<b>both</b>	<b>windows/books/children etc.</b>
<b>either</b> <b>neither</b> } + singular	<b>either</b>	<b>window/book/child etc.</b>

- Last year I went to Paris and Rome. I liked **both cities** very much.
- First I worked in an office, and later in a shop. **Neither job** was very interesting.
- There are two ways from here to the station. You can go **either way**.

**both of ... / either of ... / neither of ...**

<b>both</b>	(of)	the ...
<b>either</b> <b>neither</b>	of	these/those ... my/your/Paul's ... etc.



You can say **both of the/those/my ...** or  
**both the/those/my ...** (with or without of):

- I like **both of those pictures**. or I like **both those pictures**.
- Both of Paul's sisters** are married. or **Both Paul's sisters** are married.
- but **Neither of Paul's sisters** is married. (not Neither Paul's sisters)

D

**both of them / neither of us**

<b>both</b>		<b>them</b>
<b>either</b>	of	<b>us</b>
<b>neither</b>		<b>you</b>

- Paul has got two sisters. **Both of them** are married.
- Sue and I didn't eat anything. **Neither of us** was hungry.
- Who are those two people? I don't know **either of them**.

## 82.1 Write both/either/neither. Use of where necessary.

- 1 Last year I went to Paris and Rome. I liked both cities very much.
- 2 There were two pictures on the wall. I didn't like either of them.
- 3 It was a good football match. Both teams played well.
- 4 It wasn't a good football match. Neither team played well.
- 5 'Is your friend English or American?' 'Neither. She's Australian.'
- 6 We went away for two days, but the weather wasn't good. It rained two days.
- 7 A: I bought two newspapers. Which one do you want?  
B: Both. It doesn't matter which one.
- 8 I invited Donna and Mike to the party, but neither them came.
- 9 'Do you go to work by car or by bus?' 'Neither. I always walk.'
- 10 'Which jacket do you prefer, this one or that one?' 'I don't like either of them.'
- 11 'Do you work or are you a student?' 'Neither. I work and I'm a student too.'
- 12 Paula and I didn't know the time because neither us had a watch.
- 13 Helen has got two sisters and a brother. Both sisters are married.
- 14 Helen has got two sisters and a brother. I've met her brother, but I haven't met her sisters.

## 82.2 Complete the sentences for the pictures. Use Both ... and Neither ... .



## 82.3 A man and a woman answered some questions. Their answers were the same. Write sentences with Both/Neither of them ... .

1 Are you married?	No	No → 1	Neither of them is married.
2 How old are you?	21	21 → 2	Both of them are 21.
3 Are you a student?	Yes	Yes → 3	students.
4 Have you got a car?	No	No → 4	a car
5 Where do you live?	London	London → 5	
6 Do you like cooking?	Yes	Yes → 6	
7 Can you play the piano?	No	No → 7	
8 Do you read newspapers?	Yes	Yes → 8	
9 Are you interested in sport?	No	No → 9	

## a lot      much      many



a lot of money



not much money



a lot of books



not many books

We use **much** + *uncountable noun*  
(**much food** / **much money** etc.):

- Did you buy **much food**?
- We haven't got **much luggage**.
- How **much money** do you want?
- A: Have you got any **money**?  
B: I've got some, but **not much**.

We use **a lot of** + *both types of noun*:

- We bought **a lot of food**.
- Paula hasn't got **a lot of free time**.

We say:

- There is **a lot of food/money/water** ... (*singular verb*)

We use **many** + *plural noun*  
(**many books** / **many people** etc.):

- Did you buy **many books**?
- We don't know **many people**
- How **many photos** did you take?
- A: Did you take any **photos**?  
B: I took some, but **not many**.

- We bought **a lot of books**.
- Did they ask **a lot of questions**?

- There **are** a lot of **trees/shops/people** ... (*plural verb*)
- A **lot of people speak English**.  
(*not speaks*)

B We use **much** in *questions and negative sentences*:

- Do you drink **much coffee**?
- I don't drink **much coffee**.

But we do not often use **much** in *positive sentences*:

- I drink **a lot of coffee**. (*not I drink much coffee*)
- 'Do you drink much coffee?' 'Yes, **a lot**.' (*not Yes, much*)

C We use **many** and **a lot of** in all types of sentences (positive/negative/question):

- We've got **many friends** / **a lot of friends**.
- We haven't got **many friends** / **a lot of friends**.
- Have you got **many friends** / **a lot of friends**?

E You can use **much** and **a lot** without a noun:

- Donna spoke to me, but she didn't say **much**
- 'Do you watch TV **much**?' 'No, **not much**.' (= not often)
- We like films, so we go to the cinema **a lot**. (*not go to the cinema much*)
- I don't like him **very much**.

## 83.1 Write much or many.

- 1 Did you buy much food?
- 2 There aren't ..... hotels in this town.
- 3 We haven't got ..... petrol. We need to stop and get some.
- 4 Were there ..... people on the train?
- 5 Did ..... students fail the exam?
- 6 Paula hasn't got ..... money.
- 7 I wasn't hungry, so I didn't eat .....
- 8 I don't know where Gary lives these days. I haven't seen him for ..... years.

## Write How much or How many.

- 9 ..... people are coming to the party?
- 10 ..... milk do you want in your coffee?
- 11 ..... bread did you buy?
- 12 ..... players are there in a football team?

## 83.2 Complete the sentences. Use much or many with these words:

**books      countries      luggage      people      time      times**

- 1 I don't read very much. I haven't got many books.
- 2 Hurry up! We haven't got .....
- 3 Do you travel a lot? Have you been to ..... ?
- 4 Tina hasn't lived here very long, so she doesn't know .....
- 5 'Have you got ..... ?' 'No, only this bag.'
- 6 I know Tokyo well. I've been there .....

## 83.3 Complete the sentences. Use a lot of + these words:

**accidents      books      fun      interesting things      traffic**

- 1 I like reading. I have a lot of books.
- 2 We enjoyed our visit to the museum. We saw .....
- 3 This road is very dangerous. There are .....
- 4 We enjoyed our holiday. We had .....
- 5 It took me a long time to drive here. There was .....

## 83.4 In some of these sentences much is not natural. Change the sentences or write OK.

- 1 Do you drink much coffee? OK
- 2 I drink much tea. a lot of tea
- 3 It was a cold winter. We had much snow.
- 4 There wasn't much snow last winter.
- 5 It costs much money to travel around the world.
- 6 We had a cheap holiday. It didn't cost much.
- 7 Do you know much about computers?
- 8 'Have you got any luggage?' 'Yes, much.'

## 83.5 Write sentences about these people. Use much and a lot.

1 Jim loves films (go to the cinema)	He goes to the cinema a lot
2 Nicole thinks TV is boring. (watch TV)	She doesn't watch TV much.
3 Tina is a good tennis player. (play tennis)	She
4 Martin doesn't like driving. (use his car)	He
5 Paul spends most of the time at home. (go out)	
6 Sue has been all over the world. (travel)	

## (a) little      (a) few

(a) little + uncountable noun:

- (a) little water
- (a) little time
- (a) little money
- (a) little soup



a little water

(a) few + plural noun:

- (a) few books
- (a) few questions
- (a) few people
- (a) few days



a few books

**a little** = some but not much

- She didn't eat anything, but she drank **a little water**.
- I speak **a little Spanish**. (= some Spanish but not much)
- A: Can you speak Spanish?  
B: **A little**.

✖ **little** (*without a*) = nearly no or nearly nothing

- There was **little food** in the fridge. It was nearly empty.

You can say **very little**:

- Dan is very thin because he eats **very little**. (= nearly nothing)

little and **a** little**A little** is a positive idea:

- They have **a little** money, so they're not poor. (= they have some money)

**Little** (*or very little*) is a negative idea:

- They have **little** money. They are very poor. (= nearly no money)

I've got a  
little money.



I've got  
little money.

**a few** = some but not many

- Excuse me, I have to make **a few phone calls**.
- We're going away for **a few days**.
- I speak **a few words** of Spanish.
- A: Are there any shops near here?  
B: Yes, **a few**.

✖ **few** (*without a*) = nearly no

- There were **few people** in the theatre. It was nearly empty.

You can say **very few**:

- Your English is very good. You make **very few mistakes**.

few and **a** few**A few** is a positive idea:

- I've got **a few** friends, so I'm not lonely. (= I've got some friends)

**Few** (*or very few*) is a negative idea:

- I'm sad and I'm lonely. I've got **few** friends. (= nearly no friends)

I've got a  
few friends.



I've got few  
friends.



## 84.1 Answer the questions with a little or a few.

- 1 'Have you got any money?' 'Yes, a little' :
- 2 'Have you got any envelopes?' 'Yes, .....'
- 3 'Do you want sugar in your coffee?' 'Yes, ..... , please.'
- 4 'Did you take any photographs when you were on holiday?' 'Yes, .....
- 5 'Does your friend speak English?' 'Yes, .....
- 6 'Are there any good restaurants in this town?' 'Yes, .....

## 84.2 Write a little or a few + these words:

**chairs      days      fresh air      friends      milk      Russian      times      years**

- 1 Martin speaks Italian well. He lived in Italy for a few years.
- 2 Can I have ..... in my coffee, please?
- 3 'When did Julia go away?' '..... ago.'
- 4 'Do you speak any foreign languages?' 'I can speak .....
- 5 'Are you going out alone?' 'No, I'm going with .....
- 6 'Have you ever been to Mexico?' 'Yes, .....
- 7 There wasn't much furniture in the room – just a table and .....
- 8 I'm going out for a walk. I need .....

## 84.3 Complete the sentences. Use very little or very few + these words:

**coffee      hotels      mistakes      people      rain      time      work**

- 1 Your English is very good. You make very few mistakes.
- 2 I drink ..... I don't like it.
- 3 The weather here is very dry in summer. There is .....
- 4 It's difficult to find a place to stay in this town. There are .....
- 5 Hurry up. We've got .....
- 6 The town is very quiet at night. .... go out.
- 7 Some people in the office are very lazy. They do .....

## 84.4 Write little / a little or few / a few.

- 1 There was little food in the fridge. It was nearly empty.
- 2 'When did Sarah go out?' '..... minutes ago.'
- 3 I can't decide now. I need ..... time to think about it.
- 4 There was ..... traffic, so we arrived earlier than we expected.
- 5 The bus service isn't very good at night – there are ..... buses after 9 o'clock.
- 6 'Would you like some soup?' 'Yes, ..... , please.'
- 7 I'd like to practise my English more, but I have ..... opportunity.

## 84.5 Right or wrong? Change the sentences where necessary. Write OK if the sentence is correct.

- 1 We're going away for few days next week. for a few days
- 2 Everybody needs little luck.
- 3 I can't talk to you now – I've got few things to do.
- 4 I eat very little meat – I don't like it very much.
- 5 Excuse me, can I ask you few questions?
- 6 There were little people on the bus – it was nearly empty.
- 7 Martin is a very private person. Few people know him well

## old/nice/interesting etc. (adjectives)

A adjective + noun (nice day / blue eyes etc.)

adjective + noun

	It's a <b>nice</b> <b>day</b> today.
Laura has got <b>brown</b> <b>eyes</b> .	
There's a very <b>old</b> <b>bridge</b> in this village.	
Do you like <b>Italian</b> <b>food</b> ?	
I don't speak any <b>foreign</b> <b>languages</b> .	
There are some <b>beautiful</b> yellow <b>flowers</b> in the garden.	

The adjective is *before* the noun:

- They live in a **modern house**. (*not* a house modern)
- Have you met any **famous people**? (*not* people famous)

The ending of an adjective is always the same:

a different place      different places (*not* differents)

B

be (am/is/was etc.) + adjective

- The weather is **nice** today.
- These flowers are very **beautiful**.
- Are you **cold**? Shall I close the window?
- I'm **hungry**. Can I have something to eat?
- The film wasn't very good. It was **boring**.
- Please be quiet. I'm reading.



C

look/feel/smell/taste/sound + adjective



- 'You **look tired**.' 'Yes, I **feel tired**.'
- Gary told me about his new job. It **sounds** very **interesting**.
- I'm not going to eat this fish. It doesn't **smell good**.

Compare:

He	is			They	are			It	is		
	feels	tired.			look		happy.		tastes	good.	
	looks				sound						

# Exercises

# Unit 85

## 85.1 Put the words in the right order.

- 1 (new / live in / house / they / a)
- 2 (like / jacket / I / that / green)
- 3 (music / like / do / classical / you?)
- 4 (had / wonderful / a / I / holiday)
- 5 (went to / restaurant / a / Japanese / we)

They live in a new house.

I

Do

## 85.2 The words in the box are adjectives (black/foreign etc.) or nouns (air/job etc.). Use an adjective and a noun to complete each sentence.

air	clouds	foreign	holiday	job	languages	sharp
black	dangerous	fresh	hot	knife	long	water

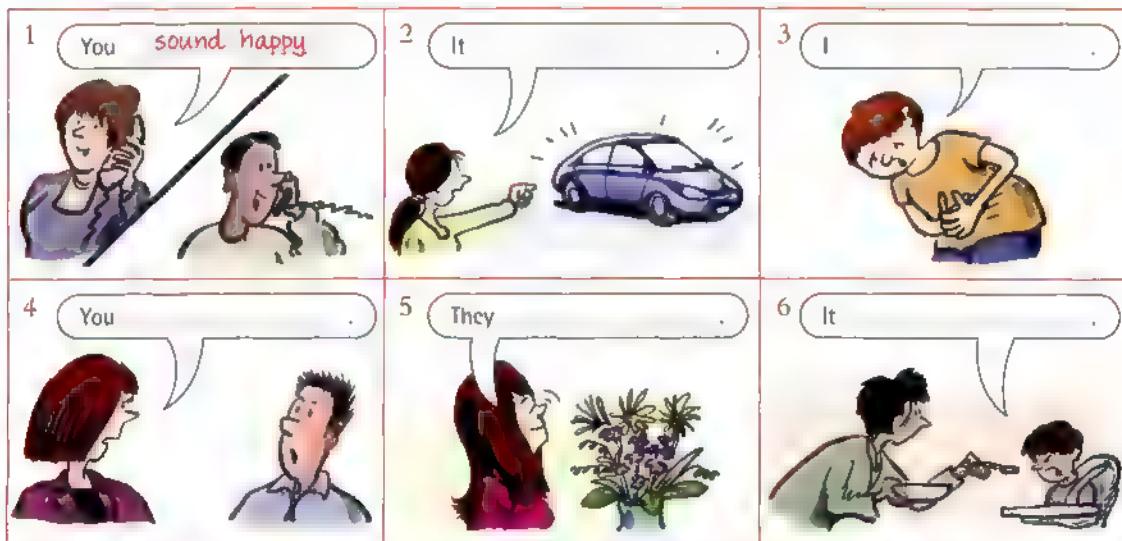
- 1 Do you speak any foreign languages?
- 2 Look at those clouds. It's going to rain.
- 3 Sue works very hard, and she's very tired. She needs a holiday.
- 4 I would like to have a shower, but there's no hot water.
- 5 Can you open the window? We need some fresh air.
- 6 I need a knife to cut these onions.
- 7 Fire-fighting is a dangerous job.

## 85.3 Write sentences for the pictures. Choose from the boxes.

feel(s)	look(s)	sound(s)
look(s)	smell(s)	taste(s)

+

happy	ill	nice
horrible	new	surprised



## 85.4 A and B don't agree. Complete B's sentences. Use feel/look etc.

A

- 1 You look tired.
- 2 This is a new coat.
- 3 I'm American.
- 4 You look cold.
- 5 These bags are heavy.
- 6 That soup looks good.

Do I? I don't feel tired.

Is it? It doesn't smell nice.

Are you? You sound happy.

Do I? I feel ill.

Are they? They look terrible.

Maybe, but it tastes nice.

(feel)

(look)

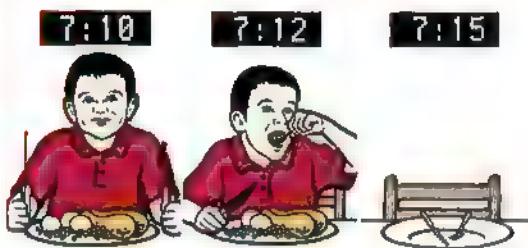
(sound)

(feel)

(look)

(taste)

## quickly/badly/suddenly etc. (adverbs)



He ate his dinner very quickly.



Suddenly the shelf fell down.

**Quickly** and **suddenly** are adverbs.

**adjective + -ly** → adverb:

adjective	quick	bad	sudden	careful	heavy	
adverb	quickly	badly	suddenly	carefully	heavily	etc.

Spelling (→ Appendix 5): easy → easily      heavy → heavily

**B** Adverbs tell you *how* something happens or *how* somebody does something:

- The train stopped suddenly.
- I opened the door slowly.
- Please listen carefully.
- I understand you perfectly.



It's raining heavily.

Compare:

**adjective**

- Sue is very quiet.
- Be careful!
- It was a bad game.
- I felt nervous.  
(= I was nervous)

**adverb**

- Sue speaks very quietly. (*not* speaks very quiet)
- Listen carefully! (*not* listen careful)
- Our team played badly. (*not* played bad)
- I waited nervously.

**C** hard fast late early

These words are adjectives *and* adverbs:

- Sue's job is very hard.
- Ben is a fast runner.
- The bus was late/early.

- Sue works very hard. (*not* hardly)
- Ben can run fast.
- I went to bed late/early.

**D** good (adjective) → well (adverb)

- Your English is very good.
- It was a good game.

- You speak English very well. (*not* very good)
- Our team played well.

But **well** is also an *adjective* (= not ill, in good health):

- 'How are you?' 'I'm very well, thank you. And you?'

# Exercises

# Unit 86

## 86.1 Look at the pictures and complete the sentences with these adverbs:

angrily      badly      dangerously      fast      heavily      quietly



1 It's raining heavily.  
2 He sings very badly.  
3 They came in dangerously.  
4 She shouted at me angrily.  
5 She can run very fast.  
6 He was driving heavily.

## 86.2 Complete the sentences. Choose from the boxes.

come	know	sleep	win	+ <u>carefully</u>	clearly	hard	well
explain	listen	think	work	<u>carefully</u>	easily	quickly	well

1 I'm going to tell you something very important, so please listen carefully.  
2 They sleep well. At the end of the day they're always tired.  
3 I'm tired this morning. I didn't sleep well last night.  
4 You play tennis much better than me. When we play, you always win well.  
5 Carefully, listen carefully before you answer the question.  
6 I've met Alice a few times, but I don't know her very well.  
7 Our teacher doesn't explain things very well. We never understand him.  
8 Helen! I need your help. Carefully listen carefully!

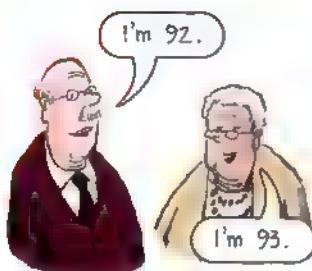
## 86.3 Which is right?

- 1 Don't eat so quick/quickly. It's not good for you. (quickly is right)
- 2 Why are you angry/angrily? I haven't done anything.
- 3 Can you speak slow/slowly, please?
- 4 Come on, Dave! Why are you always so slow/slowly?
- 5 Bill is a very careful/carefully driver.
- 6 Jane is studying hard/hardly for her examinations.
- 7 'Where's Diane?' 'She was here, but she left sudden/suddenly.'
- 8 Please be quiet/quietly. I'm studying.
- 9 Some companies pay their workers very bad/badly.
- 10 Those oranges look nice/nicely. Can I have one?
- 11 I don't remember much about the accident. Everything happened quick/quickly.

## 86.4 Write good or well.

- 1 Your English is very good. You speak it very well.
- 2 Jackie did very well in her exams.
- 3 The party was very good. I enjoyed it very much.
- 4 Martin has a difficult job, but he does it well.
- 5 How are your parents? Are they good?
- 6 Did you have a good holiday? Was the weather good?

## old/older      expensive / more expensive



old

older



heavy

heavier



expensive

more expensive

**Older / heavier / more expensive** are *comparative forms*.

The comparative is **-er** (**older**) or **more ...** (**more expensive**).

**older/heavier etc.**

Short words (1 syllable) → **-er**:

old → older	slow → slower	cheap → cheaper
nice → nicer	late → later	big → bigger

**Spelling** (→ Appendix 5): big → bigger    hot → hotter    thin → thinner

Words ending in **-y** → **-ier**:

easy → easier	heavy → heavier	early → earlier
---------------	-----------------	-----------------

- Rome is **old**, but Athens is **older**. (*not more old*)
- Is it **cheaper** to go by car or by train? (*not more cheap*)
- Helen wants a **bigger** car.
- This coat is OK, but I think the other one is **nicer**.
- Don't take the bus. It's **easier** to take a taxi. (*not more easy*)

**far → further:**

- 'How far is it to the station? A mile?'    'No, it's **further**. About two miles.'

**more ...**

Long words (2/3/4 syllables) → **more ...**:

careful → <b>more careful</b>	polite → <b>more polite</b>
expensive → <b>more expensive</b>	interesting → <b>more interesting</b>

- You must be **more careful**.
- I don't like my job. I want to do something **more interesting**.
- Is it **more expensive** to go by car or by train?

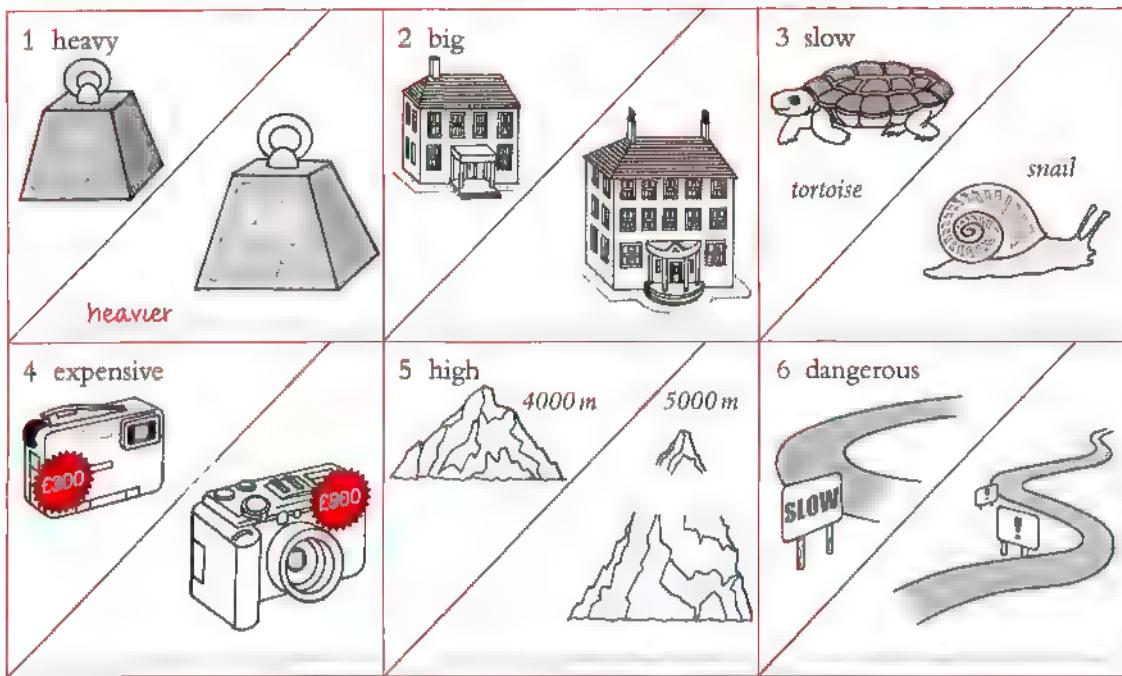
**good/well → better    bad → worse**

- The weather wasn't very **good** yesterday, but it's **better** today.
- 'Do you feel **better** today?'    'No, I feel **worse**.'
- Which is **worse** – a headache or a toothache?

# Exercises

# Unit 87

## 87.1 Look at the pictures and write the comparative (older / more interesting etc.).



## 87.2 Write the comparative.

1 old	older	6 good
2 strong		7 large
3 happy		8 serious
4 modern		9 pretty
5 important		10 crowded

## 87.3 Write the opposite.

1 younger	older	4 better
2 colder		5 nearer
3 cheaper		6 easier

## 87.4 Complete the sentences. Use a comparative.

- 1 Helen's car isn't very big. She wants a ... **bigger** ... one.
- 2 My job isn't very interesting. I want to do something ... **more interesting** ... .
- 3 You're not very tall. Your brother is ... **taller** ... .
- 4 David doesn't work very hard. I work ... **harder** ... .
- 5 My chair isn't very comfortable. Yours is ... **more comfortable** ... .
- 6 Your idea isn't very good. My idea is ... **better** ... .
- 7 These flowers aren't very nice. The blue ones are ... **nicer** ... .
- 8 My bag isn't very heavy. Your bag is ... **lighter** ... .
- 9 I'm not very interested in art. I'm ... **more interested** ... in history.
- 10 It isn't very warm today. It was ... **warmer** ... yesterday.
- 11 These tomatoes don't taste very good. The other ones tasted ... **better** ... .
- 12 Britain isn't very big. France is ... **larger** ... .
- 13 London isn't very beautiful. Paris is ... **more beautiful** ... .
- 14 This knife isn't very sharp. Have you got a ... **sharper** ... one?
- 15 People today aren't very polite. In the past they were ... **more polite** ... .
- 16 The weather isn't too bad today. Often it is much ... **nicer** ... .

## older than ... more expensive than ...



Hotel Prices (per room per night)	
Europa Hotel	£140
Grand Hotel	£130
Royal Hotel	£125
tel	£110

She's **taller than** him.

The Europa Hotel is **more expensive than** the Grand.

We use **than** after comparatives (**older than ... / more expensive than ... etc.**):

- Athens is **older than** Rome.
- Are oranges **more expensive than** bananas?
- It's **easier** to take a taxi **than** to take the bus.
- 'How are you today?'    'Not bad. **Better than** yesterday.'
- The restaurant is **more crowded than** usual.

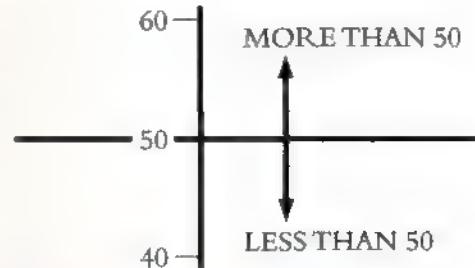
**B** We usually say: **than me / than him / than her / than us / than them.**

You can say:

- I can run faster **than him**. *or* I can run faster **than he can**.
- You are a better singer **than me**. *or* You are a better singer **than I am**.
- I got up earlier **than her**. *or* I got up earlier **than she did**.

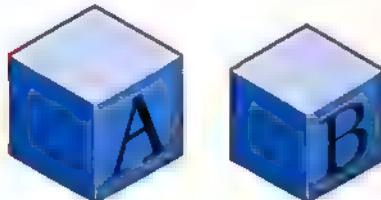
**C** **more/less than ...**

- A: How much did your shoes cost? £50?  
B: No, **more than** that. (= **more than** £50)
- The film was very short – **less than** an hour.
- They've got **more money than** they need.
- You go out **more than** me.

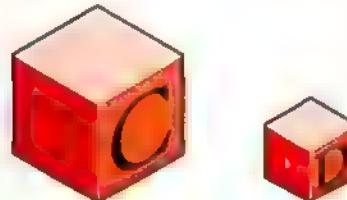


**D**

a bit older / much older etc.



Box A is **a bit bigger** than Box B.



Box C is **much bigger** than Box D.

<b>a bit</b> <b>much</b>	bigger older better more difficult more expensive	<b>than ...</b>
-----------------------------	---------------------------------------------------------------	-----------------

- Canada is **much bigger** than France.
- Sue is **a bit older** than Gary – she's 25 and he's 24.
- The hotel was **much more expensive** than I expected.
- You go out **much more** than me.

# Exercises

# Unit 88

## 88.1 Write sentences about Liz and Ben. Use than.



Liz

- 1 I'm 26.
- 2 I'm not a very good swimmer.
- 3 I'm 1 metre 68 tall.
- 4 I start work at 8 o'clock.
- 5 I don't work very hard.
- 6 I haven't got much money.
- 7 I'm a very good driver.
- 8 I'm not very patient.
- 9 I'm not a very good dancer.
- 10 I'm very intelligent.
- 11 I speak French very well.
- 12 I don't go to the cinema very much.



Ben

- 1 I'm 24.
- 2 I'm a very good swimmer.
- 3 I'm 1 metre 63 tall.
- 4 I start work at 8.30.
- 5 I work very hard.
- 6 I've got a lot of money.
- 7 I'm not a very good driver.
- 8 I'm very patient.
- 9 I'm a good dancer.
- 10 I'm not very intelligent.
- 11 I don't speak French very well.
- 12 I go to the cinema a lot.

- 1 Liz is older than Ben
- 2 Ben is a better swimmer than Liz
- 3 Liz is .....
- 4 Liz starts ..... Ben.
- 5 Ben .....
- 6 Ben has got .....

- 7 Liz is a .....
- 8 Ben .....
- 9 Ben .....
- 10 Liz .....
- 11 Liz .....
- 12 Ben .....

## 88.2 Complete the sentences. Use than.

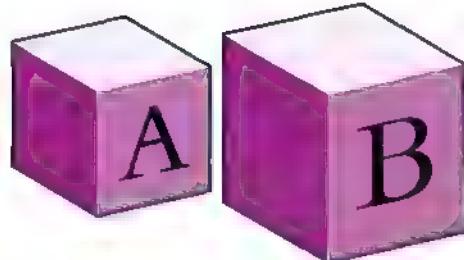
- 1 He isn't very tall. You're taller than him (OR taller than he is)
- 2 She isn't very old. You're .....
- 3 I don't work very hard. You work .....
- 4 He doesn't watch TV very much. You .....
- 5 I'm not a very good cook. You .....
- 6 We don't know many people. You .....
- 7 They haven't got much money. You .....
- 8 I can't run very fast. You can .....
- 9 She hasn't been here very long. You .....
- 10 They didn't get up very early. You .....
- 11 He wasn't very surprised. You .....

## 88.3 Complete the sentences with a bit or much + comparative (older/better etc.).

- 1 Emma is 25. Gary is  $24\frac{1}{2}$ .  
Emma is a bit older than Gary.
- 2 Jack's mother is 52. His father is 69.  
Jack's mother .....
- 3 My camera cost £100. Yours cost £96.  
My camera .....
- 4 Yesterday I felt terrible. Today I feel OK.  
I feel .....
- 5 Today the temperature is 12 degrees. Yesterday it was 10 degrees.  
It's .....
- 6 Sarah is an excellent tennis player. I'm not very good.  
Sarah .....

## not as ... as

not as ... as

She's old, but she's **not as old as he is.**

Box A isn't as big as Box B.

- Rome **is not as old as** Athens. (= Athens is **older**)
- The Grand Hotel **isn't as expensive as** the Europa. (= the Europa is **more expensive**)
- I **don't play tennis as often as** you. (= you play **more often**)
- The weather is better than it was yesterday. It **isn't as cold.** (= as cold as it was **yesterday**)

## B not as much as ... / not as many as ...

- I haven't got **as much money as** you. (= you've got **more money**)
- I don't know **as many people as** you. (= you know **more people**)
- I don't go out **as much as** you. (= you go out **more**)

## C Compare not as ... as and than:

- Rome is **not as old as** Athens.  
Athens is **older than** Rome. (*not older as* Rome)
- Tennis **isn't as popular as** football.  
Football is **more popular than** tennis.
- I **don't go out as much as** you.  
You go out **more than** me.

D We usually say: as **me** / as **him** / as **her** etc.

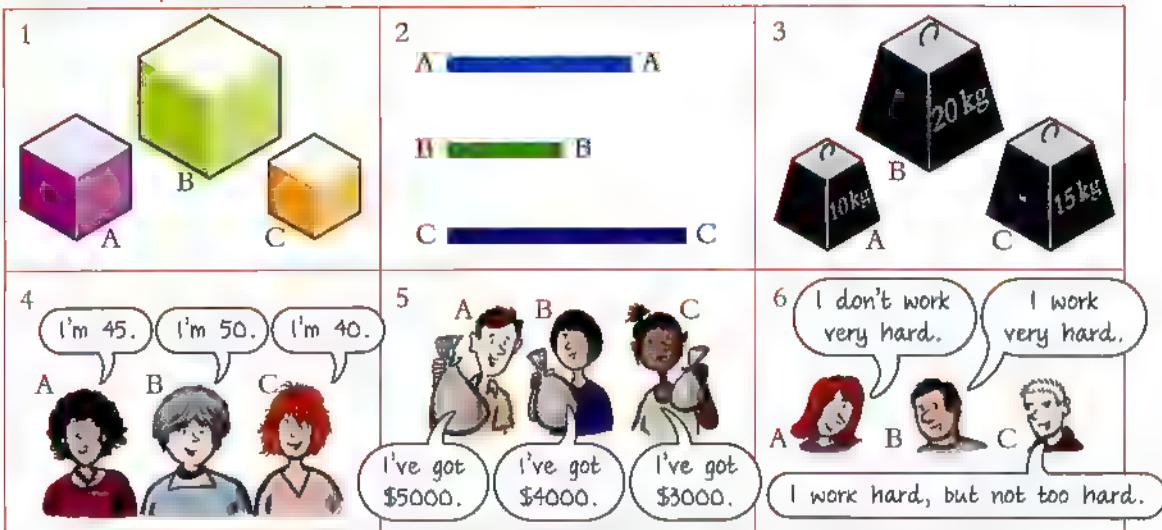
You can say:

- She's not as old **as him.** or She's not as old **as he is.**
- You don't work as hard **as me.** or You don't work as hard **as I do.**

E We say **the same as** ... :

- The weather today is **the same as** yesterday.
- My hair is **the same colour as** yours.
- I arrived at **the same time as** Tim.

## 89.1 Look at the pictures and write sentences about A, B and C.



1 A is ... bigger than C, but not as big as B

2 A is ..... B, but not

3 C is ..... A, but

4 A is ..... , but

5 B has got

6 C works

## 89.2 Write sentences with as ... as ... .

1 Athens is older than Rome.

Rome isn't as old as Athens

2 My room is bigger than yours.

Your room isn't

3 You got up earlier than me.

I didn't

4 We played better than them.

They

5 I've been here longer than you.

You

6 She's more nervous than him.

He

## 89.3 Write as or than.

1 Athens is older than Rome.

5 Joe isn't as intelligent as he thinks.

2 I don't watch TV as much as you.

6 Belgium is smaller than Switzerland.

3 You eat more than me.

7 Brazil isn't as big as Canada.

4 I'm more tired today than I was yesterday.

8 I can't wait longer than an hour.

## 89.4 Complete the sentences about Julia, Andy and Laura. Use the same age / the same street etc.

 I'm 22.  
I live in Hill Street.  
I got up at 7.15.  
I haven't got a car.

Julia

 I'm 24.  
I live in Baker Street.  
I got up at 7.16.  
My car is dark blue.

Andy

 I'm 24.  
I live in Hill Street.  
I got up at 7.45.  
I've got a car. It's dark blue.

Laura

1 (age) Andy is the same age as Laura

2 (street) Julia lives

3 (time) Julia got up

4 (colour) Andy's

## the oldest      the most expensive

A



Box A is **bigger** than Box B.

Box A is **bigger** than all the other boxes.

Box A is **the biggest** box.

### HOTEL PRICES IN KINTON

(*Per room per night*)

Europa Hotel	£140	Grosvenor	£100
Grand Hotel	£125	Bennets	£90
Royal	£120	Carlton	£85
Astoria	£115	Star	£75
Palace	£110	Station	£75

The Europa Hotel is **more expensive** than the Grand.

The Europa Hotel is **more expensive** than all the other hotels in the city.

The Europa Hotel is **the most expensive** hotel in the city.

**Bigger / older / more expensive** etc. are *comparative forms* (→ Unit 87).

**Biggest / oldest / most expensive** etc. are *superlative forms*.

B

The superlative form is **-est** (**oldest**) or **most ...** (**most expensive**).

Short words (**old/cheap/nice** etc.) → **the -est**:

old → <b>the oldest</b>	cheap → <b>the cheapest</b>	nice → <b>the nicest</b>
<i>but</i>	good → <b>the best</b>	bad → <b>the worst</b>

Spelling (→ Appendix 5): **big** → **the biggest**      **hot** → **the hottest**

Words ending in **-y** (**easy/heavy** etc.) → **the -iest**:

<b>easy</b> → <b>the easiest</b>	<b>heavy</b> → <b>the heaviest</b>	<b>pretty</b> → <b>the prettiest</b>
----------------------------------	------------------------------------	--------------------------------------

Long words (**careful/expensive/interesting** etc.) → **the most ...**:

<b>careful</b> → <b>the most careful</b>	<b>interesting</b> → <b>the most interesting</b>
------------------------------------------	--------------------------------------------------

C

We say **the oldest ... / the most expensive ...** etc. (with **the**):

- The church is very old. It's **the oldest** building in the town.  
(= it is **older than** all the other buildings)
- What is **the longest** river in the world?
- Money is important, but it isn't **the most important** thing in life.
- Excuse me, where is **the nearest** bank?

D

You can use **the oldest / the best / the most expensive** etc. without a noun:

- Ken is a good player, but he isn't **the best** in the team.  
(**the best** = the best player)

E

You can use **superlative + I've ever ... / you've ever ...** etc.:

- The film was very bad. I think it's **the worst** film I've ever seen.
- What is **the most unusual** thing you've ever done?

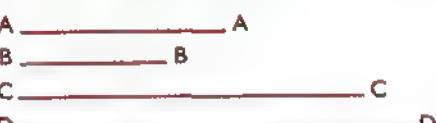
# Exercises

# Unit 90

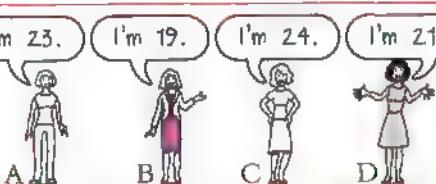
## 90.1 Write sentences with comparatives (older etc.) and superlatives (the oldest etc.).

1 

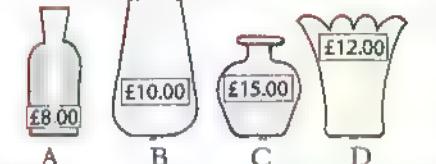
big/small  
(A/D) A is bigger than D.  
(A) A is the biggest.  
(B) B is the smallest.

2 

long/short  
(C/A) C is ..... A.  
(D) D is .....  
(B) B .....

3 

young/old  
(D/C) D .....  
(B)  
(C)

4 

expensive/cheap  
(D/A)  
(C)  
(A)

5 

good/bad  
(A/C)  
(A)  
(D)

## 90.2 Complete the sentences. Use a superlative (the oldest etc.).

- 1 This building is very old. It's ..... the oldest building ..... in the town.
- 2 It was a very happy day. It was ..... of my life.
- 3 It's a very good film. It's ..... I've ever seen.
- 4 She's a very popular singer. She's ..... in the country.
- 5 It was a very bad mistake. It was ..... I've ever made.
- 6 It's a very pretty village. It's ..... I've ever seen.
- 7 It was a very cold day. It was ..... of the year.
- 8 He's a very boring person. He's ..... I've ever met.

## 90.3 Write sentences with a superlative (the longest etc.). Choose from the boxes.

Sydney	Alaska	high	country	river	Africa	South America
Everest	the Nile	large	city	state	Australia	the world
Brazil	Jupiter	long	mountain	planet	the USA	the solar system

1 Sydney is the largest city in Australia.

2 Everest

3

4

5

6

## enough



She isn't going to take a taxi.  
She hasn't got **enough money**.



He can't reach the shelf.  
He isn't **tall enough**.

## B

**enough + noun (enough money / enough people etc.)**

- 'Is there **enough milk** in your coffee?' 'Yes, thank you.'
- We wanted to play football, but we didn't have **enough players**.
- Why don't you buy a car? You've got **enough money** (*not* money enough)

**enough without a noun**

- I've got some money, but not **enough** to buy a car.  
(= I need more money to buy a car)
- 'Would you like some more to eat?' 'No, thanks. I've had **enough**.'
- You're always at home. You don't go out **enough**.

**adjective + enough (good enough / tall enough etc.)**

- 'Shall we sit outside?' 'No, it isn't **warm enough**.' (*not* enough warm)
- Can you hear the radio? Is it **loud enough** for you?
- Don't buy that coat. It's nice, but it isn't **long enough**. (= it's too short)

**Remember:**

**enough + noun** but **adjective + enough**

<b>enough money</b>	<b>tall enough</b>
<b>enough time</b>	<b>good enough</b>
<b>enough people</b>	<b>old enough</b>

## C

We say:

**enough for** somebody/something

- This pullover isn't **big enough for me**.
- I haven't got **enough money for a new car**.
- I haven't got **enough money to buy** a new car. (*not* for buy)
- Is your English **good enough to have** a conversation? (*not* for have)
- There aren't **enough chairs for everybody to sit down**.

**enough to do** something

**enough for** somebody/something  
**to do** something

# Exercises

# Unit 91

91.1 Look at the pictures and complete the sentences. Use enough + these words:

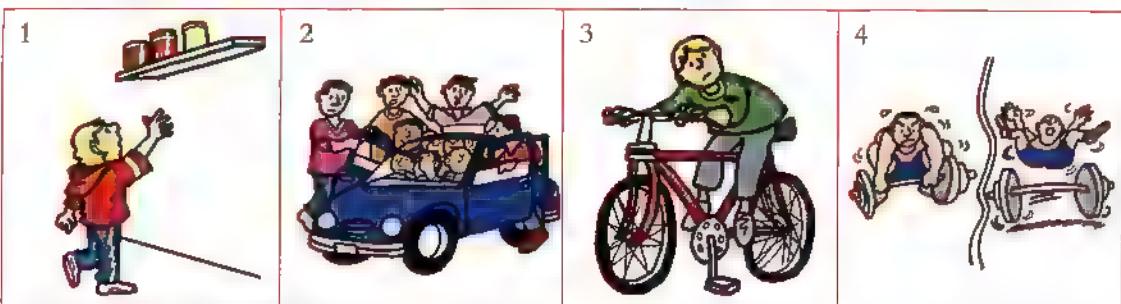
chairs    money    paint    wind



1 She hasn't got enough money.    3 She hasn't got enough chairs.  
2 There aren't enough chairs.    4 There isn't enough wind.

91.2 Look at the pictures and complete the sentences. Use these adjectives + enough:

big    long    strong    tall



1 He isn't tall enough to reach the shelf.    3 His legs aren't strong enough to lift the heavy box.  
2 The car isn't big enough for all the passengers.    4 He isn't strong enough to lift the heavy dumbbells.

91.3 Complete the sentences. Use enough with these words:

big    eat    loud    milk    old    practise    space    time    tired

1 'Is there enough milk in your coffee?' 'Yes, thank you.'  
2 Can you hear the radio? Is it loud enough for you?  
3 He can leave school if he wants – he's old enough.  
4 When I visited New York last year, I didn't have enough time to see all the things I wanted to see.  
5 This house isn't big enough for a large family.  
6 Tina is very thin. She doesn't eat enough food.  
7 My office is very small. There isn't enough space for my desk.  
8 It's late, but I don't want to go to bed now. I'm not tired enough.  
9 Lisa isn't a very good tennis player because she doesn't practise enough.

91.4 Complete the sentences. Use enough with these words:

1 We haven't got enough money to buy a new car. (money/buy)  
2 This knife isn't sharp enough to cut tomatoes. (sharp/cut)  
3 The water wasn't warm enough for swimming. (warm/go)  
4 Have we got enough bread to make sandwiches? (bread/make)  
5 We played well, but not well enough to win the game. (well/win)  
6 I don't have enough time to read newspapers. (time/read)

# too



His **shoes** are **too big** for him.



There is **too much** sugar in it.

## B too + adjective / adverb (too big / too hard etc.)

- Can you turn the radio down?  
It's **too loud**. (= louder than I want)
- I can't work. I'm **too tired**.
- I think you work **too hard**.



## C too much / too many = more than you want, more than is good:

- I don't like the weather here. There is **too much rain**. (= more rain than is good)
- Let's go to another restaurant. There are **too many people** here.
- Emily studies all the time. I think she studies **too much**.
- Traffic is a problem in this town. There are **too many cars**.

## D Compare **too** and **not enough**:



**too big**

- The hat is **too big** for him.
- The radio is **too loud**. Can you turn it down, please?
- There's **too much sugar** in my coffee. (= more sugar than I want)
- I don't feel very well. I ate **too much**.



**not big enough**

- The hat isn't **big enough** for him. (= it's too small)
- The radio isn't **loud enough**. Can you turn it up, please?
- There's **not enough sugar** in my coffee. (= I need more sugar)
- You're very thin. You don't eat **enough**.

## E We say:

**too ... for** somebody/something

- These shoes are **too big for me**.
- It's a small house – **too small for a large family**.

**too ... to do** something

- I'm **too tired to go out**. (*not for go out*)
- It's **too cold to sit outside**.

**too ... for** somebody **to do** something

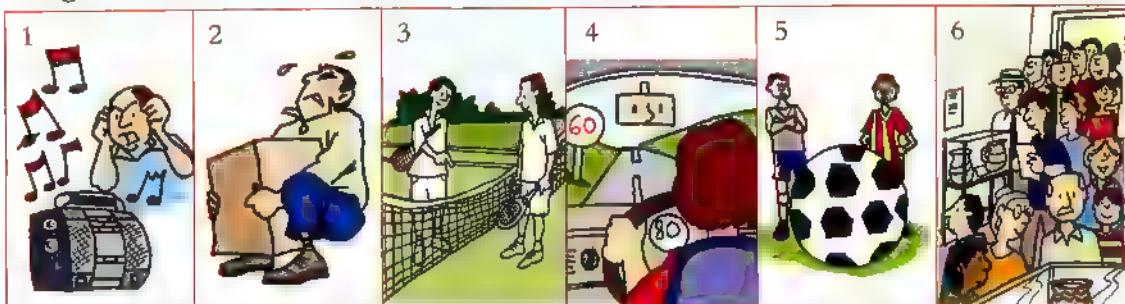
- She speaks **too fast for me to understand**.

# Exercises

# Unit 92

92.1 Look at the pictures and complete the sentences. Use **too + these words:**

big      crowded      fast      heavy      loud      low



1 The music is **too loud**.      4 She's driving **too fast**.

2 The box is **too heavy**.      5 The ball is **too big**.

3 The net is **too low**.      6 The museum is **too crowded**.

92.2 Write **too / too much / too many or enough**.

1 You're always at home. You don't go out **enough**.

2 I don't like the weather here. There's **too much** rain.

3 I can't wait for them. I haven't got **enough** time.

4 There was nowhere to sit on the beach. There were **too many** people.

5 You're always tired. I think you work **too hard**.

6 'Did you have **enough** to eat?' 'Yes, thank you.'

7 You drink **too much** coffee. It's not good for you.

8 You don't eat **enough** vegetables. You should eat more.

9 I don't like the weather here. It's **too cold**.

10 Our team didn't play well. We made **too many** mistakes.

11 'Would you like some milk in your tea?' 'Yes, but not **too much**'

92.3 Complete the sentences. Use **too** or **enough** with these words:

1 I couldn't work. I **was too tired**.      (tired)

2 Can you turn the radio up, please? It **isn't loud enough**.      (loud)

3 I don't want to walk home. It's **too far**.      (far)

4 Don't buy anything in that shop. It **is too expensive**.      (expensive)

5 You can't put all your things in this bag. It **isn't big enough**.      (big)

6 I couldn't do the exercise. It **was too difficult**.      (difficult)

7 Your work needs to be better. It **isn't good enough**.      (good)

8 I can't talk to you now. I **am too busy**.      (busy)

9 I thought the film was boring. It **was too long**.      (long)

92.4 Complete the sentences. Use **too (+ adjective) + to ...**

1 (I'm not going out / cold)      It's **too cold to go out**

2 (I'm not going to bed / early)      It's **too early to go to bed**

3 (they're not getting married / young)      They're **too young to get married**

4 (nobody goes out at night / dangerous)      It's **too dangerous to go out at night**

5 (don't phone Sue now / late)      It's **too late to phone Sue now**

6 (I didn't say anything / surprised)      I was **too surprised to say anything**

He speaks English very well.  
(word order 1)

A verb + object

Sue **reads** **a newspaper** every day.

subject      verb                  object

The **verb** (**reads**) and the **object** (**a newspaper**) are usually together. We say:

- Sue reads a newspaper every day.  
(not Sue reads every day a newspaper)



SUE (subject)    A NEWSPAPER (object)

verb + object

He speaks	English very well.	(not He speaks very well English)
I like	Italian food very much.	(not I like very much ...)
Did you watch	television all evening?	(not Did you watch all evening ...)
Paul often wears	a black hat.	(not Paul wears often ...)
We invited	a lot of people to the party.	
I opened	the door slowly.	
Why do you always make	the same mistake?	
I'm going to borrow	some money from the bank.	

B

where and when

We went **to a party** **last night**

      |                          |  
    **where?**                  **when?**

Place (*where?*) is usually before time (*when?*). We say:

- We went to a party last night. (not We went last night to a party)

place ( <i>where?</i> )	+	time ( <i>when?</i> how long? how often?)
----------------------------	---	----------------------------------------------

Lisa walks	to work	every day.	(not ... every day to work)
Will you be	at home	this evening?	(not ... this evening at home)
I usually go	to bed	early.	(not ... early to bed)
We arrived	at the airport	at 7 o'clock.	
They've lived	in the same house	for 20 years.	
Joe's father has been	in hospital	since June.	

## 93.1 Right or wrong? Correct the sentences that are wrong.

- 1 Did you watch all evening television?
- 2 Sue reads a newspaper every day.
- 3 I like very much this picture.
- 4 Tom started last week his new job.
- 5 I want to speak English fluently.
- 6 Jane bought for her friend a present.
- 7 I drink every day three cups of coffee.
- 8 Don't eat your dinner too quickly!
- 9 I borrowed from my brother fifty pounds.

Did you watch television all evening?  
OK

## 93.2 Put the words in order.

- 1 (the door / opened / I / slowly)
- 2 (a new computer / I / last week / bought)
- 3 (finished / Paul / quickly / his work)
- 4 (Emily / very well / French / doesn't speak)
- 5 (a lot of shopping / did / I / yesterday)
- 6 (London / do you know / well?)
- 7 (we / enjoyed / very much / the party)
- 8 (the problem / carefully / I / explained)
- 9 (we / at the airport / some friends / met)
- 10 (did you buy / in England / that jacket?)
- 11 (every day / do / the same thing / we)
- 12 (football / don't like / very much / I)

I opened the door slowly.

## 93.3 Put the words in order.

- 1 (to work / every day / walks / Lisa)  
Lisa walks to work every day.
- 2 (at the hotel / I / early / arrived)  
I ...
- 3 (goes / every year / to Italy / Julia)  
Julia ...
- 4 (we / since 1988 / here / have lived)  
We ...
- 5 (in London / Sue / in 1980 / was born)  
Sue ...
- 6 (didn't go / yesterday / Paul / to work)  
Paul ...
- 7 (to a wedding / last weekend / went / Helen)  
Helen ...
- 8 (I / in bed / this morning / my breakfast / had)  
I ...
- 9 (in September / Barbara / to university / is going)  
Barbara ...
- 10 (I / a beautiful bird / this morning / in the garden / saw)  
I ...
- 11 (many times / have been / my parents / to the United States)  
My ...
- 12 (my umbrella / I / last night / left / in the restaurant)  
I ...
- 13 (to the cinema / tomorrow evening / are you going?)  
Are ...
- 14 (the children / I / took / this morning / to school)  
I ...

## always/usually/often etc. (word order 2)

**A** These words (**always/never** etc.) are with the verb in the middle of a sentence:

<b>always</b>	<b>often</b>	<b>ever</b>	<b>rarely</b>	<b>also</b>	<b>already</b>	<b>all</b>
<b>usually</b>	<b>sometimes</b>	<b>never</b>	<b>seldom</b>	<b>just</b>	<b>still</b>	<b>both</b>

- My brother **never speaks** to me.
- She's **always late**.
- Do you **often go** to restaurants?
- I **sometimes eat** too much. (or **Sometimes I eat** too much.)
- 'Don't forget to phone Laura.' 'I've **already phoned** her.'
- I've got three sisters. They're **all married**.

**B** Always/never etc. are *before* the verb:

*verb*

<b>always</b>	<b>go</b>
<b>often</b>	<b>play</b>
<b>never</b>	<b>have</b>
etc.	etc.

- I **always drink** coffee in the morning.  
(not I drink **always** coffee)
- Helen **often goes** to London.  
(not Helen goes **often**)
- You **sometimes look** unhappy.
- They **usually have** dinner at 7 o'clock.
- We **rarely (or seldom) watch** television.
- Richard is a good footballer. He **also plays** tennis and volleyball.  
(not He plays **also** tennis)
- I've got three sisters. They **all live** in London.

But always/never etc. are *after* am/is/are/was/were:

<b>am</b>	<b>always</b>
<b>is</b>	<b>often</b>
<b>are</b>	<b>never</b>
<b>was</b>	etc.
<b>were</b>	

- I **am always tired**. (not I **always am tired**)
- They **are never** at home during the day.
- It **is usually** very cold here in winter.
- When I **was a child**, I **was often** late for school.
- 'Where's Laura?' 'She's **still** in bed.'
- I've got two brothers. They're **both** doctors.

**C** Always/never etc. are *between* two verbs (have ... been / can ... find etc.):

<i>verb 1</i>	<i>verb 2</i>	
<b>will</b>	<b>go</b>	
<b>can</b>	<b>find</b>	
<b>do</b>	<b>remember</b>	
etc.	etc.	
<b>have</b>		
<b>has</b>		

- I **will always remember** you.
- It **doesn't often rain** here.
- Do you **usually go** to work by car?
- I **can never find** my keys.
- Have you **ever been** to Egypt?
- A: Where's Laura?  
B: She's **just gone** out. (She's = She has)
- My friends **have all gone** to the cinema.

# Exercises

# Unit 94

94.1 Read Paul's answers to the questions. Write sentences about Paul with often/never etc.

1 Do you ever play tennis?  
2 Do you get up early?  
3 Are you ever late for work?  
4 Do you ever get angry?  
5 Do you ever go swimming?  
6 Are you at home in the evenings?

Paul  
Yes, often.  
Yes, always.  
No, never.  
Sometimes.  
Rarely.  
Yes, usually.

Paul often plays tennis.

He

He

94.2 Write these sentences with never/always/usually etc.

- 1 My brother speaks to me. (never) *My brother never speaks to me.*
- 2 Susan is polite. (always) *Susan*
- 3 I finish work at 5 o'clock. (usually) *I*
- 4 Sarah has started a new job. (just) *Sarah*
- 5 I go to bed before midnight. (rarely)
- 6 The bus isn't late. (usually)
- 7 I don't eat fish. (often)
- 8 I will forget what you said. (never)
- 9 Have you lost your passport? (ever)
- 10 Do you work in the same place? (still)
- 11 They stay in the same hotel. (always)
- 12 Jane doesn't work on Saturdays. (usually)
- 13 Is Tina here? (already)
- 14 What do you have for breakfast? (usually)
- 15 I can remember his name. (never)

94.3 Write sentences with also.

- 1 Do you play football? (tennis) *Yes, and I also play tennis.*
- 2 Do you speak Italian? (French) *Yes, and I*
- 3 Are you tired? (hungry) *Yes, and*
- 4 Have you been to England? (Ireland) *Yes,*
- 5 Did you buy any clothes? (some books)

94.4 Write sentences with both and all.

I live in London.  
I play football.  
I'm a student.  
I've got a car.

I live in London.  
I play football.  
I'm a student.  
I've got a car.

1 *They both live in London.*  
They ..... football.  
..... students.  
..... cars.

*I'm married. I was born in England  
I live in New York.*



2 *They ..... married.  
They ..... England.*

## still      yet      already

## A still

an hour ago



An hour ago it was raining.

now

It is **still** raining now.**still** = something is the same as before:

- I had a lot to eat, but I'm **still** hungry. (= I was hungry before, and I'm hungry now)
- 'Did you sell your car?' 'No, I've **still** got it.'
- 'Do you **still** live in Barcelona?' 'No, I live in Madrid now.'

## B yet

20 minutes ago



Twenty minutes ago they were waiting for Bill.

now

They are **still** waiting for Bill.  
Bill **hasn't** come yet.**yet** = until now

We use **yet** in negative sentences (He **hasn't** come **yet**.) and in questions (Has he come **yet**?).  
**Yet** is usually at the end of a sentence:

- A: Where's Emma?  
B: She **isn't** here **yet**. (= she will be here, but until now she hasn't come)
- A: What are you doing this evening?  
B: I **don't** know **yet**. (= I will know later, but I don't know at the moment)
- A: Are you ready to go **yet**?  
B: **Not** **yet**. In a minute. (= I will be ready, but I'm not ready at the moment)
- A: Have you finished with the newspaper **yet**?  
B: No, I'm **still** reading it.

Compare **yet** and **still**:

- She **hasn't** gone **yet**. = She's **still** here. (*not* she is **yet** here)
- I **haven't** finished eating **yet**. = I'm **still** eating.

## C already = earlier than expected:

- 'What time is Joe coming?' 'He's **already** here.' (= earlier than we expected)
- 'I'm going to tell you what happened.' 'That's not necessary. I **already** know.'
- Sarah **isn't** coming to the cinema with us. She **has already** seen the film.

# Exercises

# Unit 95

95.1 You meet Tina. The last time you saw her was two years ago. You ask her some questions with still.



1 Do you still play the piano?

2 Do you

3 Are

4

5

6

95.2 Write three sentences for each situation. Look at the example carefully.



(before) They were waiting for the bus.

(still) They are still waiting.

(yet) The bus hasn't come yet.

(before) He was

(still) He

(yet) yet.

(before) She was

(still)

(yet)

(before) They

(still)

(yet)

95.3 Write questions with yet.

- 1 You and Sue are going out together. You are waiting for her to get ready. Perhaps she is ready now. You ask her: Are you ready yet?
- 2 You are waiting for Helen to arrive. She wasn't here ten minutes ago. Perhaps she is here now. You ask somebody: Helen
- 3 Anna did an exam and is waiting for the results. Perhaps she has her results now. You ask her: you
- 4 A few days ago you spoke to Tom. He wasn't sure where to go on holiday. Perhaps he has decided now. You ask him:

95.4 Complete the sentences. Use already.

- 1 What time is Joe coming?
- 2 Does Sarah want to see the film?
- 3 I have to see Julia before she goes.
- 4 Do you need a pen?
- 5 Shall I pay the bill?
- 6 Shall I tell Paul about the meeting?

He's already here.

No, she has already seen it.

It's too late. She

No, thanks. I

one.

No, it's OK. I

No, he . I told him.

## Give me that book! Give it to me!

give lend pass send show

After these verbs (give/lend etc.), there are two possible structures:

**give something to somebody**

I gave the keys to Sarah.

**give somebody something**

I gave Sarah the keys.



B

**give something to somebody**

something to somebody

That's my book. Give	it	to me.
These are Sue's keys. Can you give	them	.to her?
Can you give	these flowers	to your mother?
I lent	my car	to a friend of mine.
Did you send	a postcard	to Kate?
We've seen these photos. You showed	them	to us.

C

**give somebody something**

somebody something

	Give	me	that book. It's mine.
Tom	gave	his mother	some flowers.
I	lent	Joe	some money.
How much money did you	lend	him?	
	I sent	you	an email. Did you get it?
Nicole	showed	us	her holiday photos.
Can you	pass	me	the salt, please?

You can also say 'buy/get somebody something':

- I bought my mother some flowers. (= I bought some flowers for my mother.)
- Can you get me a newspaper when you go out? (= get a newspaper for me)

D

You can say:

- I gave the keys to Sarah.  
*and* I gave Sarah the keys.  
(but not I gave to Sarah the keys)
- That's my book. Can you give it to me?  
*and* Can you give me that book?  
(but not Can you give to me that book?)

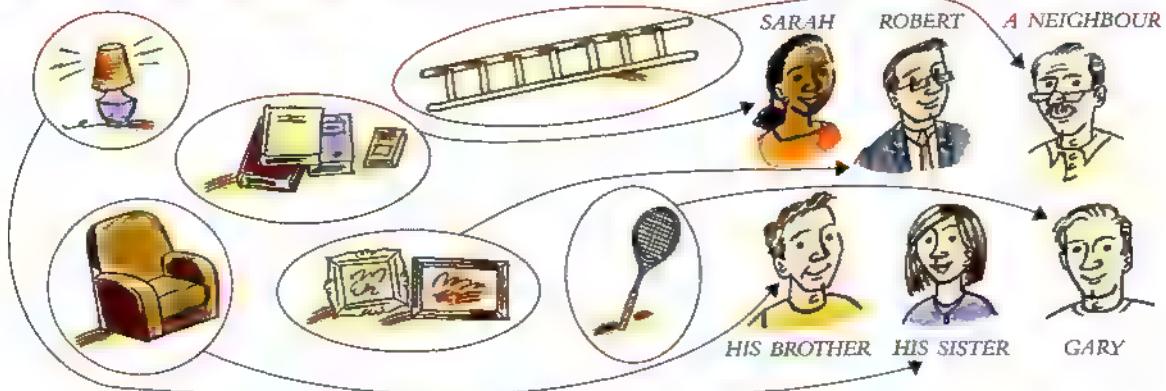
We prefer the first structure (give something to somebody) with it or them:

- I gave it to her. (not I gave her it)
- Here are the keys. Give them to your father. (not Give your father them)

# Exercises

# Unit 96

96.1 Mark had some things that he didn't want. He gave them to different people.



Write sentences beginning **He gave ...**

- 1 What did Mark do with the armchair? **He gave it to his brother.**
- 2 What did he do with the tennis racket? **He gave ...**
- 3 What happened to the books? **He**
- 4 What about the lamp?
- 5 What did he do with the pictures?
- 6 And the ladder?

96.2 You gave presents to your friends. You decided to give them the things in the pictures. Write a sentence for each person.



- 1 I gave Paul a book.
- 2 I gave ...
- 3 I ...
- 4 ...
- 5 ...
- 6 ...

96.3 Write questions beginning **Can you give me ... ? / Can you pass me ... ? etc.**

- 1 (you want the salt) (pass) **Can you pass me the salt?**
- 2 (you need an umbrella) (lend) Can you ...
- 3 (you want my address) (give) Can ... your
- 4 (you need twenty pounds) (lend) ...
- 5 (you want some information) (send)
- 6 (you want to see the letter) (show)
- 7 (you want some stamps) (get)

96.4 Which is right?

- 1 I gave to Sarah the keys. / I gave Sarah the keys. (**I gave Sarah the keys is right**)
- 2 I'll lend to you some money if you want. / I'll lend you some money if you want.
- 3 Did you send the letter me? / Did you send the letter to me?
- 4 I want to buy for you a present. / I want to buy you a present.
- 5 Can you pass to me the sugar, please? / Can you pass me the sugar, please?
- 6 This is Lisa's bag. Can you give it to her? / Can you give her it?
- 7 I showed to the policeman my identity card. / I showed the policeman my identity card.

## and      but      or      so      because

**A**  
and      but      or      so      because

We use these words (*conjunctions*) to join two sentences. They make one longer sentence from two shorter sentences:

*sentence A*    The car stopped.    *sentence B*

The car stopped **and** the driver got out.

**B** and/but/or

*sentence A*                  *sentence B*

We stayed at home	<b>and</b>	(we)* watched television.
My sister is married	<b>and</b>	(she)* lives in London.
He doesn't like her,	<b>and</b>	she doesn't like him.
I bought a newspaper,	<b>but</b>	I didn't read it.
It's a nice house,	<b>but</b>	it hasn't got a garden.
Do you want to go out,	<b>or</b>	are you too tired?

\* It is not necessary to repeat 'we' and 'she'.

In lists, we use commas (,). We use **and** before the last thing:

- I got home, had something to eat, sat down in an armchair **and** fell asleep.
- Karen is at work, Sue has gone shopping **and** Chris is playing football.

**C** so (the result of something)

*sentence A*                  *sentence B*

It was very hot,	<b>so</b>	I opened the window.
Joe does a lot of sport,	<b>so</b>	he's very fit.
They don't like travelling,	<b>so</b>	they haven't been to many places.

**D** because (the reason for something)

*sentence A*                  *sentence B*

I opened the window	<b>because</b>	it was very hot.
Joe can't come to the party	<b>because</b>	he's going away.
Lisa is hungry	<b>because</b>	she didn't have breakfast.

**Because** is also possible at the beginning:

- **Because** it was very hot, I opened the window.

**E** In these examples there is more than one conjunction:

- It was late **and** I was tired, **so** I went to bed.
- I always enjoy visiting London, **but** I wouldn't like to live there **because** it's too big.

## 97.1 Write sentences. Choose from the boxes and use and/but/or.

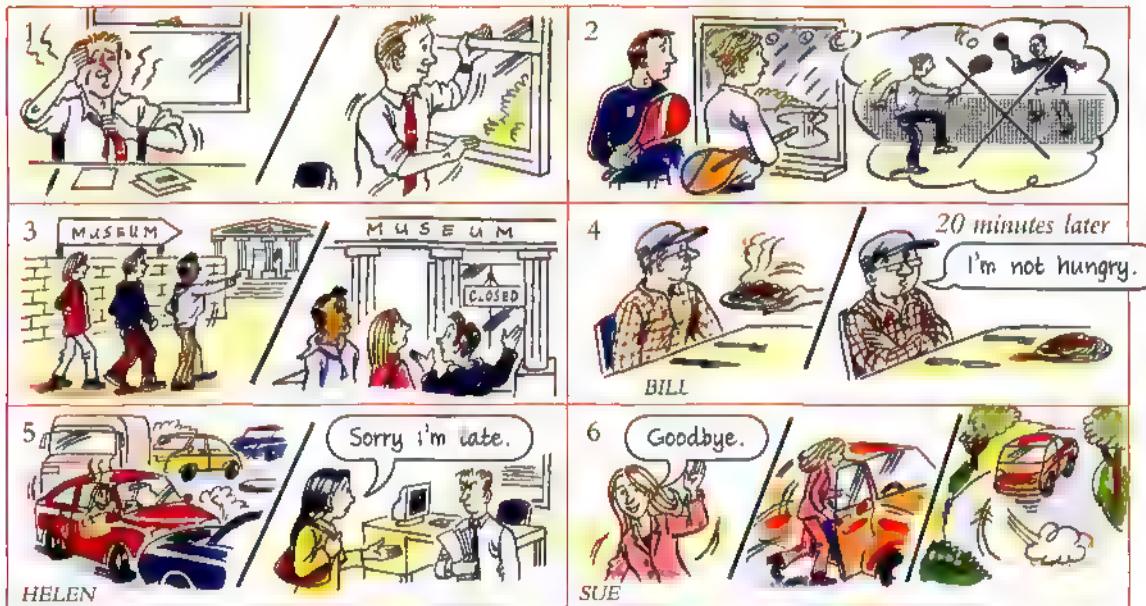
I stayed at home.  
I bought a newspaper.  
I went to the window.  
I wanted to phone you.  
I jumped into the river.  
I usually drive to work.  
Do you want me to come with you?

I didn't have your number.  
Shall I wait here?  
I didn't read it.  
I went by bus this morning.  
I watched television.  
I swam to the other side.  
I looked out.

1 I stayed at home and watched television.  
2 I bought a newspaper, but I didn't read it.

3 I  
4  
5  
6  
7

## 97.2 Look at the pictures and complete the sentences. Use and/but/so/because.



1 It was very hot, ... so he opened the window.  
2 They couldn't play tennis ...  
3 They went to the museum,  
4 Bill wasn't hungry,  
5 Helen was late  
6 Sue said ...

## 97.3 Write sentences about what you did yesterday. Use and/but etc.

1 (and) In the evening I stayed at home and studied.  
2 (because) I went to bed very early because I was tired.  
3 (but)  
4 (and)  
5 (so)  
6 (because)

## When ...

**When I went out, it was raining.**

This sentence has two parts:

**when I went out** + **it was raining**

You can say:

- When I went out, it was raining. or**  
**It was raining when I went out.**

We write a comma (,) if **When ...** is at the beginning:

- { **When** you're tired, don't drive.  
Don't drive **when** you're tired.
- { **Helen was 25 when** she got married.  
**When** Helen got married, she was 25.



We do the same in sentences with **before/while/after**:

- { **Always** look both ways **before** you cross the road.  
**Before** you cross the road, always look both ways.
- { **While** I was waiting for the bus, it began to rain.  
It began to rain **while** I was waiting for the bus.
- { **He never played football again after** he broke his leg.  
**After** he broke his leg, he never played football again.

## B

## When I am ... / When I go ... etc.

Next week Sarah is going to New York. She has a friend, Lisa, who lives in New York, but Lisa is also going away – to Mexico. So they won't see each other in New York.

**Lisa will be** in Mexico **when** Sarah is in New York.

The time is *future* (**next week**) but we say:

- ... when** Sarah **is** in New York.  
(*not* when Sarah **will be**)



We use the *present* (**I am / I go** etc.) with a *future meaning* after **when**:

- When** I get home this evening, I'm going to have a shower.  
(*not* When I will get home)
- I can't talk to you now. I'll talk to you later **when** I have more time.

We do the same after **before/while/after/until**:

- Please close the window **before** you go out. (*not* before you will go)
- Rachel is going to stay in our flat **while** we are away. (*not* while we will be)
- I'll wait here **until** you come back. (*not* until you will come back)

## 98.1 Write sentences beginning with when. Choose from the boxes.

**When +**

I went out  
I'm tired  
I phoned her  
I go on holiday  
the programme ended  
I got to the hotel

+

I turned off the TV  
I always go to the same place  
there were no rooms  
~~it was raining~~  
there was no answer  
I like to watch TV

1 When I went out, it was raining.

2

3

4

5

6

## 98.2 Complete the sentences. Choose from the box.

somebody broke into the house  
~~before they crossed the road~~  
they went to live in New Zealand

before they came here  
while they were away

when they heard the news  
they didn't believe me

- 1 They looked both ways before they crossed the road.
- 2 They were very surprised .....
- 3 After they got married, .....
- 4 Their house was damaged in a storm .....
- 5 Where did they live ..... ?
- 6 While we were asleep, .....
- 7 When I told them what happened, .....

## 98.3 Which is right?

- 1 I stay / I'll stay here until you come / you'll come back. (I'll stay and you come are right)
- 2 I'm going to bed when I finish / I'll finish my work.
- 3 We must do something before it's / it will be too late.
- 4 Helen is going away soon. I'm / I'll be very sad when she leaves / she'll leave.
- 5 Don't go out yet. Wait until the rain stops / will stop.
- 6 We come / We'll come and visit you when we're / we'll be in England again.
- 7 When I come / I'll come to see you tomorrow, I bring / I'll bring our holiday photos.
- 8 I'm going to Paris next week. I hope to see some friends of mine while I'm / I'll be there.
- 9 'I need your address.' 'OK, I give / I'll give it to you before I go / I'll go.'
- 10 I'm not ready yet. I tell / I'll tell you when I'm / I'll be ready.

## 98.4 Use your own ideas to complete these sentences.

- 1 Can you close the window before you go out ?
- 2 What are you going to do when ..... ?
- 3 When I have enough money, .....
- 4 I'll wait for you while .....
- 5 When I start my new job, .....
- 6 Will you be here when ..... ?

## If we go ...      If you see ... etc.



If can be at the beginning of a sentence or in the middle:

If at the beginning

If we go by bus,	it will be cheaper.
If you don't hurry,	you'll miss the train.
If you're hungry,	have something to eat.
If the phone rings,	can you answer it, please?

**if in the middle**

It will be cheaper	if we go by bus.
You'll miss the train	if you don't hurry.
I'm going to the concert	if I can get a ticket.
Is it OK	if I use your phone?

In conversation, we often use the if-part of the sentence alone:

- 'Are you going to the concert?'    'Yes, if I can get a ticket.'

B

If you see Ann tomorrow ... etc.

After if, we use the present (*not* will). We say 'if you see ...' (*not* if you will see):

- If you see Ann tomorrow, can you ask her to call me?
- If I'm late this evening, don't wait for me. (*not* if I will be)
- What shall we do if it rains? (*not* if it will rain)
- If I don't feel well tomorrow, I'll stay at home.

C

if and when

If I go out = it is possible that I will go out, but I'm not sure:

- A: Are you going out later?
- B: Maybe. If I go out, I'll close the windows.

When I go out = I'm going out (for sure):

- A: Are you going out later?
- B: Yes, I am. When I go out, I'll close the windows.

Compare when and if:

- When I get home this evening, I'm going to have a shower.
- If I'm late this evening, don't wait for me. (*not* When I'm late)
- We're going to play tennis if it doesn't rain. (*not* when it doesn't rain)

## 99.1 Write sentences beginning with if. Choose from the boxes.

If +

you don't hurry  
you pass the exam  
you fail the exam  
you don't want this magazine  
you want those pictures  
you're busy now  
you're hungry  
you need money

+

we can have lunch now  
you can have them  
I can lend you some  
you'll get a certificate  
~~you'll be late~~  
I'll throw it away  
we can talk later  
you can do it again

- 1 ... If you don't hurry, you'll be late.
- 2 If you pass
- 3 If
- 4 ...
- 5 ...
- 6 ...
- 7 ...
- 8 ...

## 99.2 Which is right?

- 1 If I'm / I'll be late this evening, don't wait for me. (I'm is right)
- 2 Will you call me if I give / I'll give you my phone number?
- 3 If there is / will be a fire, the alarm will ring.
- 4 If I don't see you tomorrow morning, I call / I'll call you in the evening.
- 5 I'm / I'll be surprised if Martin and Jane get / will get married.
- 6 Do you go / Will you go to the party if they invite / they'll invite you?

## 99.3 Use your own ideas to complete these sentences.

- 1 I'm going to the concert if I can get a ticket.
- 2 If you don't hurry, you'll miss the train.
- 3 I don't want to disturb you if
- 4 If you go to bed early tonight,
- 5 Turn the television off if
- 6 Tina won't pass her exams if
- 7 If I have time tomorrow,
- 8 We can go to the beach tomorrow if
- 9 I'll be surprised if

## 99.4 Write if or when.

- 1 ... If I'm late this evening, don't wait for me.
- 2 I'm going to do some shopping now. .... I come back, we can have lunch.
- 3 I'm thinking of going to see Tim. .... I go, will you come with me?
- 4 .... you don't want to go out tonight, we can stay at home.
- 5 Is it OK .... I close the window?
- 6 John is still at school. .... he leaves school, he wants to go to college.
- 7 Shall we have a picnic tomorrow .... the weather is good?
- 8 We're going to Madrid next week. We haven't got anywhere to stay – we hope to find a hotel .... we get there. I don't know what we'll do .... we don't find a room.

## If I had ...      If we went ... etc.

Dan likes fast cars, but he doesn't have one.  
He doesn't have enough money.

If he had the money, he **would buy** a fast car.

Usually **had** is *past*, but in this sentence **had** is *not* past. If he **had** the money = if he had the money *now* (but he doesn't have it).



<b>If</b>	I you it they etc.	had / knew / lived / went (etc.) ... , didn't have / didn't know (etc.) ... , <b>were</b> ... , <b>could</b> ... ,	I you it they etc.	<b>would(n't)</b> <b>could(n't)</b>	buy ... be ... have ... go ... etc.
-----------	--------------------------------	-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------	--------------------------------	----------------------------------------	-------------------------------------------------

You can say:

□ If he **had** the money, he **would buy** a car.

or     He would buy a car **if he had** the money.

I'd / she'd / they'd etc. = I would / she would / they would etc. :

- I don't know the answer. If I **knew** the answer, I'd **tell** you.
- It's raining, so we're not going out. We'd **get** wet if we **went** out.
- Jane lives in a city. She likes cities. She **wouldn't be** happy if she **lived** in the country.
- If you **didn't have** a job, what **would** you **do**? (but you *have* a job)
- I'm sorry I can't help you. I'd **help** you **if I could**. (but I *can't*)
- If we **had** a car, we **could** **travel** more. (but we *haven't* got a car, so we *can't* travel much)

## B

If (I) **was/were** ...

You can say 'if I/he/she/it **was**' or 'if I/he/she/it **were**':

- It's not a very nice place. I wouldn't go there if I **were** you. (or ... if I **was** you)
- It would be nice if the **weather** **was** better. (or ... if the **weather** **were** better)
- What would Tom do if he **were** here? (or ... if he **was** here)



Compare:

**if I have / if it is** etc.

- I must go and see Helen.  
**If I have** time, I **will go** today.  
(= maybe I'll have time, so maybe I'll go)
- I like that jacket.  
I'll **buy** it **if it isn't** too expensive.  
(= maybe it will not be too expensive)
- I'll **help** you **if I can**. (= maybe I can help)

**if I had / if it was** etc.

- I must go and see Helen.  
**If I had** time, I **would go** today.  
(= I don't have time today, so I will not go)
- I like that jacket, but it's very expensive.  
I'd **buy** it **if it wasn't** so expensive.  
(= it is expensive, so I'm not going to buy it)
- I'd **help** you **if I could**, but I can't.

## 100.1 Complete the sentences.

- 1 I don't know the answer. If I knew the answer, I'd tell you.
- 2 I have a car. I couldn't travel very much if I didn't have a car.
- 3 I don't want to go out. If I ..... to go out, I'd go.
- 4 We haven't got a key. If we ..... a key, we could get into the house.
- 5 I'm not hungry. I would have something to eat if I ..... hungry
- 6 Sue enjoys her work. She wouldn't do it if she ..... it.
- 7 He can't speak any foreign languages. If he ..... speak a foreign language, perhaps he would get a better job.
- 8 You don't try hard enough. If you ..... harder, you would have more success.
- 9 I have a lot to do today. If I ..... so much to do, we could go out.

## 100.2 Put the verb in the correct form.

- 1 If he had the money, he would buy a fast car. (he/have)
- 2 Jane likes living in a city. She wouldn't be happy if she lived in the country. (she/not/be)
- 3 If I wanted to learn Italian, ..... to Italy. (I/go)
- 4 I haven't told Helen what happened. She'd be angry if ...... (she/know)
- 5 If ..... a map, I could show you where I live. (we/have)
- 6 What would you do if ..... a lot of money? (you/win)
- 7 It's not a very good hotel. ..... there if I were you. (I/not/stay)
- 8 If ..... nearer London, we would go there more often. (we/live)
- 9 It's a pity you have to go now ..... nice if you had more time. (it/be)
- 10 I'm not going to take the job. I'd take it if ..... better. (the salary/be)
- 11 I don't know anything about cars. If the car broke down, ..... what to do. (I/not/know)
- 12 If you could change one thing in the world, what .....? (you/change)

## 100.3 Complete the sentences. Choose from the box and put the verb in the correct form.

we (have) a bigger house	<u>it (be) a bit cheaper</u>	I (watch) it
we (buy) a bigger house	every day (be) the same	I (be) bored
we (have) some pictures on the wall	the air (be) cleaner	

- 1 I'd buy that jacket if it was a bit cheaper.
- 2 If there was a good film on TV tonight,
- 3 This room would be nicer if ...
- 4 If there wasn't so much traffic,
- 5 Life would be boring if ...
- 6 If I had nothing to do,
- 7 We could invite all our friends to stay if ...
- 8 If we had more money, ...

## 100.4 Complete the sentences. Use your own ideas.

- 1 I'd be happier if I could get a better job.
- 2 If I could go anywhere in the world,
- 3 I wouldn't be very happy if ...
- 4 I'd buy ..... if ...
- 5 If I saw an accident in the street, ...
- 6 The world would be a better place if ...

a person who ...      a thing that/which ...  
(relative clauses 1)

I met a woman **She** can speak six languages.  
...      2 sentences

**she** → **who**

1 sentence

I met a **woman who** can speak six languages.



Jack was wearing a hat. **It** was too big for him.

2 sentences

**it** → **that or which**

1 sentence

Jack was wearing a **hat that** was too big for him.

or

Jack was wearing a **hat which** was too big for him.

## B

**who** is for people (not things):

A thief is **a person**  
Do you know **anybody**

The man  
The people

**who** steals things.  
**who** can play the piano?  
**who** phoned  
**who** work in the office

didn't give his name.  
are very friendly.

## C

**that** is for things or people:

An aeroplane is **a machine**  
Emma lives in **a house**  
The people

**that** flies.  
**that** is 400 years old.  
**that** work in the office

are very friendly.

You can use **that** for people, but **who** is more usual.

## D

**which** is for things (not people):

An aeroplane is **a machine**  
Emma lives in **a house**

**which** flies. (*not a machine who ...*)  
**which** is 400 years old.

Do not use **which** for people:

- Do you remember **the woman who** was playing the piano at the party?  
(*not the woman which ...*)

**101.1** Choose from the boxes and write sentences: A ... is a person who ... . Use a dictionary if necessary.

a thief	a dentist
a butcher	a fool
a musician	a genius
a patient	a liar

doesn't tell the truth
takes care of your teeth
is very intelligent
plays a musical instrument

is ill in hospital
<del>steals things</del>
does stupid things
sells meat

1 A thief is a person who steals things.

2 A butcher is a person

3 A musician

4

5

6

7

8

**101.2** Make one sentence from two.

1 (A man phoned. He didn't give his name.)

The man who phoned didn't give his name.

2 (A woman opened the door. She was wearing a yellow dress.)

The woman ..... a yellow dress.

3 (Some students took the exam. Most of them passed.)

Most of the students

4 (A policeman stopped our car. He wasn't very friendly.)

The

**101.3** Write who or which.

1 I met a woman who can speak six languages.

2 What's the name of the man ..... has just started work in your office?

3 What's the name of the river ..... flows through the town?

4 Where is the picture ..... was hanging on the wall?

5 Do you know anybody ..... wants to buy a car?

6 You always ask questions ..... are difficult to answer.

7 I have a friend ..... is very good at repairing cars.

8 I think everybody ..... went to the party enjoyed it very much.

9 Why does he always wear clothes ..... are too small for him?

**101.4** Right or wrong? Correct the mistakes.

1 A thief is a person which steals things.

a person who steals

OK

2 An aeroplane is a machine that flies.

3 A coffee maker is a machine who makes coffee.

4 Have you seen the money that was on the table?

5 I don't like people which never stop talking.

6 I know somebody that can help you.

7 I know somebody who works in that shop.

8 Correct the sentences who are wrong.

9 My neighbour bought a car who cost £40,000.

# the people we met the hotel you stayed at (relative clauses 2)



The man is carrying a bag. } 2 sentences  
It's very heavy.

The bag (that) he is carrying is very heavy. } 1 sentence

Kate won some money. } 2 sentences  
What is she going to do with it?

What is Kate going to do with the money  
(that) she won? } 1 sentence

You can say:

- The bag **that** he is carrying ... or The bag he is carrying ... (with or without **that**)
- ... the money **that** Kate won? or ... the money Kate won?

You do not need **that/who/which** when it is the **object**:

subject	verb	object	
The man	was carrying	a bag	→ the bag (that) the man was carrying
Kate	won	some money	→ the money (that) Kate won
You	wanted	some books	→ the books (that) you wanted
We	met	some people	→ the people (who) we met

- Did you find the books you wanted? (or ... the books that you wanted?)
- The people we met were very friendly. (or The people who we met ...)
- Everything I said was true. (or Everything that I said ...)

We say:

- The film we saw was very good. (not The film we saw it was ...)

## B

Sometimes there is a preposition (to/in/at etc.) after the verb:

Eve is talking <b>to</b> a man.	→ Do you know the man Eve is talking <b>to</b> ?
We stayed <b>at</b> a hotel.	→ The hotel we stayed <b>at</b> was near the station.
I told you <b>about</b> some books.	→ These are the books I told you <b>about</b> .

We say:

- ... the books I told you about. (not the books I told you about them)

You can say '(a place) where ...':

- The hotel **where** we stayed was near the station. (= The hotel we stayed at ...)

## C

You must use **who/that/which** when it is the **subject** (→ Unit 101):

- I met a woman **who** can speak six languages. (**who** is the subject)
- Jack was wearing a hat **that** was too big for him. (**that** is the subject)

## 102.1 Make one sentence from two.

- 1 (Helen took some photographs. Have you seen them?)  
Have you seen the photographs Helen took?
- 2 (You gave me a pen. I've lost it.)  
I've lost the .....
- 3 (Sue is wearing a jacket. I like it.)  
I like the .....
- 4 (I gave you some flowers. Where are they?)  
Where are the .....
- 5 (He told us a story. I didn't believe it.)  
I .....
- 6 (You bought some oranges. How much were they?)  
How .....

## 102.2 Make one sentence from two.

- 1 (I was carrying a bag. It was very heavy.)  
The bag I was carrying was very heavy.
- 2 (You cooked a meal. It was excellent.)  
The .....
- 3 (I'm wearing shoes. They aren't very comfortable.)  
The shoes .....
- 4 (We invited some people to dinner. They didn't come.)  
The .....

## 102.3 You ask your friend some questions. Complete the sentences.

- 1 Your friend stayed at a hotel. You ask:  
What's the name of ..... the hotel you stayed at .....
- 2 Your friend was talking to some people. You ask:  
Who are the people .....
- 3 Your friend was looking for some keys. You ask:  
Did you find the .....
- 4 Your friend is going to a party. You ask:  
Where is the .....
- 5 Your friend was talking about a film. You ask:  
What's the name of .....
- 6 Your friend is listening to some music. You ask:  
What's that .....
- 7 Your friend was waiting for a letter. You ask:  
Did you get .....

## 102.4 Complete the questions. Use where.

- 1 John stayed at a hotel. You ask him:  
Did you like ..... the hotel where you stayed .....
- 2 Sue had dinner in a restaurant. You ask her:  
What's the name of the restaurant .....
- 3 Sarah lives in a village. You ask her:  
How big is the .....
- 4 Richard works in a factory. You ask him:  
Where exactly is .....

## at 8 o'clock      on Monday      in April

at



<b>at</b>	8 o'clock 10.30 midnight etc.
-----------	-------------------------------------

I start work **at 8 o'clock**.  
 The shops close **at 5.30**.

on



<b>on</b>	Sunday(s) / Monday(s) etc. 25 April / 6 June etc. New Year's Day etc.
-----------	-----------------------------------------------------------------------------

Bye! I'll see you **on Friday**.  
 What do you usually do **on Sundays**?  
 The concert is **on 22 November**.

in



<b>in</b>	April/June etc. 2003/1968 etc. summer/spring etc.
-----------	---------------------------------------------------------

I'm going **on holiday in October**.  
 Emma was born **in 1983**.  
 The park is beautiful **in spring**.

B

We say:

**at the weekend**

Are you going away **at the weekend**?

**at night**

I can't sleep **at night**.

**at Christmas / at Easter**

Where will you be **at Christmas**? (*but on Christmas Day*)

**at the end of ...**

I'm going **on holiday at the end of October**.

**at the moment**

Are you busy **at the moment**?

C

**in the morning / in the afternoon / in the evening**

I always feel good **in the morning**.

Do you often go out **in the evening**?

**but****on Monday morning / on Tuesday afternoon / on Friday evening / on Saturday night etc. :**

I'm meeting Joanne **on Monday morning**.

Are you doing anything **on Saturday night**?

D

We do *not* use **at/on/in** before:**this ... (this morning / this week etc.)**

Are you going out **this evening**?

**last ... (last August / last week etc.)**

We go **on holiday every summer**. **Last summer** we went to Canada.

**next ... (next Monday / next week etc.)**

I'm leaving **next Monday**.

**every ... (every day / every week etc.)**

(*not on next Monday*)

E

**in five minutes / in a few days / in six weeks / in two years etc.**

now



in five minutes

Hurry! The train leaves **in five minutes**.  
(= it leaves five minutes from now)

Bye! I'll see you **in a few days**.

(= a few days from now)

## 103.1 Write at/on/in.

1 on 6 June	7 24 September	13 Friday morning
2 in the evening	8 Thursday	14 Saturday night
3 half past two	9 11.45	15 night
4 Wednesday	10 Christmas Day	16 the end of the day
5 1997	11 Christmas	17 the weekend
6 September	12 the morning	18 winter

## 103.2 Write at/on/in.

1 Bye! See you on Friday.	11 I often go away ... the weekend.
2 Where were you 28 February?	12 I'm starting my new job 3 July.
3 I got up 8 o'clock this morning.	13 We often go to the beach summer.
4 I like getting up early the morning.	14 George isn't here the moment.
5 My sister got married May.	15 Jane's birthday is December.
6 Diane and I first met 1991.	16 Do you work Saturdays?
7 Did you go out Tuesday?	17 The company started 1989.
8 Did you go out Tuesday evening?	18 I like to look at the stars night.
9 Do you often go out the evening?	19 I'll send you the money the end of
10 Let's meet 7.30 tomorrow evening.	the month.

## 103.3 Look at Lisa's diary for next week and complete the sentences.



- 1 Lisa is going to the cinema on Wednesday evening
- 2 She has to phone Chris
- 3 She isn't doing anything special
- 4 She's got a driving lesson
- 5 She's going to a party
- 6 She's meeting Sam

## 103.4 Write sentences with in ... .

- 1 It's 8.25 now. The train leaves at 8.30. The train leaves in five minutes.
- 2 It's Monday today. I'll call you on Thursday. I'll days.
- 3 Today is 14 June. My exam is on 28 June. My
- 4 It's 3 o'clock now. Tom will be here at 3.30. Tom

## 103.5 Write at/on/in if necessary. Sometimes the sentence is already complete, and no word is necessary.

1 I'm going on Friday.	7 What are you doing the weekend?
2 I'm going - next Friday. (already complete)	8 I phone Robert every Sunday.
3 I always feel tired the evening.	9 Shall we play tennis next Sunday?
4 Will you be at home this evening?	10 I can't go to the party Sunday.
5 We went to France last summer.	11 I'm going out. I'll be back an hour.
6 Laura was born 1990.	12 I don't often go out night.

## from ... to      until      since      for

## A from ... to ...

- We lived in Japan **from 1992 to 2001.**
- I work **from Monday to Friday.**

You can also say **from ... until ...**:

- We lived in Japan **from 1992 until 2001.**

**from Monday to Friday****Monday****Friday**

## B until ...

<b>until</b>	Friday December 3 o'clock I come back
--------------	------------------------------------------------

- They're going away tomorrow.  
They'll be away **until Friday.**
- I went to bed early, but I wasn't tired.  
I read a book **until 3 o'clock.**
- Wait here **until I come back.**

**until Friday****Friday**You can also say **till (= until):**

- Wait here **till I come back.**

Compare:

<input type="checkbox"/> 'How long will you be away?'     'Until Monday.'	<input type="checkbox"/> 'When are you coming back?'     'On Monday.'
---------------------------------------------------------------------------	-----------------------------------------------------------------------

## C

## since + a time in the past (to now)

We use **since** after the *present perfect* (**have been / have done** etc.):

<b>since</b>	Monday 1998 2.30 I arrived
--------------	-------------------------------------

- Joe is in hospital. He has been in hospital **since Monday.**  
(= from Monday to now)
- Sue and Dave have been married **since 1968.**  
(= from 1968 to now)
- It has been raining **since I arrived.**

**since Monday****Monday****now**

Compare:

- We lived in Japan **from 1992 to 2001.**  
We lived in Japan **until 2001.**
- Now we live in Canada. We came to Canada **in 2001.**  
We have lived in Canada **since 2001.** (= from 2001 until now)

We use **for (not since) + a period of time (three days / ten years etc.).**

- Joe has been in hospital **for three days.** (*not since three days*)

## D

## for + a period of time

<b>for</b>	three days ten years five minutes a long time
------------	--------------------------------------------------------

- Gary stayed with us **for three days.**
- I'm going away **for a few weeks.**
- I'm going away **for the weekend.**
- They've been married **for ten years.**

**for three days****Sunday****Monday****Tuesday**

## 104.1 Read the information and complete the sentences. Use from ... to / until / since.

ALEX	KAREN	CLARE	ADAM
			
<p>I live in England now. I lived in Canada before. I came to England in 1999.</p>	<p>I live in Switzerland now. I lived in France before. I came to Switzerland in 2003.</p>	<p>I work in a restaurant now. I worked in a hotel before. I started work in the restaurant in 2001.</p>	<p>I'm a journalist now. I was a teacher before. I started work as a journalist in 1998.</p>

- 1 (Alex / Canada / 1991 → 1999)
- 2 (Alex / Canada / → 1999)
- 3 (Alex / England / 1999 →)
- 4 (Karen / France / → 2003)
- 5 (Karen / Switzerland / 2003 →)
- 6 (Clare / a hotel / 1998–2001)
- 7 (Clare / a restaurant / 2001 →)
- 8 (Adam / a teacher / 1992–1998)
- 9 (Adam / a journalist / 1998 →)

Alex lived *in Canada from 1991 to 1999*  
 Alex lived in Canada ..... 1999.  
 Alex has lived in England  
 Karen lived in .....  
 Karen has lived in .....  
 Clare worked ..... 1998 .....  
 Clare has worked  
 Adam was a .....  
 Adam has been .....

Now write sentences with *for*.

- 10 (Alex / Canada) *Alex lived in Canada for eight years*
- 11 (Alex / England) *Alex has lived in England*
- 12 (Karen / Switzerland) *Karen has .....*
- 13 (Clare / a hotel) *Clare worked .....*
- 14 (Clare / restaurant) *Clare .....*
- 15 (Adam / a teacher) *Adam .....*
- 16 (Adam / a journalist) *Adam .....*

## 104.2 Write until/since/for.

- 1 Sue and Dave have been married *since* 1968.
- 2 I was tired this morning. I stayed in bed ..... 10 o'clock.
- 3 We waited for Sue ..... half an hour, but she didn't come.
- 4 'Have you just arrived?' 'No, I've been here ..... half past seven.'
- 5 'How long did you stay at the party last night?' ' ..... midnight.'
- 6 Dan and I are good friends. We have known each other ..... ten years.
- 7 I'm tired. I'm going to lie down ..... a few minutes.
- 8 Don't open the door of the train ..... the train stops.
- 9 This is my house. I've lived here ..... I was seven years old.
- 10 Jack has gone away. He'll be away ..... Wednesday.
- 11 Next week I'm going to Paris ..... three days.
- 12 I usually finish work at 5.30, but sometimes I work ..... six.
- 13 'How long have you known Anna?' ' ..... we were at school together.'
- 14 Where have you been? I've been waiting for you ..... twenty minutes.

## before      after      during      while

A

before, during and after



before the film



during the film



after the film

- Everybody feels nervous **before exams**.
- I fell asleep **during the film**.
- We were tired **after our visit to the museum**.

before, while and after



before we played



while we were playing



after we played

- Don't forget to close the window **before you go out**.
- I often fall asleep **while I'm reading**.
- They went home **after they did the shopping**.

C during, while and for

We use **during** + *noun* (**during the film**). We use **while** + *verb* (**while I'm reading**):

- We didn't speak **during the meal**.

*but* We didn't speak **while we were eating**. (*not during we were eating*)

We use **for** (*not during*) + *a period of time* (**three days / two hours / a year etc.**).

- We played tennis **for two hours**. (*not during two hours*)
- I lived in London **for a year**. (*not during a year*)

D You can use **before/after + -ing** (**before going / after eating etc.**):

- I always have breakfast **before going** to work. (= before I go to work)
- After doing** the shopping, they went home. (= after they did)

Remember we say **before going** (*not before to go*), **after doing** (*not after to do*) etc.:

- Before eating** the apple, I washed it carefully. (*not before to eat*)
- I started work **after reading** the newspaper. (*not after to read*)

## 105.1 Complete the sentences. Choose from the boxes.

after	during	+	lunch	the end	they went to Australia
before	while		the concert	the exam	you're waiting

- 1 Everybody was nervous ..... before the exam
- 2 I usually work four hours in the morning, and another three hours ..... during the night
- 3 The film was really boring. We left ..... the end of the course
- 4 Anna went to evening classes to learn German. She learnt a lot ..... after the exam
- 5 My aunt and uncle lived in London ..... while they were waiting
- 6 A: Somebody broke a window ..... Did you hear anything?  
B: No, I was asleep all the time.
- 7 Would you like to sit down ..... ?
- 8 'Are you going home ..... ?' 'Yes, I have to get up early tomorrow.'

## 105.2 Write during/while/for.

- 1 We didn't speak ..... while we were eating.
- 2 We didn't speak ..... during the meal.
- 3 Gary called ..... you were out.
- 4 I stayed in Rome ..... five days.
- 5 Sally didn't read any newspapers ..... she was on holiday.
- 6 The students looked very bored ..... the lesson.
- 7 I fell out of bed ..... I was asleep.
- 8 Last night I watched TV ..... three hours.
- 9 I don't usually watch TV ..... the day.
- 10 Do you ever watch TV ..... you are having dinner?

## 105.3 Complete the sentences. Use -ing (doing, having etc.).

- 1 After ..... doing the shopping, they went home.
- 2 I felt sick after ..... too much chocolate
- 3 I'm going to ask you a question. Think carefully before ..... it.
- 4 I felt awful when I got up this morning. I felt better after ..... a shower.
- 5 After ..... my work, I left the office and went home.
- 6 Before ..... to a foreign country, you should try and learn a little of the language.

## 105.4 Write sentences with before + -ing and after + -ing.

- 1 They did the shopping. Then they went home.  
After ..... they went home.
- 2 John left school. Then he worked in a bookshop for two years.  
John worked ..... for two years.
- 3 I read for a few minutes. Then I went to sleep.  
Before ..... I went to sleep.
- 4 We walked for three hours. We were very tired.  
After ..... we were very tired.
- 5 Let's have a cup of coffee. Then we'll go out.  
Let's ..... go out.

## in      at      on (places 1)

in



in a room  
in a shop  
in a car  
in the water



in a garden  
in a town  
in the city centre  
in Brazil

- 'Where's David?' 'In the kitchen. / In the garden. / In London.'
- What's in that box / in that bag / in that cupboard?
- Rachel works in a shop / in a bank / in a factory.
- I went for a swim in the river / in the pool / in the sea.
- Milan is in the north of Italy. Naples is in the south.
- I live in a big city, but I'd like to live in the country.

at



at the bus stop



at the door



at the traffic lights



at her desk

- There's somebody at the bus stop / at the door.
- The car is waiting at the traffic lights.
- Jane is working at her desk.

at the top (of the page)



at the bottom (of the page)

at the top / at the bottom / at the end (of ...):

- Write your name at the top of the page.
- My house is at the end of the street.

on



on a shelf  
on a plate  
on a balcony  
on the floor  
etc.

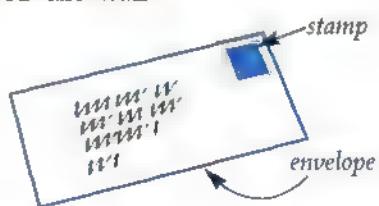


on a wall  
on a door  
on the ceiling  
etc.

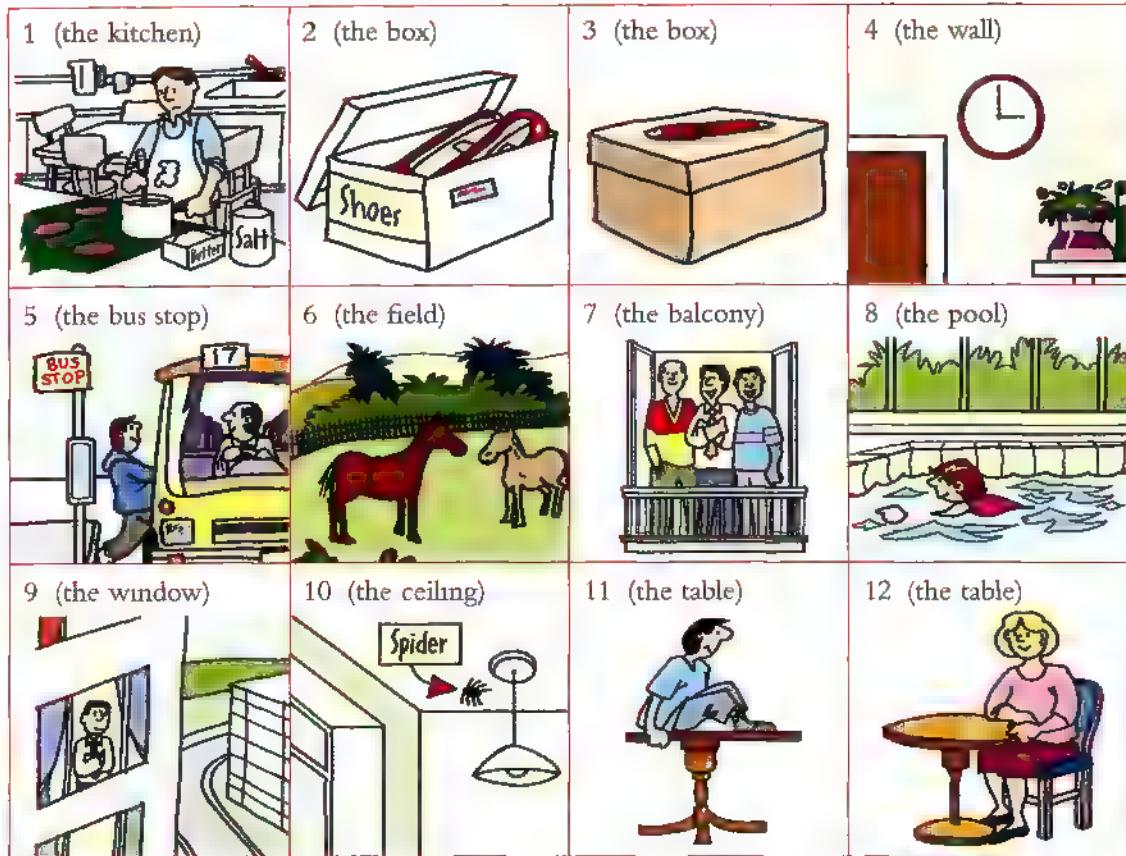
- There are some books on the shelf and some pictures on the wall.
- There are a lot of apples on those trees.
- Don't sit on the grass. It's wet.
- There is a stamp on the envelope.

on a horse / on a bicycle / on a motorbike:

- Who is that man on the motorbike?



## 106.1 Look at the pictures and answer the questions. Use in/at/on.



1 Where is he? *In the kitchen.*

2 Where are the shoes? *.....*

3 Where is the pen? *.....*

4 Where is the clock? *.....*

5 Where is the bus? *.....*

6 Where are the horses? *.....*

7 Where are they standing? *.....*

8 Where is she swimming? *.....*

9 Where is he standing? *.....*

10 Where is the spider? *.....*

11 Where is he sitting? *.....*

12 Where is she sitting? *.....*

## 106.2 Write in/at/on.

1 Don't sit on the grass. It's wet.

2 What have you got in your bag?

3 Look! There's a man on the roof. What's he doing?

4 There are a lot of fish in this river.

5 Our house is number 45 – the number is on the door.

6 'Is the post office near here?' 'Yes, turn left at the traffic lights.'

7 It's difficult to park near the centre of town. It's better to take the bus.

8 My sister lives in Brussels.

9 There's a small park at the top of the hill.

10 I think I heard the doorbell. There's somebody at the door.

11 Munich is a large city in the south of Germany.

12 There are a few shops at the end of the street.

13 It's difficult to carry a lot of things on a bicycle.

14 I looked at the list of names. My name was at the bottom.

15 There is a mirror on the wall in the living room.

## in      at      on (places 2)

## A

**in**

**in bed**  
**in hospital**  
**in the sky**  
**in the world**  
**in a newspaper / in a book**  
**in a photograph / in a picture**  
**in a car / in a taxi**  
**in the middle (of ...)**

- 'Where's Kate?' 'She's **in bed**.'
- David's father is ill. He's **in hospital**.
- I like to look at the stars **in the sky** at night.
- What's the largest city **in the world**?
- I read about the accident **in the newspaper**.
- You look sad **in this photograph**.
- Did you come here **in your car**?
- There's a big tree **in the middle** of the garden.

## B

**at**

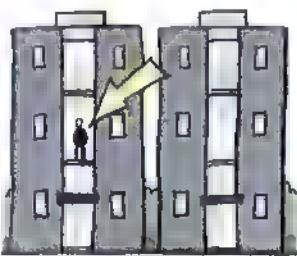
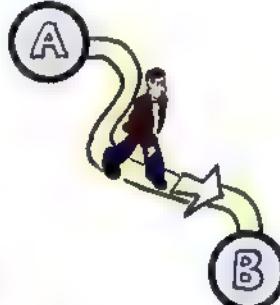
**at home**  
**at work / at school**  
**at university / at college**  
**at the station / at the airport**  
**at Jane's (house) / at my sister's (house) /  
at the doctor's / at the hairdresser's  
etc.**  
**at a concert / at a party / at a football  
match etc.**

- Will you be **at home** this evening?
- 'Where's Kate?' 'She's **at work**.'
- Helen is studying law **at university**.
- I'll meet you **at the station**, OK?
- A: Where were you yesterday?  
B: **At my sister's**.
- I saw Tom **at the doctor's**.
- There weren't many people **at the party**.

Often it is possible to use **in** or **at** for buildings (hotels, restaurants etc):

- We stayed **at** a nice hotel. *or* We stayed **in** a nice hotel.

## C

**on****on a bus****on the first floor****on the way from A to B**

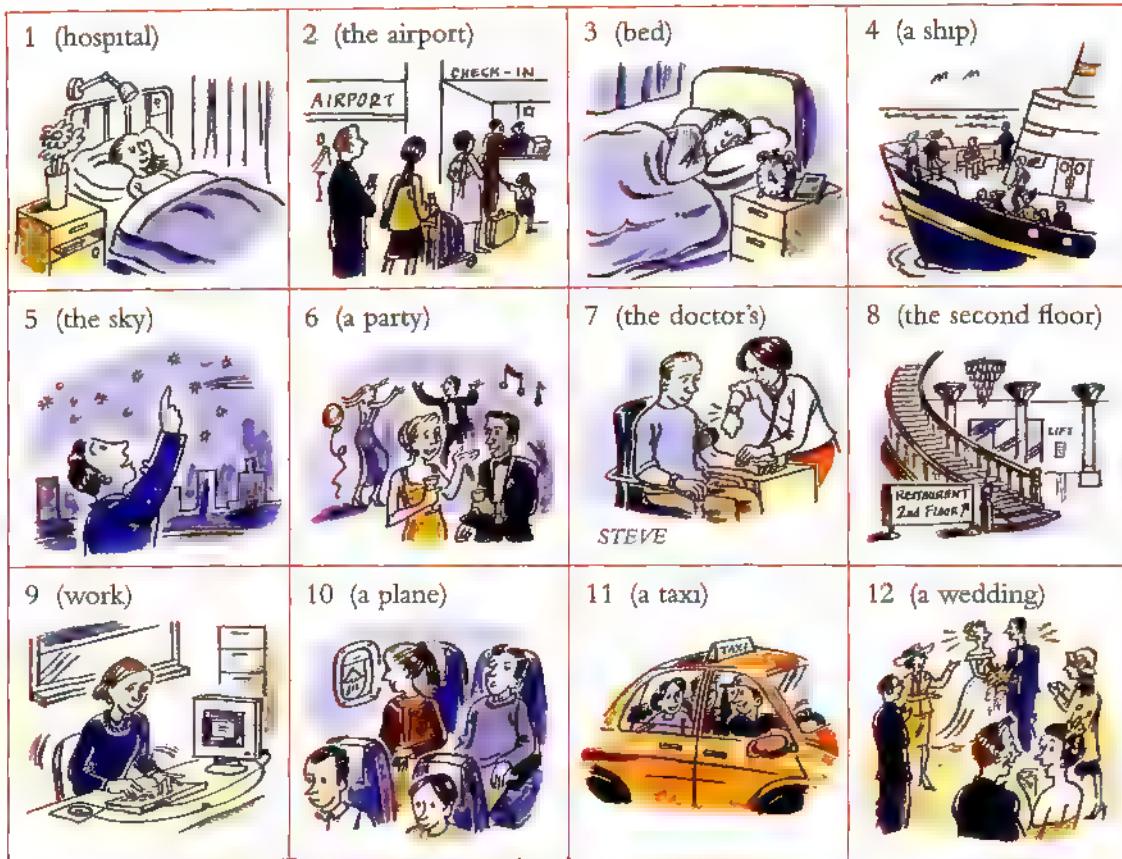
**on a bus / on a train / on a plane /  
on a ship**  
**on the ground floor / on the first floor  
etc.**  
**on the way (to ...) / on the way home**

- Did you come here **on the bus**?
- The office is **on the first floor**.  
*(not in the first floor)*
- I met Ann **on the way** to work / **on the way** home

# Exercises

# Unit 107

107.1 Look at the pictures and answer the questions. Use *in*/*at*/*on*.



1 Where is she? In hospital.

2 Where are they? At the airport.

3 Where is he? On the bed.

4 Where are they? On the ship.

5 Where are the stars? In the sky.

6 Where are they? At the party.

7 Where is Steve? At the doctor's.

8 Where is the restaurant? On the second floor.

9 Where is she? At work.

10 Where are they? In the plane.

11 Where are they? In the taxi.

12 Where are they? At the wedding.

107.2 Write *in*/*at*/*on*.

1 Helen is studying law at university.

2 There was a big table in the middle of the room.

3 What is the longest river in the world?

4 Were there many people at the concert last night?

5 Will you be at home tomorrow afternoon?

6 Who is the man in this photograph? Do you know him?

7 Where are your children? Are they at school?

8 Gary is coming by train. I'm going to meet him at the station.

9 Charlie is in hospital. He had an operation yesterday.

10 How many pages are there in this book?

11 'Are you hungry after your journey?' 'No, I had something to eat on the train.'

12 I'm sorry I'm late. My car broke down on the way here.

13 'Is Tom here?' 'No, he's at his brother's.'

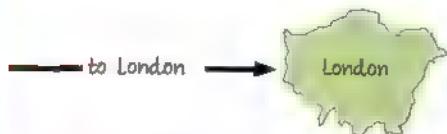
14 Don't believe everything you see in the newspaper!

15 I walked to work, but I came home on the bus.

## to in at (places 3)

## A to

go/come/return/walk (etc.) to ...



- We're going to London on Sunday.
- I want to go to Italy next year.
- We walked from my house to the centre of town.
- What time do you go to bed?



- The bus is going to the airport.
- Karen didn't go to work yesterday.
- I went to a party last night.
- You must come to our house

in/at (→ Units 106–107)

be/stay/do something (etc.) in ...



- Piccadilly Circus is in London.
- My brother lives in Italy.
- The main shops are in the centre of town.
- I like reading in bed.

be/stay/do something (etc.) at ...



- The bus is at the airport.
- Sarah wasn't at work yesterday.
- I met a lot of people at the party.
- Helen stayed at her brother's house.

## B

## home

go/come/walk (etc.) home (without to):

- I'm tired. I'm going home.  
(not to home)
- Did you walk home?

be/stay/do something (etc.) at home:

- I'm staying at home tonight.
- Dan doesn't go to an office. He works at home.

## C

## arrive and get

arrive in a country or town (arrive in Italy / arrive in Paris etc.):

- They arrived in England last week. (not arrived to England)

arrive at other places (arrive at the station / arrive at work etc.):

- What time did you arrive at the hotel? (not arrive to the hotel)

get to (a place):

- What time did you get to the hotel?
- What time did you get to Paris?

get home / arrive home (no preposition):

- I was tired when I got home. or I was tired when I arrived home.

## 108.1 Write to or in.

- 1 I like reading in bed.
- 2 We're going to Italy next month.
- 3 Sue is on holiday in Italy at the moment.
- 4 I have to go to the bank today.
- 5 I was tired, so I stayed in bed late.
- 6 What time do you usually go to bed?
- 7 Does this bus go to the centre?
- 8 Would you like to live in another country?

## 108.2 Write to or at if necessary. One sentence is already complete, and no word is necessary.

- 1 Paula didn't go to work yesterday.
- 2 I'm tired. I'm going to home. (*already complete*)
- 3 Tina is not very well. She has gone to the doctor.
- 4 Would you like to come to a party on Saturday?
- 5 'Is Liz at home?' 'No, she's gone to work.'
- 6 There were 20,000 people at the football match.
- 7 Why did you go home early last night?
- 8 A boy jumped into the river and swam across the other side.
- 9 There were a lot of people waiting for the bus stop.
- 10 We had a good meal at a restaurant, and then we went back to the hotel.

## 108.3 Write to, at or in if necessary. One sentence is already complete, and no word is necessary.

- 1 I'm not going out this afternoon. I'm staying at home.
- 2 We're going to a concert tomorrow evening.
- 3 I went to New York last year.
- 4 How long did you stay in New York?
- 5 Next year we hope to go to Canada to visit some friends.
- 6 Do you want to go to the cinema this evening?
- 7 Did you park your car near the station?
- 8 After the accident three people were taken to hospital.
- 9 How often do you go to the dentist?
- 10 'Is Sarah here?' 'No, she's at Helen's.'
- 11 My house is at the end of the street on the left.
- 12 I went to Maria's house, but she wasn't at home.
- 13 There were no taxis, so we had to walk home.
- 14 'Who did you meet at the party?' 'I didn't go to the party.'

## 108.4 Write to, at or in if necessary. Sometimes the sentence is already complete, and no word is necessary.

- 1 What time do you usually get to work?
- 2 What time do you usually get home?
- 3 What time did you arrive at the party?
- 4 When did you arrive in London?
- 5 What time does the train get to Paris?
- 6 We arrived at home very late.

## 108.5 Complete these sentences about yourself. Use to/in/at.

- 1 At three o'clock this morning I was in bed.
- 2 Yesterday I went out.
- 3 At 11 o'clock yesterday morning I was in bed.
- 4 One day I'd like to go abroad.
- 5 I don't like going out.
- 6 At 9 o'clock yesterday evening I was in bed.

# under, behind, opposite etc.

A next to / beside / between / in front of / behind



A is **next to B.** or A is **beside B.**

B is **between A and C.**

D is **in front of B.**

E is **behind B.**

*also*

A is **on the left.**

C is **on the right.**

B is **in the middle** (of the group).

B opposite / in front of

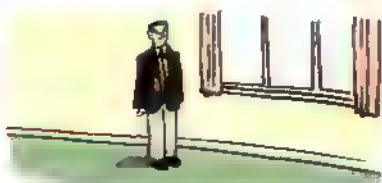


A is sitting **in front of B.**

A is sitting **opposite C.**

C is sitting **opposite A.**

C by (= next to / beside)



- Our house is **by the sea.** (= beside the sea)
- Who is that man standing **by the window?**
- If you feel cold, why don't you sit **by the fire?**

by the window

D under



under the table



under a tree

- The cat is **under the table.**
- The girl is standing **under a tree.**
- I'm wearing a jacket **under my coat.**

E above and below



A is **above the line.**  
(= higher than the line)



B is **below the line.**  
(= lower than the line)



The pictures are  
**above the shelves.**

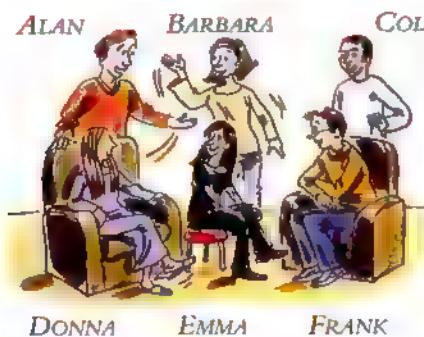


The shelves are  
**below the pictures.**

# Exercises

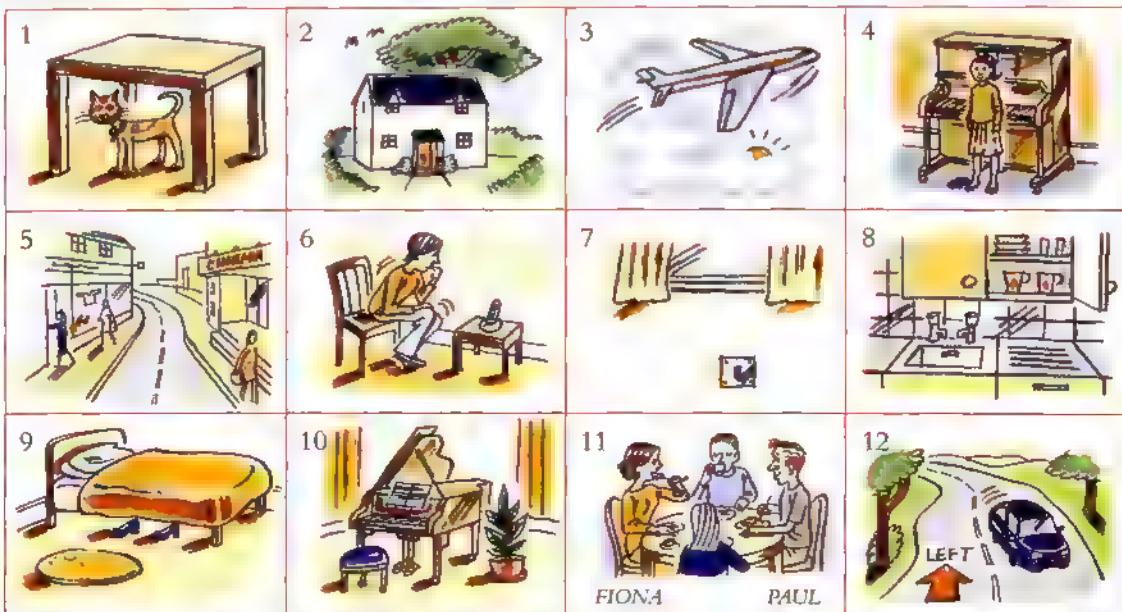
# Unit 109

109.1 Where are the people in the picture? Complete the sentences.



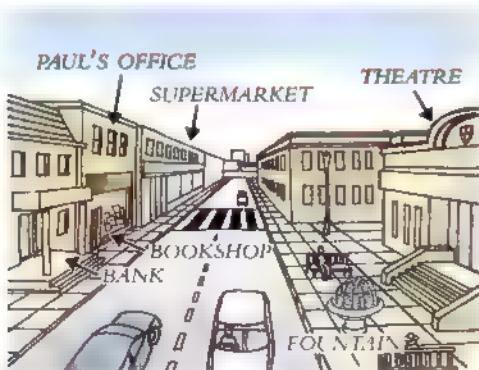
- 1 Colin is standing ..... behind ..... Frank.
- 2 Frank is sitting ..... ..... ..... Emma.
- 3 Emma is sitting ..... ..... ..... Barbara.
- 4 Emma is sitting ..... ..... ..... Donna and Frank.
- 5 Donna is sitting ..... ..... ..... Emma.
- 6 Frank is sitting ..... ..... ..... Colin.
- 7 Alan is standing ..... ..... ..... Donna.
- 8 Alan is standing ..... ..... ..... left.
- 9 Barbara is standing ..... ..... ..... middle.

109.2 Look at the pictures and complete the sentences.



- 1 The cat is ..... under ..... the table.
- 2 There is a big tree ..... ..... ..... the house.
- 3 The plane is flying ..... ..... ..... the clouds.
- 4 She is standing ..... ..... ..... the piano.
- 5 The cinema is ..... ..... ..... the right.
- 6 She's sitting ..... ..... ..... the phone.
- 7 The switch is ..... ..... ..... the window.
- 8 The cupboard is ..... ..... ..... the sink.
- 9 There are some shoes ..... ..... ..... the bed.
- 10 The plant is ..... ..... ..... the piano.
- 11 Paul is sitting ..... ..... ..... Fiona.
- 12 In Britain people drive ..... ..... ..... the left.

109.3 Write sentences about the picture.



- 1 (next to) The bank is next to the bookshop.
- 2 (in front of) The ..... is in front of the theatre.
- 3 (opposite) .....
- 4 (next to) .....
- 5 (above) .....
- 6 (between) .....

# up, over, through etc.



- Jane is going **to** France next week.
- We walked **from** the hotel **to** the station.
- A lot of English words come **from** Latin.

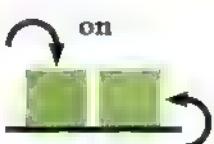


- We jumped **into** the water.
- A man came **out of** the house and got **into** a car.
- Why are you looking **out of** the window?
- I took the old batteries **out of** the radio.



We say **put** something **in** ... (*not usually into*):

- I **put** new batteries **in** the radio.



- Don't put your feet **on** the table.
- Please take your feet **off** the table.
- I'm going to hang some pictures **on** the wall.
- Be careful! Don't fall **off** your bicycle.
- We got **on** the bus in Princes Street.



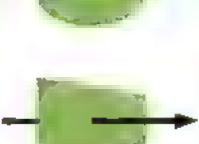
- We walked **up** the hill to the house.
- Be careful! Don't fall **down** the stairs.



- The plane flew **over** the mountains.
- I jumped **over** the wall into the garden.
- Some people say it is unlucky to walk **under** a ladder.



- A bird flew into the room **through** a window.
- The old road goes **through** the village.
- The new road goes **round** the village.
- The bus stop is just **round** the corner.
- I walked **round** the town and took some photographs.



You can also use **around** (= round):

- We walked **around** the town.
- I was walking **along** the road with my dog.
- Let's go for a walk **along** the river.
- The dog swam **across** the river.



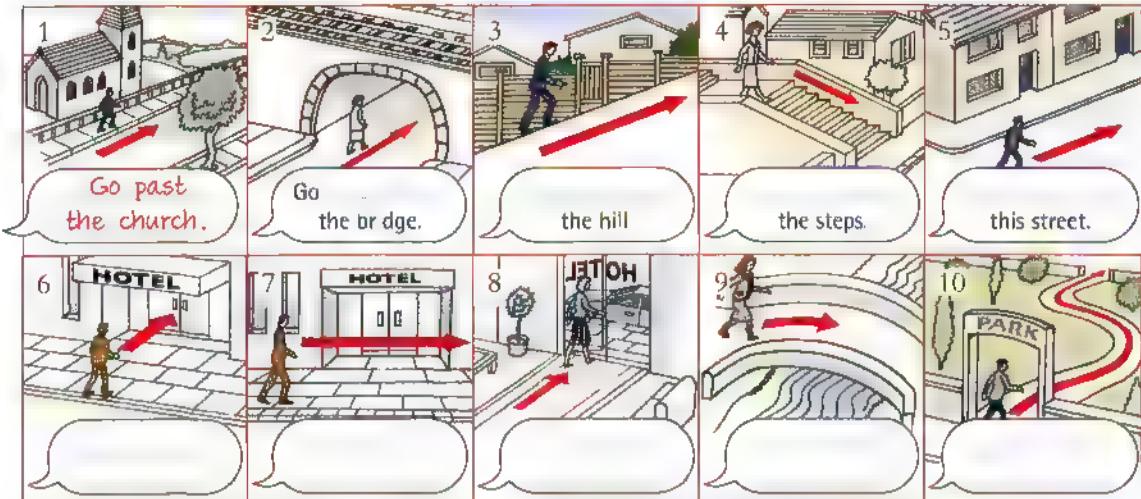
- They walked **past** me without speaking.
- A: Excuse me, how do I get to the hospital?  
B: Go along this road, **past** the cinema, **under** the bridge and the hospital is **on** the left.



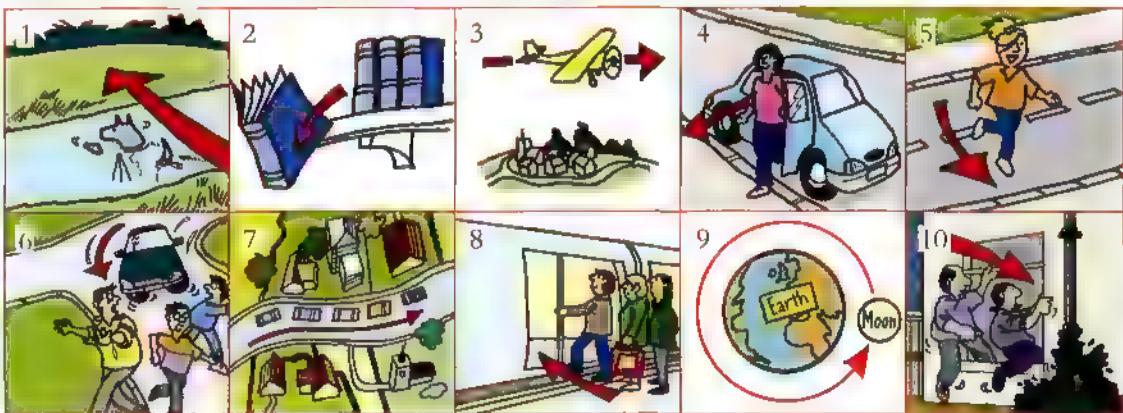
# Exercises

# Unit 110

110.1 Somebody asks you how to get to a place. You say which way to go. Look at the pictures and write sentences beginning Go ... .



110.2 Look at the pictures and complete the sentences.



- 1 The dog swam ... **across** ... the river.
- 2 A book fell ... **off** ... the shelf.
- 3 A plane flew ... **over** ... the village.
- 4 A woman got ... **out of** ... the car.
- 5 A girl ran ... **across** ... the road.
- 6 Suddenly a car came ... **round** ... the corner.
- 7 They drove ... **past** ... the village.
- 8 They got ... **on** ... the train.
- 9 The moon travels ... **round** ... the earth.
- 10 They got ... **into** ... the house ... **near** ... a window.

110.3 Complete the sentences. Use over/from/into etc.

- 1 I looked ... **out of** ... the window and watched the people in the street.
- 2 My house is very near here. It's just ... **round** ... the corner.
- 3 'Where's my phone?' 'You put it ... **in** ... your bag.'
- 4 How far is it ... **from** ... here ... **to** ... the airport?
- 5 We walked ... **past** ... the museum for an hour and saw a lot of interesting things.
- 6 You can put your coat ... **over** ... the back of the chair.
- 7 In tennis, you have to hit the ball ... **over** ... the net.
- 8 Silvia took a key ... **from** ... her bag and opened the door.

## on      at      by      with      about

## A

**on**

- on holiday**
- on television**
- on the radio**
- on the phone**
- on fire**
- on time** (= not late)

- Jane isn't at work this week. She's **on holiday**.
- We watched the news **on television**.
- We listened to the news **on the radio**.
- I spoke to Rachel **on the phone** last night.
- The house is **on fire**! Call the fire brigade.
- 'Was the train late?' 'No, it was **on time**'

## B

## at

**at (the age of) 21 / at 50 kilometres an hour / at 100 degrees etc.:**

- Lisa got married **at 21**. (or ... **at the age of 21**.)
- A car uses more petrol **at 120 kilometres an hour** than **at 90**.
- Water boils **at 100 degrees Celsius**.

## C

## by

**by car / by bus / by plane / by bike etc.:**

- Do you like travelling **by train**?
- Jane usually goes to work **by bike**.

**but on foot:**

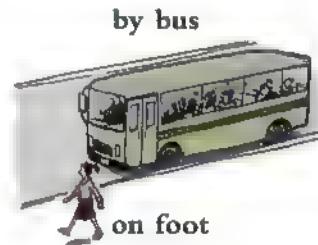
- You can't get there **by car**. You have to **go on foot**. (= you have to walk)

**a book by ... / a painting by ... / a piece of music by ... etc.:**

- Have you read any books **by Charles Dickens**?
- Who is that painting **by**? Picasso?

**by after the passive** (→ Unit 21):

- I was bitten **by a dog**.



## D

## with/without

- Did you stay at a hotel or **with friends**?
- Wait for me. Please don't go **without me**.
- Do you like your coffee **with or without milk**?
- I cut the paper **with a pair of scissors**.

**a man with a beard / a woman with glasses etc.:**

- Do you know that man **with the beard**?
- I'd like to have a house **with a big garden**.



a man  
with a beard

a woman  
with glasses

## E

## about

**talk/speak/think/hear/know about ... :**

- Some people **talk about their work** all the time.
- I don't know much **about cars**.

**a book / a question / a programme / information (etc.) about ... :**

- There was a **programme about volcanoes** on TV last night. Did you see it?

## 111.1 Complete the sentences. Use **on** + these words:

holiday    the phone    ~~the radio~~    television    time

- 1 We heard the news on the radio.
- 2 Please don't be late. Try to be here on time.
- 3 I won't be here next week. I'm going on holiday.
- 4 'Did you see Linda?' 'No, but I talked to her on the phone'.
- 5 'What's on television this evening?' 'Nothing that I want to watch.'

## 111.2 Look at the pictures. Complete the sentences with **at/by/with** etc.



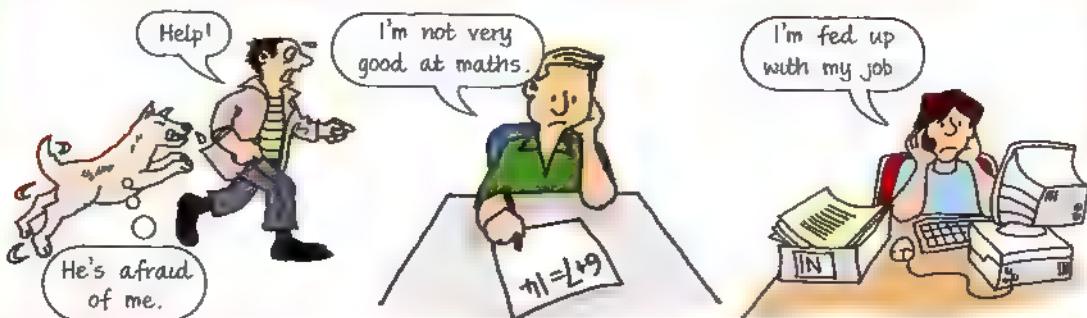
- 1 I cut the paper with a pair of scissors.
- 2 She usually goes to work in car.
- 3 Who is the woman with short hair?
- 4 They are talking about the weather.
- 5 The car is on fire.
- 6 She's listening to some music by Mozart.
- 7 The plane is flying at 600 miles an hour.
- 8 They're on holiday.
- 9 Do you know the man wearing sunglasses?
- 10 He's reading a book about grammar by Vera P. Bull.

## 111.3 Complete the sentences. Use **at/by/with** etc.

- 1 In tennis, you hit the ball with a racket.
- 2 It's cold today. Don't go out in a coat.
- 3 *Hamlet*, *Othello* and *Macbeth* are plays by William Shakespeare.
- 4 Do you know anything about computers?
- 5 My grandmother died at the age of 98.
- 6 How long does it take from New York to Los Angeles by plane?
- 7 I didn't go to the football match, but I watched it on television.
- 8 My house is the one with the red door on the right.
- 9 These trains are very fast. They can travel at very high speeds.
- 10 I don't use my car very often. I prefer to go by bike.
- 11 Can you give me some information about hotels in this town?
- 12 I was arrested by two policemen and taken to the police station.
- 13 The buses here are very good. They're nearly always on time.
- 14 What would you like to drink with your meal?
- 15 We travelled from Paris to Moscow by train.
- 16 The museum has some paintings by Rembrandt.

# afraid of ... , good at ... etc. of/at/for etc. (prepositions) + -ing

**A** afraid of ... / good at ... etc. (adjective + preposition)



**afraid of ...**

**angry with somebody**

**angry about something**

**different from ...**

*or different to ...*

**fed up with ...**

**full of ...**

**good at ...**

**interested in ...**

**married to ...**

**nice/kind of somebody to ...**

**be nice/kind to somebody**

**sorry about a situation**

**sorry for/about doing  
something**

**be/feel sorry for somebody**

Are you **afraid of** dogs?

Why are you **angry with** me? What have I done?

Are you **angry about** last night? (= something that happened last night)

Lisa is very **different from** (or to) her sister.

I'm **fed up with** my job. I want to do something different. (= I've had enough of my job)

The room was **full of** people.

Are you **good at** maths?

I'm not **interested in** sport.

Sue is **married to** a dentist. (= her husband is a dentist)

It was **kind of** you to help us. Thank you very much.

David is very friendly. He's always very **nice to** me.

I'm afraid I can't help you. I'm **sorry about** that.

I'm **sorry for/about** not phoning you yesterday. (or I'm sorry I didn't phone you)

I feel **sorry for** them. They are in a very difficult situation.

**B**

of/at/for (etc.) + -ing

After a preposition (of/at/for etc.), a verb ends in -ing:

I'm not very good **at**  
Are you fed up **with**  
I'm sorry for  
Thank you for  
Mark is thinking of  
Tom left without  
After

**telling**  
**doing**  
**not phoning**  
**helping**  
**buying**  
**saying**  
**doing**

stories.  
the same thing every day?  
you yesterday.  
me.  
a new car.  
goodbye. (= he didn't say goodbye)  
the shopping, they went home.

## 112.1 Look at the pictures and complete the sentences with of/with/in etc.



1 He's afraid ... dogs.  
 2 She's interested ... science.  
 3 She's married ... a footballer.  
 4 She's very good ..... languages.  
 5 He's fed up ..... the weather.  
 6 A: Can I help you?  
 B: Thanks, that's very kind ..... you.

## 112.2 Complete the sentences with in/of/with etc.

1 I'm not interested ..... sport.  
 2 I'm not very good ..... sport.  
 3 I like Sarah. She's always very kind ..... me.  
 4 I'm sorry ..... your broken window. It was an accident.  
 5 He's very brave. He isn't afraid ..... anything.  
 6 It was very nice ..... Jane to let us stay in her apartment.  
 7 Life today is very different ..... life 50 years ago.  
 8 Are you interested ..... politics?  
 9 I feel sorry ..... her, but I can't help her.  
 10 Chris was angry ..... what happened.  
 11 These boxes are very heavy. They are full ..... books.  
 12 I'm sorry ..... getting angry ..... you yesterday.

## 112.3 Complete the sentences.

1 I'm not very ..... good at telling ..... stories. (good/tell)  
 2 I wanted to go to the cinema, but Paula wasn't ..... (interested/go)  
 3 Sue isn't very ..... up in the morning. (good/get)  
 4 Let's go! I'm ..... (fed up / wait)  
 5 I'm ..... you up in the middle of the night. (sorry/wake)  
 6 Sorry I'm late! ..... (thank you / wait)

## 112.4 Complete the sentences. Use without -ing.

1 (Tom left / he didn't say goodbye) Tom left without saying goodbye.  
 2 (Sue walked past me / she didn't speak) Sue walked .....  
 3 (don't do anything / ask me first) Don't .....  
 4 (I went out / I didn't lock the door) I .....  
 I .....

## 112.5 Write sentences about yourself.

1 (interested) I'm interested in sport.  
 2 (afraid) I'm .....  
 3 (not very good) I'm not .....  
 4 (not interested)  
 5 (fed up)

listen to ... , look at ... etc.  
(verb + preposition)**ask (somebody) for ...****belong to ...****happen to ...****listen to ...****speak/talk to somebody about something****thank somebody for ...****think about ... or think of****wait for ...****write to somebody****but phone/call somebody (without to)**

- A man stopped me and **asked** me for money.
- Does this book **belong to** you? (= Is this your book?)
- I can't find my pen. What's **happened to** it?
- Listen to** this music. It's great.
- Did you **talk to** Paul **about** the problem?
- (on the phone) Can I **speak to** Chris, please?
- Thank** you very much **for** your help.
- He never **thinks about** (or of) other people.
- Mark is **thinking of** (or about) buying a new computer.
- Wait for** me. I'm nearly ready.
- I couldn't contact the company by phone. I had to **write to** them.
- I'm going to **phone** my parents this evening. (not phone to my parents)

**B****look at / look for / look after****look at ...**

- He's **looking at** his watch.
- Look at** these flowers! They're beautiful.
- Why are you **looking at** me like that?

**look for ...**

(= try to find)



- She's lost her key. She's **looking for** it.
- I'm **looking for** Sarah. Have you seen her?

**look after ...**

(= take care of, keep safe)

- When Emily is at work, a friend of hers **looks after** her children.
- Don't lose this book. **Look after** it. (= Keep it safe.)

**C**  
**depend**We say **depend on** ... :

- A: Do you like eating in restaurants?  
B: Sometimes. It **depends on** the restaurant. (not it depends of)

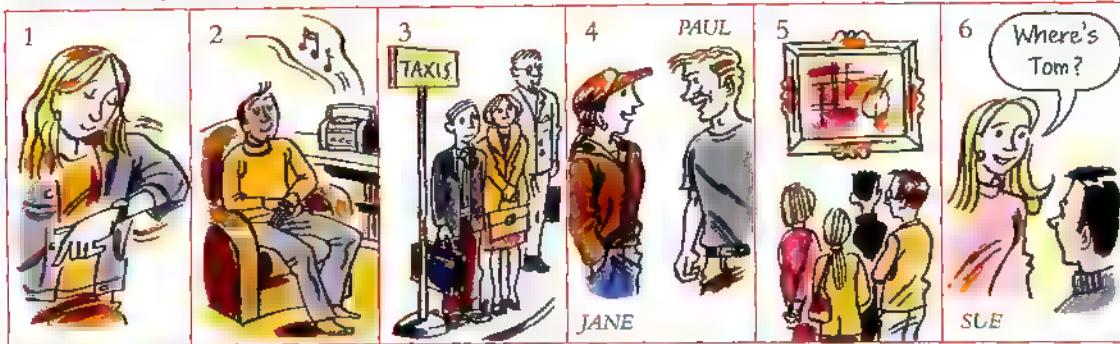
You can say **it depends what/where/how** (etc.) with or without **on**:

- A: Do you want to come out with us?  
B: It **depends where** you're going. or It **depends on where** you're going.

# Exercises

# Unit 113

## 113.1 Look at the pictures and complete the sentences with *to/for/at* etc.



- 1 She's looking at her watch.
- 2 He's listening to the radio.
- 3 They're waiting for a taxi.

- 4 Paul is talking to Jane.
- 5 They're looking at a picture.
- 6 Sue is looking for Tom.

## 113.2 Complete the sentences with *to/for/about* etc. One sentence is already complete, and no word is necessary.

- 1 Thank you very much for your help.
- 2 This isn't my umbrella. It belongs to a friend of mine.
- 3 (on the phone) Can I speak to Steven Davis, please?
- 4 (on the phone) Thank you for calling. Goodbye.
- 5 What happened to Ella last night? Why didn't she come to the party?
- 6 We're thinking about going to Australia next year.
- 7 We asked the waiter for coffee, but he brought us tea.
- 8 'Do you like reading books?' 'It depends on the book.'
- 9 John was talking, but nobody was listening to what he was saying.
- 10 We waited for Karen until 2 o'clock, but she didn't come.
- 11 If you want to contact me, you can write to me at this address.
- 12 Don't forget to phone to your mother tonight.
- 13 He's alone all day. He never talks with anybody.
- 14 'How much does it cost to stay at this hotel?' 'It depends on the type of room.'
- 15 Catherine is thinking about changing her job.

## 113.3 Complete these sentences. Use *at/for/after*.

- 1 I looked at the newspaper, but I didn't read it carefully.
- 2 When you are ill, you need somebody to look after you.
- 3 Excuse me, I'm looking for Hill Street. Can you tell me where it is?
- 4 Goodbye! Have a great holiday and look after yourself.
- 5 I want to take a photograph of you. Please look at the camera and smile.
- 6 Barry is looking for a job. He wants to work in a hotel.

## 113.4 Answer these questions with *It depends ...*

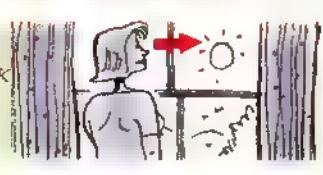
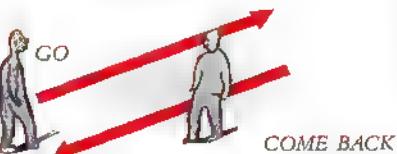
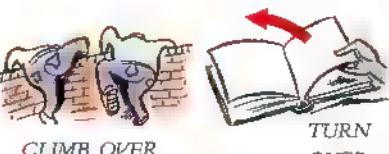
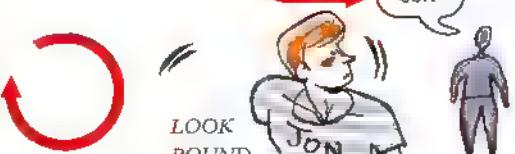
- 1 Do you want to go out with us?
- 2 Do you like eating in restaurants?
- 3 Do you enjoy watching TV?
- 4 Can you do something for me?
- 5 Are you going away this weekend?
- 6 Can you lend me some money?

*It depends where you're going.  
It depends on the restaurant.*

*It depends  
It*

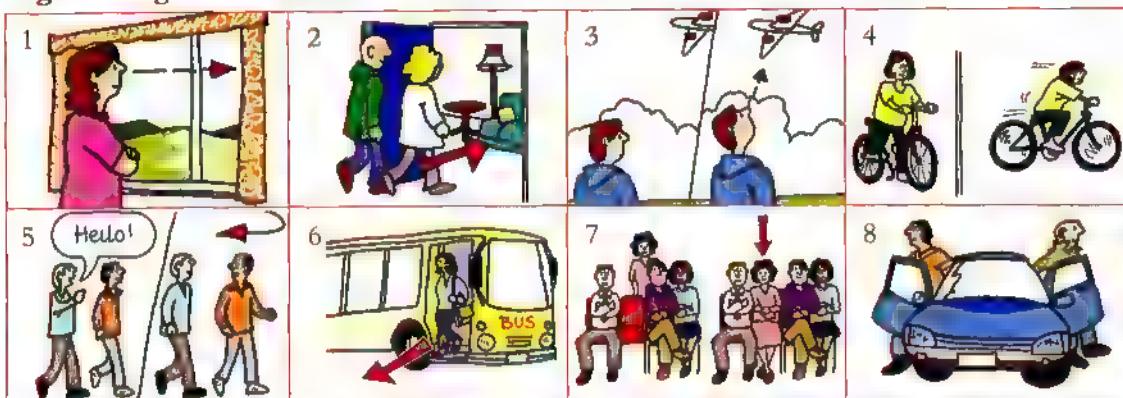
# go in, fall off, run away etc. (phrasal verbs 1)

A phrasal verb is a verb (go/look/be etc.) + in/out/up/down etc.

<p><b>in</b></p>  <p><b>GO IN</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>I waited outside the shop. I didn't <b>go in</b>.</li> <li>Sarah opened the door of the car and <b>got in</b>. (= <b>into</b> the car)</li> </ul>	<p><b>out</b></p>  <p><b>LOOK OUT</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>I went to the window and <b>looked out</b>.</li> <li>The car stopped and a woman <b>got out</b>. (= <b>out of</b> the car)</li> </ul>
<p><b>on</b></p>  <p><b>GET ON</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The bus came, and I <b>got on</b>.</li> </ul>	<p><b>off</b></p>  <p><b>FALL OFF</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Be careful! Don't <b>fall off</b>.</li> </ul>
<p><b>up</b></p>  <p><b>STAND UP</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>He <b>stood up</b> and left the room.</li> <li>I usually <b>get up</b> early. (= <b>get out of bed</b>)</li> <li>We <b>looked up</b> at the stars in the sky.</li> </ul>	<p><b>down</b></p>  <p><b>FALL DOWN</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The picture <b>fell down</b>.</li> <li>Would you like to <b>sit down</b>?</li> <li><b>Lie down</b> on the floor.</li> </ul>
<p><b>away or off</b></p>  <p><b>RUN AWAY</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The thief <b>ran away</b>. (or ... <b>ran off</b>)</li> <li>Emma got into the car and <b>drove away</b>. (or ... <b>drove off</b>)</li> </ul> <p><b>be/go away</b> (= in/to another place)</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Tim has <b>gone away</b> for a few days.</li> </ul>	<p><b>back</b></p>  <p><b>GO</b>                                   <b>COME BACK</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Go away and don't <b>come back</b>!</li> <li>We went out for dinner and then <b>went back</b> to our hotel.</li> </ul> <p><b>be back</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Tim is away. He'll <b>be back</b> on Monday.</li> </ul>
<p><b>over</b></p>  <p><b>CLIMB OVER</b>                           <b>TURN OVER</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The wall wasn't very high, so we <b>climbed over</b>.</li> <li><b>Turn over</b> and look at the next page.</li> </ul>	<p><b>round (or around)</b></p>  <p><b>LOOK ROUND</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Somebody shouted my name, so I <b>looked round (or around)</b>.</li> <li>We went for a long walk. After an hour we <b>turned round (or around)</b> and went back.</li> </ul>

## 114.1 Look at the pictures and complete the sentences. Use these verbs + in/out/up etc.

got      got      looked      looked      rode      sat      turned      went



- 1 I went to the window and looked out.
- 2 The door was open, so we got in.
- 3 He heard a plane, so he looked up.
- 4 She got on her bike and went.
- 5 I said hello, and he turned to me.
- 6 The bus stopped, and she got off.
- 7 There was a free seat, so she sat down.
- 8 A car stopped, and two men got out.

## 114.2 Complete the sentences. Use out/away/back etc.

- 1 "What happened to the picture on the wall?" "It fell down."
- 2 Wait a minute. Don't go away. I want to ask you something.
- 3 Lisa heard a noise behind her, so she looked out to see what it was.
- 4 I'm going out now to do some shopping. I'll be back at 5 o'clock.
- 5 I'm feeling very tired. I'm going to lie down on the sofa.
- 6 When you have read this page, turn over and read the other side.
- 7 Mark is from Canada. He lives in London now, but he wants to go back to Canada.
- 8 We haven't got a key to the house, so we can't get in.
- 9 I was very tired this morning. I couldn't get up.
- 10 A: 'When are you going on holiday?'  
B: 'On the 5th. And I'm coming back on the 24th.'

## 114.3 Before you do this exercise, study the verbs in Appendix 6 (page 250).

Complete the sentences. Choose a verb from the box + on/off/up etc. If necessary, put the verb into the correct form.

break	fall	give	hold	speak	wake	+ on/off/up/down/over
carry	get	go	slow	take		

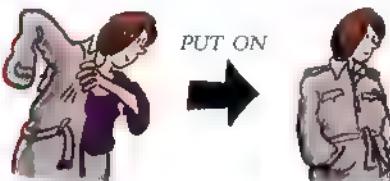
- 1 I went to sleep at 10 o'clock and woke up at 8 o'clock the next morning.
- 2 'It's time to go.' 'I'm ready.' 'Wait a minute. I'm not ready yet.'
- 3 The train slow down and finally stopped.
- 4 I like flying, but I'm always nervous when the plane takes off.
- 5 How are your children? How are they getting on at school?
- 6 It's difficult to hear you. Can you say that again a little?
- 7 This car isn't very good. It has broke down many times.
- 8 When babies try to walk, they sometimes fall over.
- 9 The hotel isn't far from here. If you turn left, along this road, you'll see it on the left.
- 10 I tried to find a job, but I got nowhere. It was impossible.
- 11 The fire alarm went off and everyone had to leave the building.

put on your shoes  
(phrasal verbs 2)

## put your shoes on

Sometimes a phrasal verb (**put on** / **take off** etc.) has an *object*. For example:

*verb      object*  
**put on** your coat



*verb      object*  
**take off** your shoes



You can say:

**put on** your coat  
or **put** your coat **on**

But **it/ them** (pronouns) always go before **on/off** etc.:

**put it on** (*not put on it*)

- It was cold, so I **put on** my coat.  
(*or I put my coat on*)
- Here's your coat. **Put it on.**

You can say:

**take off** your shoes  
or **take** your shoes **off**

**take them off** (*not take off them*)

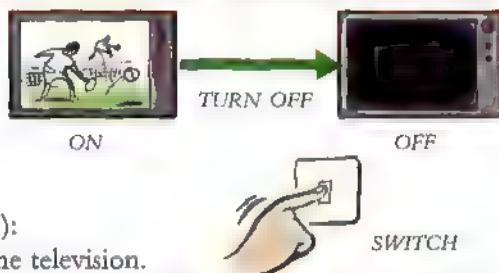
- I'm going to **take off** my shoes.  
(*or take my shoes off*)
- Your shoes are dirty. **Take them off.**

B

Some more phrasal verbs + *object*:

**turn on** / **turn off** (lights, machines, taps etc.):

- It was dark, so I **turned on** the light.  
(*or I turned the light on*)
- I don't want to watch this programme.  
You can **turn it off**.



**also switch on** / **switch off** (lights, machines etc.):

- I **switched on** the light and **switched off** the television.

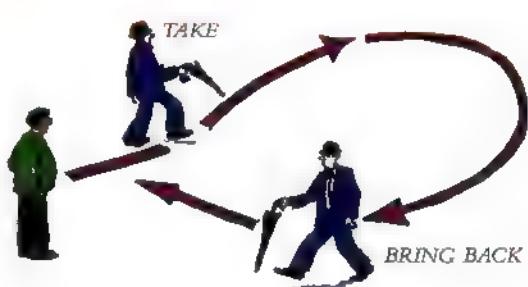
**pick up** / **put down**:

- Those are my keys on the floor. Can you **pick them up** for me?
- I stopped reading and **put** my book **down**.  
(*or put down my book*)



**bring back** / **take back** / **give back** / **put back**:

- You can take my umbrella, but please **bring it back**.
- I **took** my new sweater **back** to the shop. It was too small for me.
- I've got Rachel's keys. I have to **give them back** to her.
- I read the letter and then **put it back** in the envelope.



# Exercises

# Unit 115

## 115.1 Look at the pictures. What did these people do?



1 He turned on the light

2 She

3 He

4 She ..

5 He

6 She

## 115.2 You can write these sentences in three different ways. Complete the table.

1 I turned on the radio.	I turned the radio on.	I turned it on.
2 He put on his jacket.	He	He
3 She	She took her glasses off.	
4 I picked up the phone.		
5 They gave back the key.		
6	We turned the lights off.	

## 115.3 Complete the sentences. Use these verbs with it or them.

bring back pick up switch off take back turn on

1 I wanted to watch something on television, so I turned it on

2 My new lamp doesn't work. I'm going to to the shop.

3 There were some gloves on the floor, so I and put them on the table.

4 The heating was on but it was too warm, so I

5 Thank you for lending me these books. I won't forget to

## 115.4 Before you do this exercise, study the verbs in Appendix 7 (page 251).

Complete the sentences. Use a verb from the box. Sometimes you will also need to use it/them/me.

fill in knock down look up show round turn down  
give up knock over put out throw away try on

1 They knocked a lot of houses down when they built the new road.

2 That music is very loud. Can you turn it down ?

3 I a glass and broke it.

4 'What does this word mean?' 'Here's a dictionary. You can

5 I want to keep these magazines. Please don't

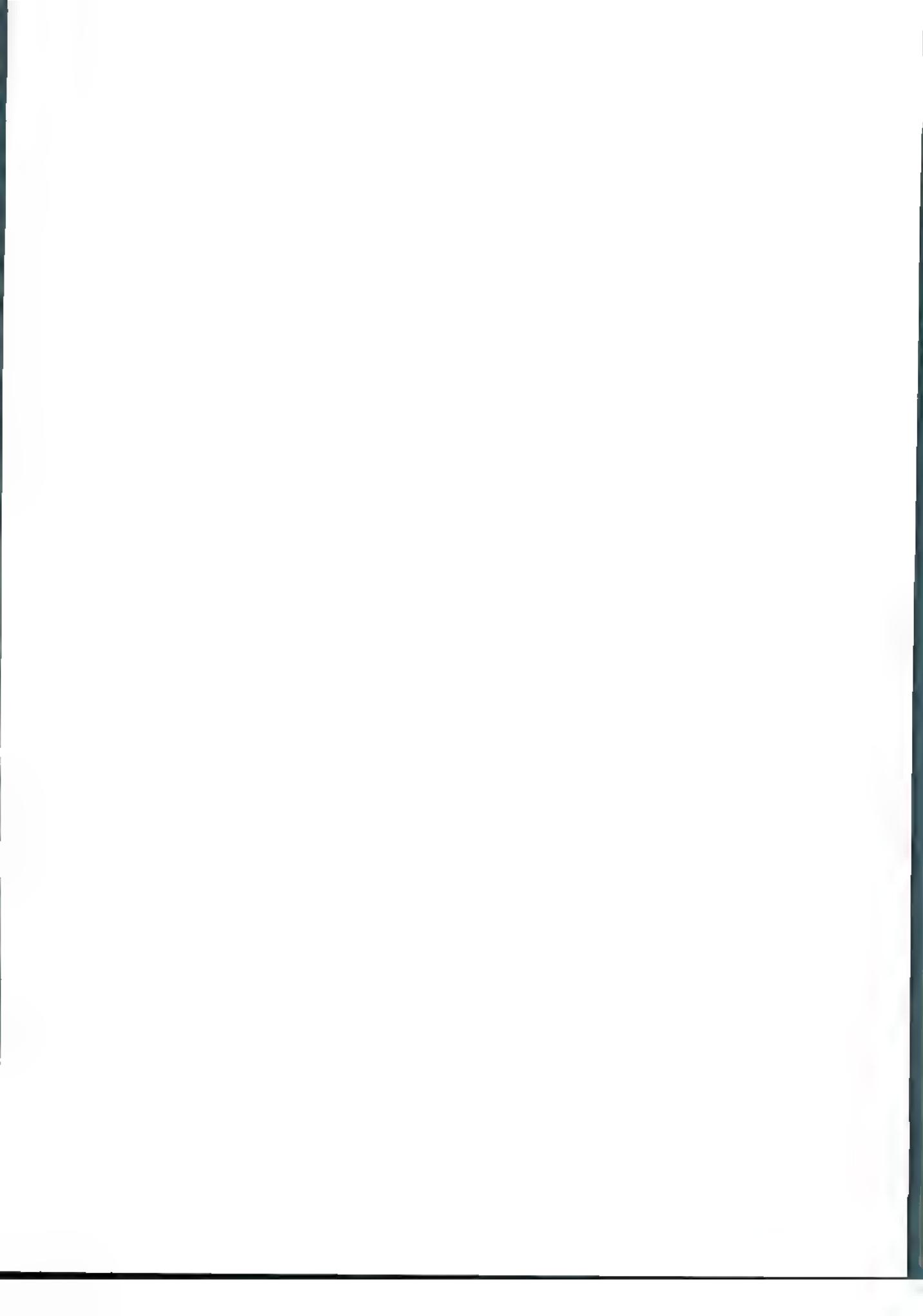
6 I a pair of shoes in the shop, but I didn't buy them.

7 I visited a school last week. One of the teachers

8 'Do you play the piano?' 'No, I started to learn, but I after a month.'

9 Somebody gave me a form and told me to

10 Smoking isn't allowed here. Please your cigarette



# Appendix 1

## Active and passive

### 1.1 Present and past

	active	passive
<i>present simple</i>	<input type="checkbox"/> We <b>make</b> butter from milk. <input type="checkbox"/> Somebody <b>cleans</b> these rooms every day. <input type="checkbox"/> People never <b>invite</b> me to parties. <input type="checkbox"/> How do they <b>make</b> butter?	<input type="checkbox"/> Butter <b>is made</b> from milk. <input type="checkbox"/> These rooms <b>are cleaned</b> every day. <input type="checkbox"/> I am never <b>invited</b> to parties. <input type="checkbox"/> How <b>is butter made?</b>
<i>past simple</i>	<input type="checkbox"/> Somebody <b>stole</b> my car last week. <input type="checkbox"/> Somebody <b>stole</b> my keys yesterday. <input type="checkbox"/> They <b>didn't invite</b> me to the party. <input type="checkbox"/> When <b>did they build</b> these houses?	<input type="checkbox"/> My car <b>was stolen</b> last week. <input type="checkbox"/> My keys <b>were stolen</b> yesterday. <input type="checkbox"/> I <b>wasn't invited</b> to the party. <input type="checkbox"/> When <b>were these houses built?</b>
<i>present continuous</i>	<input type="checkbox"/> They <b>are building</b> a new airport at the moment. (= it isn't finished) <input type="checkbox"/> They <b>are building</b> some new houses near the river.	<input type="checkbox"/> A new airport <b>is being built</b> at the moment. <input type="checkbox"/> Some new houses <b>are being built</b> near the river.
<i>past continuous</i>	<input type="checkbox"/> When I <b>was here</b> a few years ago, they <b>were building</b> a new airport. (= it wasn't finished at that time)	<input type="checkbox"/> When I <b>was here</b> a few years ago, a new airport <b>was being built</b> .
<i>present perfect</i>	<input type="checkbox"/> Look! They <b>have painted</b> the door. <input type="checkbox"/> These shirts are clean. Somebody <b>has washed</b> them. <input type="checkbox"/> Somebody <b>has stolen</b> my car.	<input type="checkbox"/> Look! The door <b>has been painted</b> . <input type="checkbox"/> These shirts are clean. They <b>have been washed</b> . <input type="checkbox"/> My car <b>has been stolen</b> .
<i>past perfect</i>	<input type="checkbox"/> Tina said that somebody <b>had stolen</b> her car.	<input type="checkbox"/> Tina said that her car <b>had been stolen</b> .

### 1.2 will / can / must / have to etc.

	active	passive
	<input type="checkbox"/> Somebody <b>will clean</b> the office tomorrow. <input type="checkbox"/> Somebody <b>must clean</b> the office. <input type="checkbox"/> I think they'll <b>invite</b> you to the party. <input type="checkbox"/> They <b>can't repair</b> my watch. <input type="checkbox"/> You <b>should wash</b> this sweater by hand. <input type="checkbox"/> They <b>are going to build</b> a new airport. <input type="checkbox"/> Somebody <b>has to wash</b> these clothes. <input type="checkbox"/> They <b>had to take</b> the injured man to hospital.	<input type="checkbox"/> The office <b>will be cleaned</b> tomorrow. <input type="checkbox"/> The office <b>must be cleaned</b> . <input type="checkbox"/> I think you'll <b>be invited</b> to the party. <input type="checkbox"/> My watch <b>can't be repaired</b> . <input type="checkbox"/> This sweater <b>should be washed</b> by hand. <input type="checkbox"/> A new airport <b>is going to be built</b> . <input type="checkbox"/> These clothes <b>have to be washed</b> . <input type="checkbox"/> The injured man <b>had to be taken</b> to hospital.

# List of irregular verbs (→ Unit 24)

<i>infinitive</i>	<i>past simple</i>	<i>past participle</i>
be	<b>was/were</b>	<b>been</b>
beat	<b>beat</b>	<b>beaten</b>
become	<b>became</b>	<b>become</b>
begin	<b>began</b>	<b>begun</b>
bite	<b>bit</b>	<b>bitten</b>
blow	<b>blew</b>	<b>blown</b>
break	<b>broke</b>	<b>broken</b>
bring	<b>brought</b>	<b>brought</b>
build	<b>built</b>	<b>built</b>
buy	<b>bought</b>	<b>bought</b>
catch	<b>caught</b>	<b>caught</b>
choose	<b>chose</b>	<b>chosen</b>
come	<b>came</b>	<b>come</b>
cost	<b>cost</b>	<b>cost</b>
cut	<b>cut</b>	<b>cut</b>
do	<b>did</b>	<b>done</b>
draw	<b>drew</b>	<b>drawn</b>
drink	<b>drank</b>	<b>drunk</b>
drive	<b>drove</b>	<b>driven</b>
eat	<b>ate</b>	<b>eaten</b>
fall	<b>fell</b>	<b>fallen</b>
feel	<b>felt</b>	<b>felt</b>
fight	<b>fought</b>	<b>fought</b>
find	<b>found</b>	<b>found</b>
fly	<b>flew</b>	<b>flown</b>
forget	<b>forgot</b>	<b>forgotten</b>
get	<b>got</b>	<b>got</b>
give	<b>gave</b>	<b>given</b>
go	<b>went</b>	<b>gone</b>
grow	<b>grew</b>	<b>grown</b>
hang	<b>hung</b>	<b>hung</b>
have	<b>had</b>	<b>had</b>
hear	<b>heard</b>	<b>heard</b>
hide	<b>hid</b>	<b>hidden</b>
hit	<b>hit</b>	<b>hit</b>
hold	<b>held</b>	<b>held</b>
hurt	<b>hurt</b>	<b>hurt</b>
keep	<b>kept</b>	<b>kept</b>
know	<b>knew</b>	<b>known</b>
leave	<b>left</b>	<b>left</b>
lend	<b>lent</b>	<b>lent</b>

<i>infinitive</i>	<i>past simple</i>	<i>past participle</i>
let	<b>let</b>	<b>let</b>
lie	<b>lay</b>	<b>lain</b>
light	<b>lit</b>	<b>lit</b>
lose	<b>lost</b>	<b>lost</b>
make	<b>made</b>	<b>made</b>
mean	<b>meant</b>	<b>meant</b>
meet	<b>met</b>	<b>met</b>
pay	<b>paid</b>	<b>paid</b>
put	<b>put</b>	<b>put</b>
read (reed)*	<b>read (red)*</b>	<b>read (red)*</b>
ride	<b>rode</b>	<b>ridden</b>
ring	<b>rang</b>	<b>rung</b>
rise	<b>rose</b>	<b>risen</b>
run	<b>ran</b>	<b>run</b>
say	<b>said</b>	<b>said</b>
see	<b>saw</b>	<b>seen</b>
sell	<b>sold</b>	<b>sold</b>
send	<b>sent</b>	<b>sent</b>
shine	<b>shone</b>	<b>shone</b>
shoot	<b>shot</b>	<b>shot</b>
show	<b>showed</b>	<b>shown</b>
shut	<b>shut</b>	<b>shut</b>
sing	<b>sang</b>	<b>sung</b>
sit	<b>sat</b>	<b>sat</b>
sleep	<b>slept</b>	<b>slept</b>
speak	<b>spoke</b>	<b>spoken</b>
spend	<b>spent</b>	<b>spent</b>
stand	<b>stood</b>	<b>stood</b>
steal	<b>stole</b>	<b>stolen</b>
swim	<b>swam</b>	<b>swum</b>
take	<b>took</b>	<b>taken</b>
teach	<b>taught</b>	<b>taught</b>
tear	<b>tore</b>	<b>torn</b>
tell	<b>told</b>	<b>told</b>
think	<b>thought</b>	<b>thought</b>
throw	<b>threw</b>	<b>thrown</b>
understand	<b>understood</b>	<b>understood</b>
wake	<b>woke</b>	<b>woken</b>
wear	<b>wore</b>	<b>worn</b>
win	<b>won</b>	<b>won</b>
write	<b>wrote</b>	<b>written</b>

\* pronunciation

The following verbs can be regular (-ed) or irregular (-t):

<i>infinitive</i>	<i>past simple / past participle</i>
burn	<b>burned or burnt</b>
dream	<b>dreamed or dreamt</b>

<i>infinitive</i>	<i>past simple / past participle</i>
learn	<b>learned or learnt</b>
smell	<b>smelled or smelt</b>

# Appendix 3

## Irregular verbs in groups

The past simple and past participle are the same:

<b>1</b>	cost → cost cut → cut hit → hit hurt → hurt	let → let put → put shut → shut
----------	------------------------------------------------------	---------------------------------------

<b>2</b>	lend → lent send → sent spend → spent build → built  burn → burnt learn → learnt smell → smelt  feel → felt leave → left meet → met dream → dreamt (dremt)* mean → meant (ment)*	lose → lost shoot → shot get → got light → lit sit → sat  keep → kept sleep → slept
----------	-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------	----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

<b>3</b>	bring → brought (brort)* buy → bought (bort)* fight → fought (fort)* think → thought (thort)*  catch → caught (kort)* teach → taught (tort)*
----------	----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

<b>4</b>	sell → sold tell → told  find → found have → had hear → heard hold → held read → read (red)* say → said (sed)*  pay → paid make → made  stand → stood understand → understood
----------	-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

The past simple and past participle are different:

<b>1</b>	break → broke choose → chose speak → spoke steal → stole wake → woke	broken chosen spoken stolen woken
----------	----------------------------------------------------------------------------------	-----------------------------------------------

<b>2</b>	drive → drove ride → rode rise → rose write → wrote  beat → beat bite → bit hide → hid	driven ridden risen written  beaten bitten hidden
----------	-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------	------------------------------------------------------------------------

<b>3</b>	eat → ate fall → fell forget → forgot give → gave see → saw take → took	eaten fallen forgotten given seen taken
----------	----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------	--------------------------------------------------------

<b>4</b>	blow → blew grow → grew know → knew throw → threw fly → flew draw → drew show → showed	blown grown known thrown flown drawn shown
----------	----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------	--------------------------------------------------------------

<b>5</b>	begin → began drink → drank swim → swam ring → rang sing → sang run → ran	begun drunk swum rung sung run
----------	------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------	-----------------------------------------------

<b>6</b>	come → came become → became	come become
----------	--------------------------------	----------------

\* pronunciation

## Short forms (he's / I'd / don't etc.)

**4.1** In spoken English we usually pronounce 'I am' as one word. The short form (I'm) is a way of writing this:

I am → I'm	□ I'm feeling tired this morning.
it is → it's	□ 'Do you like this jacket?' 'Yes, it's nice.'
they have → they've	□ 'Where are your friends?' 'They've gone home.'
etc.	

When we write short forms, we use ' (an apostrophe):

I am → I'm    he is → he's    you have → you've    she will → she'll

**4.2** We use these forms with I/he/she etc.:

am → 'm    I'm						
is → 's	he's	she's	it's			
are → 're				we're	you're	they're
have → 've	I've			we've	you've	they've
has → 's	he's	she's	it's			
had → 'd	I'd	he'd	she'd	we'd	you'd	they'd
will → 'll	I'll	he'll	she'll	we'll	you'll	they'll
would → 'd	I'd	he'd	she'd	we'd	you'd	they'd

- I've got some new shoes.
- We'll probably go out this evening.
- It's 10 o'clock. You're late again.

's = is or has:

- She's going out this evening. (she's going = she is going)
- She's gone out. (she's gone = she has gone)

'd = would or had:

- A: What would you like to eat?
- B: I'd like a salad, please. (I'd like = I would like)
- I told the police that I'd lost my passport. (I'd lost = I had lost)

Do not use 'm/'s/'d etc. at the end of a sentence (→ Unit 40):

- 'Are you tired?' 'Yes, I am.' (not Yes, I'm.)
- She isn't tired, but he is. (not he's)

**4.3** We use short forms with I/you/he/she etc., but you can use short forms (especially 's) with other words too:

- Who's your favourite singer? (= who is)
- What's the time? (= what is)
- There's a big tree in the garden. (= there is)
- My sister's working in London. (= my sister is working)
- Paul's gone out. (= Paul has gone out)
- What colour's your car? (= What colour is your car?)

# Appendix 4

## Short forms (he's / I'd / don't etc.)

### 4.4 Negative short forms (→ Unit 43):

<b>isn't</b> (= is not)	<b>don't</b> (= do not)	<b>can't</b> (= cannot)
<b>aren't</b> (= are not)	<b>doesn't</b> (= does not)	<b>couldn't</b> (= could not)
<b>wasn't</b> (= was not)	<b>didn't</b> (= did not)	<b>won't</b> (= will not)
<b>weren't</b> (= were not)		<b>wouldn't</b> (= would not)
<b>hasn't</b> (= has not)		<b>shouldn't</b> (= should not)
<b>haven't</b> (= have not)		<b>mustn't</b> (= must not)
<b>hadn't</b> (= had not)		

- We went to her house, but she **wasn't** at home.
- 'Where's David?' 'I **don't** know. I **haven't** seen him.'
- You work all the time. You **shouldn't** work so hard.
- I **won't** be here tomorrow. (= I will not)

### 4.5 's (apostrophe + s)

's can mean different things:

- (1) 's = **is** or **has** (→ section 4.2 of this appendix)
- (2) **let's** = let **us** (→ Units 35, 53)
  - It's a lovely day. **Let's** go out. (= Let **us** go out.)
- (3) **Kate's** camera = her camera  
my brother's car = his car  
the manager's office = his/her office etc.  
(→ Unit 64)

Compare:

- Kate's** camera was very expensive. (**Kate's** camera = **her** camera)
- Kate's** a very good photographer. (**Kate's** = **Kate is**)
- Kate's** got a new camera. (**Kate's** got = **Kate has** got)

# Appendix 5

## Spelling

### 5.1 Words + -s and -es (birds/watches etc.)

**noun + s** (plural) (→ Unit 66)

bird → birds      mistake → mistakes      hotel → hotels

**verb + s** (he/she/it -s) (→ Unit 5)

think → thinks      live → lives      remember → remembers

*but*

+ es after -s / -sh / -ch / -x

bus → buses      pass → passes  
dish → dishes      wash → washes  
watch → watches      teach → teaches  
box → boxes

address → addresses

finish → finishes

sandwich → sandwiches

*also*

potato → potatoes      tomato → tomatoes  
do → does      go → goes

-f / -fe → -ves

shelf → shelves      knife → knives      *but* roof → roofs

### 5.2 Words ending in -y (baby → babies / study → studied etc.)

-y → -ies

study → studies (*not* studys)  
story → stories      city → cities  
try → tries      marry → marries

family → families (*not* familys)

baby → babies

fly → flies

-y → -ied (→ Unit 11)

study → studied (*not* studyed)  
try → tried      marry → married

copy → copied

-y → -ier/-iest (→ Units 87, 90)

easy → easier/easiest (*not* easyer/easyest)  
happy → happier/happiest  
heavy → heavier/heaviest

lucky → luckier/luckiest

funny → funnier/funniest

-y → -ily (→ Unit 86)

easy → easily (*not* easly)  
happy → happily      heavy → heavily      lucky → luckily

y does not change to i if the ending is -ay/-ey/-oy/-uy:

holiday → holidays (*not* holidaies)  
enjoy → enjoys/enjoyed      stay → stays/stayed      buy → buys      key → keys

*but*

say → said      pay → paid      (*irregular verbs*)

# Appendix 5

## Spelling

### 5.3 -ing

Verbs that end in **-e** (make/write/drive etc.) → **\*ing**:

make → making    write → writing    come → coming    dance → dancing

Verbs that end in **-ie** → **-ying**:

lie → lying    die → dying    tie → tying

### 5.4 stop → stopped, big → bigger etc.

Vowels and consonants:

*Vowel letters:* a e i o u

*Consonant letters:* b c d f g k l m n p r s t w y

Sometimes a word ends in a *vowel* + a *consonant*. For example: stop, big, get.

Before **-ing/-ed/-er/-est**, **p/g/t** etc. become **pp/gg/tt** etc.

For example:

V+C				V = vowel	
stop	S T	O P	p → pp	stopping	stopped
run	R U	N	n → nn	running	
get	G E	T	t → tt	getting	
swim	SW I	M	m → mm	swimming	
big	B I	G	g → gg	bigger	biggest
hot	H O	T	t → tt	hotter	hottest
thin	TH I	N	n → nn	thinner	thinnest

This does *not* happen

(1) if the word ends in *two consonant letters (C + C)*:

C+C			
help	H E	L P	helping    helped
work	W O	R K	working    worked
fast	F A	S T	faster    fastest

(2) if the word ends in *two vowel letters + a consonant letter (V + V + C)*:

V+V+C			
need	N E	E D	needing    needed
wait	W A	I T	waiting    waited
cheap	C H	E A	cheaper    cheapest

(3) in longer words (two syllables or more) if the last part of the word is *not* stressed:

stress			
happen	HAP	-pen	→ happening/happened ( <i>not happened</i> )
visit	VIS	-it	→ visiting/visited
remember	re-MEM	-ber	→ remembering/remembered

but

prefer	pre-FER	(stress at the end)	→ preferring/preferred
begin	be-GIN	(stress at the end)	→ beginning

(4) if the word ends in **-y** or **-w**. (At the end of words, **y** and **w** are not consonants.)

enjoy → enjoying/enjoyed    snow → snowing/snowed    few → fewer/fewest

# Phrasal verbs (take off / give up etc.)

This is a list of some important phrasal verbs (→ Unit 114).

**on**      **carry on** = *continue*

□ Don't stop working. **Carry on.** (= continue working)

□ A: Excuse me, where is the station?

B: **Carry on** along this road and turn right at the lights. (= Continue along ...)

also **go on** / **walk on** / **drive on** etc. = *continue going/walking/driving etc.*

□ Don't stop here. **Drive on.**

**come on** = *be quick*

□ **Come on!** Everybody is waiting for you.

**get on** = *manage (in a job, at school, in an exam etc.)*

□ How was your exam? How did you **get on**?  
(= how did you do?)



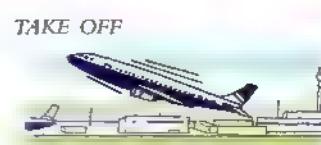
**hold on** = *wait*

□ Can you **hold on** a minute? (= can you wait?)

**off**

**take off** = *leave the ground (for planes)*

□ The plane **took off** 20 minutes late, but arrived on time.



**go off** = *explode (a bomb etc.) or ring (an alarm, an alarm clock etc.)*

□ A bomb **went off** and caused a lot of damage.  
□ A car alarm **goes off** if somebody tries to break into the car.



**up**

**give up** = *stop trying*

□ I know it's difficult, but don't **give up**.  
(= don't stop trying)



**grow up** = *become an adult*

□ What does your son want to do when he **grows up**?

**hurry up** = *do something more quickly*

□ **Hurry up!** We haven't got much time.



**speak up** = *speak more loudly*

□ I can't hear you. Can you **speak up**, please?

**wake up** = *stop sleeping*

□ I often **wake up** in the middle of the night.



**wash up** = *wash the plates etc. after a meal*

□ Do you want me to **wash up**?  
(or ... to do the washing-up?)

**down**

**slow down** = *go more slowly*

□ You're driving too fast. **Slow down!**



**break down** = *stop working (for cars, machines etc.)*

□ Sue was very late because her car **broke down**.

**over**

**fall over** = *lose your balance*

□ I **fell over** because my shoes were too big for me.



# Appendix 7 Phrasal verbs + object (put out a fire / give up your job etc.)

This is a list of some important phrasal verbs + object (→ Unit 115).

**in/out** **fill in / fill out** a form = *complete a form*

- Can you **fill in** this form, please? or  
Can you **fill out** this form, please?



**out** **put out** a fire, a cigarette etc.

- The fire brigade arrived and **put the fire out**.



**cross out** a mistake, a word etc.

- If you make a mistake, **cross it out**.



**on** **try on** clothes = *put on clothes to see if they fit you*

- (in a shop) This is a nice jacket. Shall I **try it on**?

**up** **give up** something = *stop doing it*

- Sue **gave up her job** when her baby was born. (= she stopped working)
- 'Are you still learning Italian?' 'No, I **gave it up**'

**look up** a word in a dictionary etc.

- I didn't know the meaning of the word, so I **looked it up** in a dictionary.

**turn up** the TV, radio, music, heating etc. = *make it louder or warmer*

- Can you **turn the radio up**? I can't hear it.

**wake up** somebody who is sleeping

- I have to get up early tomorrow. Can you **wake me up** at 6.30?

**down** **knock down** a building = *demolish it*

- They are going to **knock down** the school and build a new one.



**turn down** the TV, radio, music, heating etc.

= *make it more quiet or less warm*

- The music is too loud. Can you **turn it down**?

**over** **knock over** a cup, a glass, a person etc.

- Be careful. Don't **knock your cup over**.
- There was an accident at the end of the road. A man was **knocked over** by a car. (or A man was **knocked down** by a car.)



**away** **throw away** rubbish, things you don't want

- These apples are bad. Shall I **throw them away**?
- Don't **throw away that picture**. I want it.

**THROW AWAY**



**put** something **away** = *put it in the place where you usually keep it*

- After they finished playing, the children **put their toys away**.

**back** **pay somebody back** = *give back money that you borrowed*

- Thank you for lending me the money. I'll **pay you back** next week.

**round/ around** **show somebody round/around** = *take somebody on a tour of a place*

- We visited a factory last week. The manager **showed us round**.

# Additional exercises

List of exercises:

1–2	<b>am/is/are</b>	Units 1–2
3	present continuous	Units 3–4
4	present simple	Units 5–7
5–7	present simple, <b>am/is/are</b> and <b>have (got)</b>	Units 1–2, 5–7, 9
8–9	present continuous and present simple	Units 3–8
10–13	<b>was/were</b> and past simple	Units 10–12
14	past simple and past continuous	Units 11–14
15	present and past	Units 3–14
16–18	present perfect	Units 15–19
19–22	present perfect and past simple	Units 18–20
23	present, past and present perfect	Units 3–20
24–27	passive	Units 21–22
28	future	Units 25–28
29	past, present and future	Units 3–20, 25–28
30–31	past, present and future	Units 3–22, 25–28, 52, 54, 98, 105
32	<b>-ing</b> and <b>to ...</b>	Units 51–55, 105, 112
33–34	<b>a</b> and <b>the</b>	Units 65, 69–73
35	prepositions	Units 103–108, 111

## am/is/are

Units 1–2

1 Write sentences for the pictures. Use the words in the boxes + is/isn't/are/aren't.



The windows  
Lisa  
Kate  
The children  
Gary  
The books  
The hotel  
The bus

on the table  
hungry  
asleep  
open  
full  
near the station  
a doctor  
happy

1 The windows are open.  
2 Lisa isn't happy.  
3 Kate ...  
4 ...  
5 ...  
6 ...  
7 ...  
8 ...

## 2 Complete the sentences.

- 1 'Are you hungry?' 'No, but I'm thirsty.'
- 2 'How are your parents?' 'They're fine.'
- 3 'Is Anna at home?' 'No, ..... at work.'
- 4 '..... my keys?' 'On your desk.'
- 5 Where is Paul from? American or British?
- 6 ..... very hot today. The temperature is 38 degrees.
- 7 'Are you a teacher?' 'No, ..... a student.'
- 8 '..... your umbrella?' 'Green.'
- 9 Where's your car? ..... in the car park?
- 10 '..... tired?' 'No, I'm fine.'
- 11 'These shoes are nice. How .....?' 'Fifty pounds.'

## present continuous (I'm working / are you working? etc.)

Units 3–4

## 3 Use the words in brackets to write sentences.

- 1 A: Where are your parents?  
B: They're watching TV. (they / watch / TV)
- 2 A: Paula is going out.  
B: Where's she going? (where / she / go?)
- 3 A: Where's David?  
B: ..... (he / have / a shower)
- 4 A: ..... ? (the children / play?)
- 5 A: ..... ? (it / rain?)
- 6 A: Where are Sue and Steve?  
B: ..... (they / come / now)
- 7 A: ..... ? (why / you / stand / here?)  
B: ..... (I / wait / for somebody)

## present simple (I work / she doesn't work / do you work? etc.)

Units 5–7

## 4 Complete the sentences. Use the present simple.

- 1 Sue always gets to work early. (Sue / always / get)
- 2 We don't watch TV very often. (we / not / watch)
- 3 How often do you wash your hair? (you / wash)
- 4 I want to go to the cinema, but ..... to go. (Sam / not / want)
- 5 ..... to go out tonight? (you / want)
- 6 ..... near here? (Helen / live)
- 7 ..... a lot of people. (Sarah / know)
- 8 I enjoy travelling, but ..... very much. (I / not / travel)
- 9 What time ..... in the morning? (you / usually / get up)
- 10 My parents are usually at home in the evening. .... very often. (they / not / go out)
- 11 ..... work at five o'clock. (Tom / always / finish)
- 12 A: What ..... ?  
B: ..... in a hotel. (she / work)

**present simple: am/is/are and have (got)**

Units 1–2, 5–7, 9

5 Read the questions and Clare's answers. Then write sentences about Clare.

- 1 Are you married?
- 2 Do you live in London?
- 3 Are you a student?
- 4 Have you got a car?
- 5 Do you go out a lot?
- 6 Have you got a lot of friends?
- 7 Do you like London?
- 8 Do you like dancing?
- 9 Are you interested in sport?

- No.
- Yes.
- Yes.
- No.
- Yes.
- Yes.
- No.
- Yes.
- No.



- 1
- 2
- 3
- 4
- 5
- 6
- 7
- 8
- 9

She isn't married.  
She lives in London.

6 Complete the questions.

- 1 What's your name ?  
married?
- Where ?  
any children?
- How ?

Brian.  
Yes, I am.  
In Barton Road.  
Yes, a daughter.  
She's three.



- 2 ?  
your job?  
a car?  
to work by car?

I'm 29.  
I work in a supermarket.  
No, I hate it.  
Yes, I have.  
No, I usually go by bus.



- 3 Who is this man ?  
?  
?  
?  
in London?



That's my brother.  
Michael.  
He's a travel agent.  
No, in Manchester.

7 Write sentences from these words. All the sentences are present.

- 1 Sarah often / tennis
- 2 my parents / a new car
- 3 my shoes / dirty
- 4 Sonia / 32 years old
- 5 I / two sisters
- 6 we often / TV in the evening
- 7 Jane never / a hat
- 8 a bicycle / two wheels
- 9 these flowers / beautiful
- 10 Mary / German very well

Sarah often plays tennis.  
My parents have got a new car.  
My shoes are dirty.  
Sonia

## present continuous (I'm working) and present simple (I work)

## Units 3–8

## II Complete the sentences.

1 Please be quiet. I'm <u>working</u> . (I/work)	2 Do you often go (you/often/go) to the cinema?	3 What _____ (you/cook)?
4 Jack <u>.....</u> (p ay) the piano very well.	5 <u>.....</u> (i/go) now. Goodbye!	6 <u>.....</u> (it/rain). Can I take this umbrella?
7 <u>(I/not/watch)</u> TV very much.	8 Excuse me, <u>.....</u> (we/look) for the museum.	9 What's this word? How (you/pronounce) it?

## 9 Which is right?

- 1 'Are you speaking / Do you speak English?' 'Yes, a little.' (Do you speak is right)
- 2 Sometimes we're going / we go away at weekends.
- 3 It's a nice day today. The sun is shining / shines.
- 4 (You meet Kate in the street.) Hello, Kate. Where are you going / do you go?
- 5 How often are you going / do you go on holiday?
- 6 Emily is a writer. She's writing / She writes books for children.
- 7 I'm never reading / I never read newspapers.
- 8 'Where are Michael and Jane?' 'They're watching / They watch TV in the living room.'
- 9 Helen is in her office. She's talking / She talks to somebody.
- 10 What time are you usually having / do you usually have dinner?
- 11 John isn't at home at the moment. He's visiting / He visits some friends.
- 12 'Would you like some tea?' 'No, thank you. I'm not drinking / I don't drink tea.'

10 Complete the sentences. Use one word only.

- 1 I got up early and ... had ... a shower.
- 2 Tom was tired last night, so he ..... to bed early.
- 3 I ..... this pen on the floor. Is it yours?
- 4 Kate got married when she ..... 23.
- 5 Helen is learning to drive. She ..... her first lesson yesterday.
- 6 'I've got a new job.' 'Yes, I know. David ..... me.'
- 7 'Where did you buy that book?' 'It was a present. Jane ..... it to me.'
- 8 We ..... hungry, so we had something to eat.
- 9 'Did you enjoy the film?' 'Yes, I ..... it was very good.'
- 10 'Did Andy come to your party?' 'No, we ..... him, but he didn't come.'

11 Look at the questions and Kevin's answers. Write sentences about Kevin when he was a child.

When you were a child ...

Were you tall?  
Did you like school?  
Were you good at sport?  
Did you play football?  
Did you work hard at school?  
Did you have a lot of friends?  
Did you have a bicycle?  
Were you a quiet child?



Kevin

No.	1	He wasn't tall.
Yes.	2	He liked school.
Yes.	3	He
Yes.	4	
No.	5	
Yes.	6	
No.	7	
No.	8	

12 Complete the questions.



- 1 Did you have ... a nice holiday?
- 2 Where did you go ... ?
- 3 ... there?
- 4 ... Amsterdam?
- 5 ... ?
- 6 ... good?
- 7 ... back?

Yes, it was great, thanks.  
To Amsterdam.  
Five days.  
Yes, very much.  
I have friends in Amsterdam, so I stayed with them.  
Yes, it was warm and sunny.  
Yesterday.

13 Put the verb in the right form (positive, negative or question).

- 1 It was a good party. ... I enjoyed ... it. (I / enjoy)
- 2 Did you do ... the shopping? (you / do) 'No, I ... didn't have ... time.' (I / have)
- 3 'Did you phone Adam?' 'No, I'm afraid ...' (I / forget)
- 4 I like your new watch. Where ... it? (you / get)
- 5 I saw Lucy at the party, but ... to her. (I / speak)
- 6 A: ... a nice weekend? (you / have)  
B: Yes, I went to stay with some friends of mine.
- 7 Paul wasn't well yesterday, so ... to work. (he / go)
- 8 'Is Mary here?' 'Yes, ... five minutes ago.' (she / arrive)
- 9 Where ... before he moved here? (Robert / live)
- 10 The restaurant wasn't expensive. ... very much. (the meal / cost)

## past simple (I worked) and past continuous (I was working)

## Units 11–14

14 Complete the sentences. Use the past simple or past continuous.



It ..... **was raining** (rain) when we went (go) out.



When I arrived at the office, Jane and Paul ..... (work) at their desks.



I ..... (open) the window because it was hot.



The phone ..... (ring) when Sue (cook) the dinner.



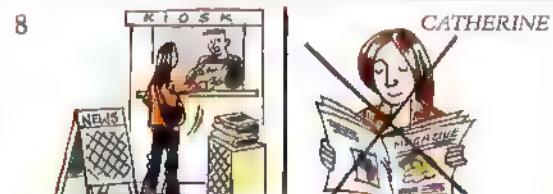
I ..... (hear) a noise outside, so I ..... (look) out of the window.



Tom ..... (look) out of the window when the accident (happen).



Richard had a book in his hand, but he (not/read) it. He (watch) TV.



Catherine bought a magazine, but she ..... (not/read) it. She didn't have time.



I ..... (finish) my meal, ..... (pay) the bill and ..... (leave) the restaurant.



I ..... (see) Kate this morning. I ..... (walk) along the street and she ..... (wait) for the bus.

## present and past

## Units 3–14

## 15 Complete the sentences. Use one of these forms:

present simple (I work/drive etc.)  
past simple (I worked/drove etc.)

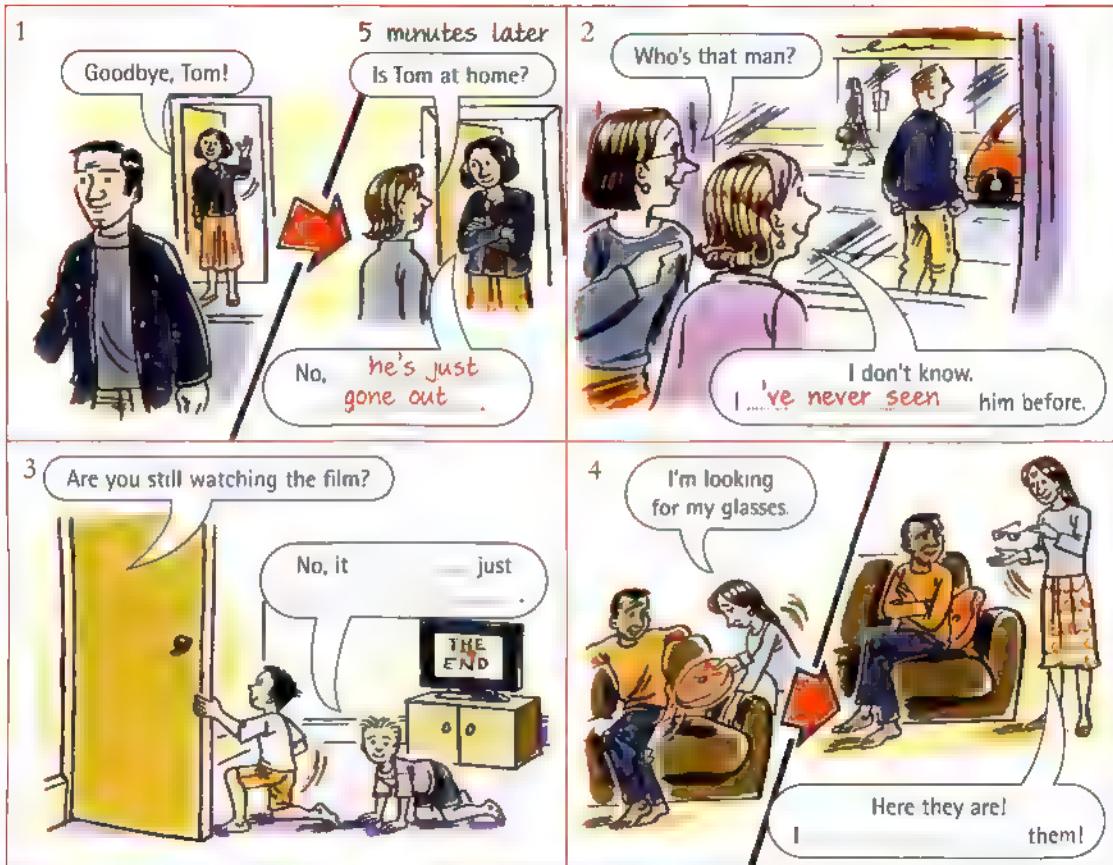
present continuous (I am working/driving etc.)  
past continuous (I was working/driving etc.)

- 1 You can turn off the television. I **'m not watching** (not/watch) it.
- 2 Last night Jenny **fell** (fall) asleep while she **was reading** (read).
- 3 Listen! Somebody **.....** (play) the piano.
- 4 'Have you got my key?' 'No, I **.....** (give) it back to you.'
- 5 David is very lazy. He **.....** (not/like) hard work.
- 6 Where **.....** (your parents / go) for their holidays last year?
- 7 I **.....** (see) Diane yesterday. She **.....** (drive) her new car.
- 8 A: **.....** (you/watch) television very much?  
B: No, I haven't got a television set.
- 9 A: What **.....** (you/do) at 6 o'clock last Sunday morning?  
B: I was in bed asleep.
- 10 Andy isn't at home very much. He **.....** (go) away a lot.
- 11 I **.....** (try) to find a job at the moment. It's very difficult.
- 12 I'm tired this morning. I **.....** (not/sleep) very well last night.

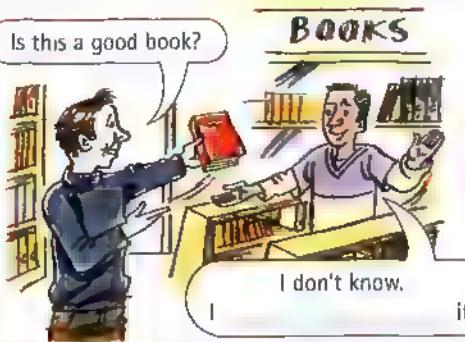
## present perfect (I have done / she has been etc.)

## Units 15–19

## 16 Look at the pictures and complete the sentences. Use the present perfect.



5 Is this a good book?

**BOOKS**

6 I'm looking for Julia.



7 More coffee?



8 ... to Sweden?



9 Hi. We ... later



10 Enjoy the party!



11 Paul was asleep in the armchair. He ... up.



12 How long ... here?



13 Do you know Alan?



14



## Additional exercises

### 17 Complete the sentences (1, 2 or 3 words).

- 1 Mark and Liz are married. They have been married for five years.
- 2 David has been watching TV since 5 o'clock.
- 3 Martin is at work. He ..... at work since 8.30.
- 4 'Have you just arrived in London?' 'No, I've been here ..... five days.'
- 5 I've known Helen ..... we were at school together.
- 6 'My brother lives in Los Angeles.' 'Really? How long ..... there?'
- 7 George has had the same job ..... 20 years.
- 8 Some friends of ours are staying with us at the moment. They ..... here since Monday.

### 18 Complete the sentences. Write about yourself.

- 1 I've never ..... ridden a horse.
- 2 I've been to London many times.
- 3 I've just .....
- 4 I've .....  
(once / twice / a few times / many times)
- 5 I haven't ..... yet.
- 6 I've never .....
- 7 I've ..... since .....
- 8 I've ..... for .....

---

### present perfect (I have done etc.) and past simple (I did etc.)

Units 18–20

### 19 Present perfect or past simple? Complete the sentences (positive or negative).

- 1 A: Do you like London?  
B: I don't know. I haven't been there.
- 2 A: Have you seen Kate?  
B: Yes, I saw her five minutes ago.
- 3 A: That's a nice sweater. Is it new?  
B: Yes, I ..... it last week.
- 4 A: Are you tired this morning?  
B: Yes, I ..... to bed late last night.
- 5 A: Do you want this newspaper, or can I have it?  
B: You can have it. I ..... it.
- 6 A: Are you enjoying your new job?  
B: I ..... yet. My first day is next Monday.
- 7 A: The weather isn't very nice today, is it?  
B: No, but it ..... nice yesterday.
- 8 A: Was Helen at the party on Saturday?  
B: I don't think so. I ..... her there.
- 9 A: Is your son still at school?  
B: No, he ..... school two years ago.
- 10 A: Is Silvia married?  
B: Yes, she ..... married for five years.
- 11 A: Have you heard of George Washington?  
B: Of course. He ..... the first President of the United States.
- 12 A: How long does it take to make a pizza?  
B: I don't know. I ..... a pizza.

## 20 Write sentences with the present perfect or past simple.

1 A: Have you been to Thailand?  
B: Yes, I went there last year. (I / go / there / last year)

2 A: Do you like London?  
B: I don't know. I've never been there. (I / never / there)

3 A: What time is Paul going out?  
B: ..... (he / already / go)

4 A: Has Catherine gone home?  
B: Yes, ..... (she / leave / at 4 o'clock)

5 A: New York is my favourite city.  
B: Is it? ..... ? (how many times / you / there?)

6 A: What are you doing this weekend?  
B: I don't know. ..... (I / not / decide / yet)

7 A: I can't find my address book. Have you seen it?  
B: ..... (it / on the table / last night)

8 A: Do you know the Japanese restaurant in Leeson Street?  
B: Yes, ..... (I / eat / there a few times)

9 A: Paula and Sue are here.  
B: Are they? ..... ? (what time / they / arrive?)

## 21 Present perfect or past simple? Complete the sentences.

1 A: Have you been ... to France?

B: Yes, many times.

A: When ..... the last time?

B: Two years ago.



2 A: Is this your car?

B: Yes, it is.

A: How long ..... it?B: It's new. I ..... it yesterday.

3 A: Where do you live?

B: In Harold Street.

A: How long ..... there?B: Five years. Before that  
in Mill Road.A: How long ..... in Mill Road?

B: About three years.



4 A: What do you do?

B: I work in a shop.

A: How long ..... there?

B: Nearly two years.

A: What ..... before that?B: I ..... a taxi driver.

**22 Write sentences about yourself.**

- 1 (yesterday morning) I was late for work yesterday morning.
- 2 (last night)
- 3 (yesterday afternoon)
- 4 (... days ago)
- 5 (last week)
- 6 (last year)

**present, past and present perfect**

**Units 3-20**

**23 Which is right?**

- 1 'Is Sue working? (C)' 'No, she's on holiday.'  
A Does Sue work? B Is working Sue? C Is Sue working? D Does work Sue?
- 2 'Where .....?' 'In a village near London.'  
A lives your uncle B does your uncle live C your uncle lives  
D does live your uncle
- 3 I speak Italian, but ..... French.  
A I speak not B I'm not speaking C I doesn't speak D I don't speak
- 4 'Where's Tom?' ' ..... a shower at the moment.'  
A He's having B He have C He has D He has had
- 5 Why ..... angry with me yesterday?  
A were you B was you C you were D have you been
- 6 My favourite film is *Cleo's Dream*. ..... it four times.  
A I'm seeing B I see C I was seeing D I've seen
- 7 I ..... out last night. I was too tired.  
A don't go B didn't went C didn't go D haven't gone
- 8 Liz is from Chicago. She ..... there all her life.  
A is living B has lived C lives D lived
- 9 My friend ..... for me when I arrived.  
A waited B has waited C was waiting D has been waiting
- 10 'How long ..... English?' 'Six months.'  
A do you learn B are you learning C you are learning  
D have you been learning
- 11 Paul is Canadian, but he lives in France. He has been there .....  
A for three years B since three years C three years ago D during three years
- 12 'What time .....?' 'About an hour ago.'  
A has Lisa phoned B Lisa has phoned C did Lisa phone D is Lisa phoning
- 13 What ..... when you saw her?  
A did Sue wear B was Sue wearing C has Sue worn D was wearing Sue
- 14 'Can you drive?' 'No, ..... a car, but I want to learn.'  
A I never drive B I'm never driving C I've never driven  
D I was never driving
- 15 I saw Helen at the station when I was going to work this morning, but she ..... me  
A didn't see B don't see C hasn't seen D didn't saw

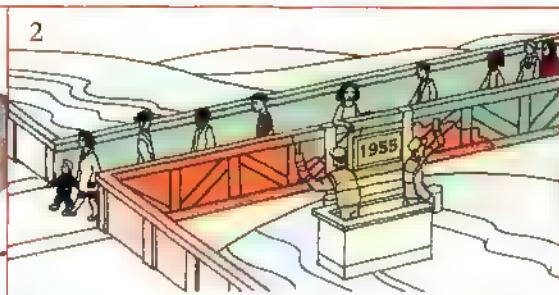
## passive

## Units 21–22, Appendix 1

## 24 Complete the sentences.



These houses **were built** (build) 20 years ago. Before that there was a cinema here, but the building ..... (damage) in a fire and had to ..... (knock down).



This bridge ..... (build) in 1955. It ..... (use) by hundreds of people every day. At the moment the bridge ..... (paint).



This street ..... (call) Wilton Street. It used to ..... (call) James Street, but the name ..... (change) a few years ago.



This is a bicycle factory. Bicycles ..... (make) here since 1961. It's the largest bicycle factory in the country. Thousands of bicycles ..... (produce) here every year.

## 25 Complete the sentences.

- 1 We ..... **were invited** (invite) to the party, but we didn't go.
- 2 The museum is very popular. Every year it ..... (visit) by thousands of people.
- 3 Many buildings ..... (damage) in the storm last week.
- 4 A new road is going to ..... (build) next year.
- 5 'Where's your jacket?' 'It ..... (clean). It will be ready tomorrow.'
- 6 She's famous now, but in a few years her name will ..... (forget).
- 7 'Shall I do the washing-up?' 'No, it ..... (already/do).'
- 8 Milk should ..... (keep) in a fridge.
- 9 ..... (you/ever/bite) by a snake?
- 10 My bag ..... (steal) from my car yesterday afternoon.

## 26 Write a new sentence with the same meaning.

- 1 Somebody has stolen my keys.
- 2 Somebody stole my car last week.
- 3 Somebody wants you on the phone.
- 4 Somebody has eaten all the bananas.
- 5 Somebody will repair the machine.
- 6 Somebody is watching us.
- 7 Somebody has to do the housework.

**My keys have been stolen.**

My car .....  
You .....  
All the .....  
The .....  
We .....  
The .....

### 27 Active or passive? Complete the sentences.

- 1 They are building (build) a new airport at the moment.
- 2 These shirts are clean now. They have been washed (wash).
- 3 'How did you fall?' 'Somebody pushed (push) me.'
- 4 'How did you fall?' 'I pushed (push).'
- 5 I can't find my bag. Somebody took (take) it!
- 6 My watch is broken. It is being repaired (repair) at the moment.
- 7 Who invented (invent) the camera?
- 8 When were the camera/invent (the camera/invent)?
- 9 These shirts are clean now. They were washed (wash).
- 10 These shirts are clean now. I washed (wash) them.
- 11 The letter was for me, so why were they sent (they/send) it to you?
- 12 The information will be sent (send) to you as soon as possible.

### future

### Units 25–28

### 28 Which is the best alternative?

- 1 We're having (B) a party next Sunday. I hope you can come.  
A We have    B We're having    C We'll have
- 2 Do you know about Karen? She leaves her job. She told me last week.  
A She leaves    B She's going to leave    C She'll leave
- 3 There's a programme on television that I want to watch. in five minutes.  
A It starts    B It's starting    C It will start
- 4 The weather is nice now, but I think it rains later.  
A it rains    B it's raining    C it will rain
- 5 'What do you do next weekend?' 'Nothing. I've got no plans.'  
A do you do    B are you doing    C will you do
- 6 'When you see Tina, can you ask her to phone me?' 'OK, I ask her.'  
A I ask    B I'm going to ask    C I'll ask
- 7 'What would you like to drink, tea or coffee?' 'I have tea, please.'  
A I have    B I'm going to have    C I'll have
- 8 Don't take that newspaper away. I read it.  
A I read    B I'm going to read    C I'll read
- 9 Rachel is ill, so she doesn't come to the party tomorrow night.  
A she doesn't come    B she isn't coming    C she won't come
- 10 I want to meet Sarah at the station. What time does her train arrive?  
A does her train arrive    B is her train going to arrive    C is her train arriving
- 11 'Will you be at home tomorrow evening?' 'No. I go out'  
A I go out    B I'm going out    C I'll go out
- 12 Am I going to phone you tomorrow?' 'Yes, OK.'  
A Do I phone    B Am I going to phone    C Shall I phone

## past, present and future

## Units 3–20, 25–28

## 29 Complete the sentences.

1 A: Did you go (you/go) out last night?  
 B: No, ..... (I/stay) at home.  
 A: What ..... (you/do)?  
 B: ..... (I/watch) television.  
 A: ..... (you/go) out tomorrow night?  
 B: Yes, ..... (I/go) to the cinema.  
 A: Which film ..... (you/see)?  
 B: ..... (I/not/know). ..... (I/not/decide) yet.

2 A: Are you on holiday here?  
 B: Yes, we are.  
 A How long ..... (you/be) here?  
 B: ..... (we/arrive) yesterday.  
 A: And how long ..... (you/stay)?  
 B: Until the end of next week.  
 A: And ..... (you/like) it here?  
 B: Yes, ..... (we/have) a wonderful time.



3 A: Oh, ..... (I/just/remember) –  
 (Karen/phone) while you were out.  
 B: ..... (she/always/phone) when I'm not here.  
 (she/leave) a message?  
 A: No, but ..... (she/want) you to call her back as soon as possible.  
 B: OK, ..... (I/phone) her now.  
 (you/know) her number?  
 A: It's in my address book. ..... (I/get) it for you.

4 A: ..... (I/go) out with Chris and Steve this evening.  
 (you/want) to come with us?  
 B: Yes, where ..... (you/go)?  
 A: To the Italian restaurant in North Street. ..... (you/ever/eat)  
 there?  
 B: Yes, ..... (I/be) there two or three times. In fact I  
 (go) there last night, but I'd love to go again!

5 A: ..... (I/lose) my glasses again.  
 (you/see) them?  
 B: ..... (you/wear) them  
 when ..... (I/come) in.  
 A: Well, ..... (I/not/wear)  
 them now, so where are they?  
 B: ..... (you/look) in the kitchen?  
 A: No, ..... (I/go) and look now.



## past, present and future

## Units 3–22, 25–28, 52, 54, 98, 105

30 Rachel is talking about her best friend, Carolyn. Put the verbs in the correct form.



Carolyn



Rachel

Carolyn is my best friend. I remember very well the first time (1) ..... (we/meet). It was our first day at secondary school, and (2) ..... (we/sit) next to each other for the first lesson. (3) ..... (we/not/know) any other students in our class, and so (4) ..... (we/become) friends. We found that (5) ..... (we/like) the same things, especially music and sport, and so (6) ..... (we/spend) a lot of time together.

(7) ..... (we/leave) school five years ago, but (8) ..... (we/meet) as often as we can. For the last six months Carolyn (9) ..... (be) in Mexico – at the moment (10) ..... (she/work) in a school as a teaching assistant. (11) ..... (she/come) back to England next month, and when (12) ..... (she/come) back, (13) ..... (we/have) lots of things to talk about. (14) ..... (it/be) really nice to see her again.

31 Nick and his friend Jon are travelling round the world. Read the emails between Nick and his parents, and put the verbs in the correct form.

Dear Mum and Dad

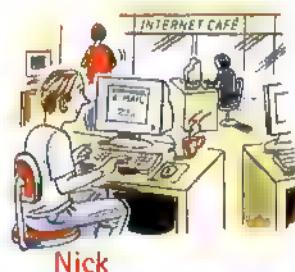
We're in Los Angeles, the first stop on our round-the-world trip! (1) ..... **We arrived** ..... (we/arrive) here yesterday, and now (2) ..... (we/stay) at a hotel near the airport. The flight was twelve hours, but (3) ..... (we/enjoy) it. (4) ..... (we/watch) some films and (5) ..... (sleep) a few hours, which is unusual for me – usually (6) ..... (I/not/sleep) well on planes.

Today is a rest day for us and (7) ..... (we/not/do) anything special, but tomorrow (8) ..... (we/go) to Hollywood (9) ..... (see) the film studios.

(10) ..... (we/not/decide) yet what to do after Los Angeles. Jon (11) ..... (want) to drive up the coast to San Francisco, but I'd prefer (12) ..... (go) south to San Diego.

I hope all is well with you – (13) ..... (I/send) you another email next week.

Love  
Nick



Nick



Dear Nick

Thanks for your mail. It's good to hear that (14) ..... (you/have) a good time. We're fine – Ellie and Jo (15) ..... (work) hard for their exams next month. Dad has been busy at work and last week (16) ..... (he/have) a lot of important meetings. He's a little tired – I think (17) ..... (he/need) a good holiday.

Keep in touch!

Love

Mum

A month later ...

Hi Mum and Dad

(18) ..... (we/be) in California for a month now. (19) ..... (we/get) back to Los Angeles yesterday after (20) ..... (see) many wonderful places. I think the place (21) ..... (I/like) most was Yosemite National Park – it's beautiful there and (22) ..... (we/go) cycling a lot. The day before (23) ..... (we/leave), Jon (24) ..... (have) an accident on his bike. Luckily (25) ..... (he/not/injure), but the bike (26) ..... (damage).

(27) ..... (we/change) our travel plans since my last message: now (28) ..... (we/leave) for Hawaii on Monday (not Tuesday). (29) ..... (we/stay) there for a week before (30) ..... (fly) to New Zealand. (31) ..... (that/be) different, I'm sure!

All the best to Ellie and Jo for their exams.

Love

Nick



Hi Nick

Have a good time in Hawaii! Ellie and Jo (32) ..... (finish) their exams yesterday – (33) ..... (I/let) you know when (34) ..... (we/get) the results.

We're all OK. Dad and I (35) ..... (look) forward to our holiday next month. (36) ..... (we/go) to Italy for two weeks – (37) ..... (we/send) you an email from there.

Take care!

Love

Mum

## 32 Which is correct?

- 1 Don't forget to switch (B) off the light before you go out.  
A switch    B to switch    C switching
- 2 It's late. I must ..... now.  
A go    B to go    C going
- 3 I'm sorry, but I haven't got time ..... to you now.  
A for talking    B to talk    C talking
- 4 Gary is always in the kitchen. He enjoys .....  
A cook    B to cook    C cooking
- 5 We've decided ..... away for a few days.  
A go    B to go    C going
- 6 You're making too much noise. Can you please stop ..... ?  
A shout    B to shout    C shouting
- 7 Would you like ..... to dinner on Sunday?  
A come    B to come    C coming
- 8 That bag is too heavy for you. Let me ..... you.  
A help    B to help    C helping
- 9 There's a swimming pool near my house. I go ..... every day.  
A to swim    B to swimming    C swimming
- 10 Did you use a dictionary ..... the letter?  
A to translate    B for translating    C for translate
- 11 I'd love ..... a car like yours.  
A have    B to have    C having
- 12 Could you ..... me with this bag, please?  
A help    B to help    C helping
- 13 I don't mind ..... here, but I'd prefer to sit by the window.  
A sit    B to sit    C sitting
- 14 Do you want ..... you?  
A that I help    B me to help    C me helping
- 15 I usually read the newspaper before ..... work.  
A start    B to start    C starting
- 16 I wasn't feeling very well, but the medicine made me ..... better.  
A feel    B to feel    C feeling
- 17 Shall I phone the restaurant ..... a table?  
A for reserve    B for reserving    C to reserve
- 18 Tom looked at me without ..... anything.  
A say    B saying    C to say

around the

## 33 Complete the sentences.



## Additional exercises

### 34 Write a/an or the if necessary. If a/an/the are not necessary, leave an empty space (-).

- 1 Who is the best player in your team?
- 2 I don't watch - television very often.
- 3 'Is there a bank near here?' 'Yes, at the end of this street.'
- 4 I can't ride ..... horse.
- 5 ..... sky is very clear tonight.
- 6 Do you live here, or are you ..... tourist?
- 7 What did you have for ..... lunch?
- 8 Who was ..... first President of ..... United States?
- 9 'What time is it?' 'I don't know. I haven't got ..... watch.'
- 10 I'm sorry, but I've forgotten your name. I can never remember ..... names.
- 11 What time is ..... next train to London?
- 12 Kate never sends ..... emails. She prefers to phone people.
- 13 'Where's Sue?' 'She's in ..... garden.'
- 14 Excuse me, I'm looking for ..... Majestic Hotel. Is it near here?
- 15 Gary was ill ..... last week, so he didn't go to ..... work.
- 16 Everest is ..... highest mountain in ..... world.
- 17 I usually listen to ..... radio while I'm having ..... breakfast.
- 18 I like ..... sport. My favourite sport is ..... basketball.
- 19 Julia is ..... doctor. Her husband is ..... art teacher.
- 20 My apartment is on ..... second floor. Turn left at ..... top of ..... stairs, and it's on ..... right.
- 21 After ..... dinner, we watched ..... television.
- 22 Last year we had ..... wonderful holiday in ..... south of ..... France.

### prepositions

### Units 103–108, 111

### 35 Write a preposition (in/for/by etc.).

- 1 Helen is studying law at university.
- 2 What is the longest river ..... Europe?
- 3 Is there anything ..... television this evening?
- 4 We arrived ..... the hotel after midnight.
- 5 'Where's Mike?' 'He's ..... holiday.'
- 6 Tom hasn't got up yet. He's still ..... bed.
- 7 Lisa is away. She's been away ..... Monday.
- 8 The next meeting is ..... 15 April.
- 9 I usually go to work ..... car.
- 10 There's too much sugar ..... my coffee.
- 11 Kevin lived in London ..... six months. He didn't like it very much.
- 12 Were there a lot of people ..... the party?
- 13 What are you doing ..... the moment? Are you working?
- 14 I don't know any of the people ..... this photograph.
- 15 The train was very slow. It stopped ..... every station.
- 16 I like this room. I like the pictures ..... the walls.
- 17 'Did you buy that picture?' 'No, it was given to me ..... a friend of mine.'
- 18 I'm going away ..... a few days. I'll be back ..... Thursday.
- 19 Silvia has gone ..... Italy. She's ..... Milan at the moment.
- 20 Emma left school ..... fifteen and got a job ..... a shop.

# Study guide

If you are not sure which units you need to study, use this study guide.

You have to decide which alternative (A, B, C etc.) is right. **SOMETIMES MORE THAN ONE ALTERNATIVE IS CORRECT.**

If you don't know (or if you are not sure) which alternatives are correct, study the unit (or units) on the right. You will find the correct sentence in the unit.

The key to this study guide is on page 314.

## IF YOU ARE NOT SURE WHICH IS RIGHT

### STUDY UNIT

#### Present

1.1 Can you close the window, please?  
A I cold    B I'm cold    C I have cold    D It has cold

1.2 Tom ..... in politics.  
A isn't interested    B not interested    C doesn't interested    D doesn't interest

1.3 ' ..... ?' 'No, she's out.'  
A Is at home your mother    B Does your mother at home  
C Is your mother at home    D Are your mother at home

1.4 These postcards are nice.  
A How much are they?    B How many are they?    C How much they are?  
D How much is they?

1.5 Look, there's Sarah. ..... a brown coat.  
A She wearing    B She has wearing    C She is wearing    D She's wearing

1.6 You can turn off the television. ..... it.  
A I'm not watch    B I'm not watching    C I not watching  
D I don't watching

1.7 ' ..... today?' 'No, he's at home.'  
A Is working Paul    B Is work Paul    C Is Paul work    D Is Paul working

1.8 Look, there's Emily!  
A Where she is going?    B Where she go?    C Where's she going?  
D Where she going?

1.9 The earth ..... round the sun.  
A going    B go    C goes    D does go    E is go

1.10 We ..... away at weekends.  
A often go    B go often    C often going    D are often go

1.11 We ..... television very often.  
A not watch    B doesn't watch    C don't watch    D don't watching  
E watch not

1.12 ' ..... on Sundays?' 'No, not usually.'  
A Do you work    B Are you work    C Does you work  
D Do you working    E Work you

1.13 I don't understand this sentence. What .....?  
A mean this word    B means this word    C does mean this word  
D does this word mean    E this word means

## IF YOU ARE NOT SURE WHICH IS RIGHT

STUDY  
UNIT

1.14 Please be quiet. ....  
**A** I working.    **B** I work.    **C** I'm working.    **D** I'm work.

1.15 Tom ..... a shower every morning.  
**A** has    **B** having    **C** is having    **D** have

1.16 What ..... at the weekend?  
**A** do you usually    **B** are you usually doing    **C** are you usually do  
**D** do you usually do    **E** you do usually

1.17 Sarah isn't feeling well. ..... a headache.  
**A** She have    **B** She have got    **C** She has    **D** She's got

1.18 Tracey and Jeff ..... any children.  
**A** don't have    **B** doesn't have    **C** no have    **D** haven't got    **E** hasn't got

## Past

2.1 The weather ..... last week  
**A** is good    **B** was good    **C** were good    **D** good    **E** had good

2.2 Why ..... late this morning?  
**A** you was    **B** did you    **C** was you    **D** you were    **E** were you

2.3 Terry ..... in a bank from 1996 to 2003.  
**A** work    **B** working    **C** works    **D** worked    **E** was work

2.4 Caroline ..... to the cinema three times last week.  
**A** go    **B** went    **C** goes    **D** got    **E** was

2.5 I ..... television yesterday.  
**A** didn't watch    **B** didn't watched    **C** wasn't watched    **D** don't watch  
**E** didn't watching

2.6 'How ..... ?' 'I don't know. I didn't see it.'  
**A** happened the accident    **B** did happen the accident  
**C** does the accident happen    **D** did the accident happen  
**E** the accident happened

2.7 What ..... at 11.30 yesterday?  
**A** were you doing    **B** was you doing    **C** you were doing    **D** were you do  
**E** you was doing

2.8 Jack was reading a book when the phone .....  
**A** ringing    **B** ring    **C** rang    **D** was ringing    **E** was ring

2.9 I saw Lucy and Steve this morning. They ..... at the bus stop.  
**A** waiting    **B** waited    **C** were waiting    **D** was waiting    **E** were waited

## Present perfect

3.1 'Where's Rebecca?' '..... to bed.'  
**A** She is gone    **B** She has gone    **C** She goes    **D** She have gone  
**E** She's gone

3.2 'Are Diane and Paul here?' 'No, they .....'  
**A** don't arrive yet    **B** have already arrived    **C** haven't already arrived  
**D** haven't arrived yet

## IF YOU ARE NOT SURE WHICH IS RIGHT

STUDY  
UNIT

3.3 My sister ..... by plane.  
**A** has never travel    **B** has never travelled    **C** is never travelled  
**D** has never been travelled    **E** have never travelled

3.4 ..... that woman before, but I can't remember where.  
**A** I see    **B** I seen    **C** I've saw    **D** I've seen    **E** I've seeing

3.5 'How long ..... married?' 'Since 1998.'  
**A** you are    **B** you have been    **C** has you been    **D** are you  
**E** have you been

3.6 'Do you know Lisa?' 'Yes, ..... her for a long time.'  
**A** I knew    **B** I've known    **C** I know    **D** I am knowing

3.7 Richard has been in Canada .....  
**A** for six months    **B** since six months    **C** six months ago    **D** in six months

3.8 'When did Tom go out?' .....  
**A** For ten minutes.    **B** Since ten minutes.    **C** Ten minutes ago.  
**D** In ten minutes.

3.9 We ..... a holiday last year.  
**A** don't have    **B** haven't had    **C** hasn't had    **D** didn't have  
**E** didn't had

3.10 Where ..... on Sunday afternoon? I couldn't find you.  
**A** you were    **B** you have been    **C** was you    **D** have you been  
**E** were you

**Passive**

4.1 This house ..... 100 years ago.  
**A** is built    **B** is building    **C** was building    **D** was built    **E** built

4.2 We ..... to the party last week.  
**A** didn't invite    **B** didn't invited    **C** weren't invited    **D** wasn't invited  
**E** haven't been invited

4.3 'Where ..... born?' 'In Cairo.'  
**A** you are    **B** you were    **C** was you    **D** are you    **E** were you

4.4 My car is at the garage. It .....  
**A** is being repaired    **B** is repairing    **C** have been repaired    **D** repaired  
**E** repairs

4.5 I can't find my keys. I think .....  
**A** they've been stolen    **B** they are stolen    **C** they've stolen  
**D** they're being stolen

**Verb forms**

5.1 It ..... , so we didn't need an umbrella.  
**A** wasn't rained    **B** wasn't rain    **C** didn't raining    **D** wasn't raining

5.2 Somebody ..... this window.  
**A** has broke    **B** has broken    **C** has breaked    **D** has break

## IF YOU ARE NOT SURE WHICH IS RIGHT

## Future

6.1 Andrew ..... tennis tomorrow.  
**A** is playing    **B** play    **C** plays    **D** is play    **E**

6.2 ..... out tonight?  
**A** Are you going    **B** Are you go    **C** Do you go    **D** Go you    **E** Do you going

6.3 'What time is the concert tonight?' 'It ..... at 7.30.'  
**A** is start    **B** is starting    **C** starts    **D** start    **E** starting

6.4 What ..... to the wedding next week?  
**A** are you wearing    **B** are you going to wear    **C** do you wear  
**D** you are going to wear

6.5 I think Kelly ..... the exam.  
**A** passes    **B** will pass    **C** will be pass    **D** will passing

6.6 ..... to the cinema on Saturday. Do you want to come with us?  
**A** We go    **B** We'll go    **C** We're going    **D** We will going

6.7 '..... you tomorrow, OK?' 'OK, bye.'  
**A** I phone    **B** I phoning    **C** I'm phoning    **D** I'll phone

6.8 There's a good film on TV tonight. ..... it.  
**A** I watch    **B** I'll watch    **C** I'm going to watch    **D** I'll watching

6.9 It's a nice day. ..... for a walk?  
**A** Do we go    **B** Shall we go    **C** Are we go    **D** We go    **E** Go we

## Modals, imperative etc.

7.1 ..... to the cinema this evening, but I'm not sure.  
**A** I'll go    **B** I'm going    **C** I may go    **D** I might go

7.2 '..... here?' 'Yes, of course.'  
**A** Can I sit    **B** Do I sit    **C** May I sit    **D** Can I to sit

7.3 I'm having a party next week, but Paul and Rachel .....  
**A** can't come    **B** can't to come    **C** can't coming    **D** couldn't come

7.4 Before Maria came to Britain, she ..... understand much English.  
**A** can    **B** can't    **C** not    **D** couldn't    **E** doesn't

7.5 We ..... walk home last night. There were no buses.  
**A** have to    **B** had to    **C** must    **D** must to    **E** must have

7.6 I ..... go yet. I can stay a little longer.  
**A** must    **B** mustn't    **C** must not    **D** don't need    **E** don't need to

7.7 It's a good film. You ..... go and see it.  
**A** should to    **B** ought to    **C** ought    **D** should    **E** need

7.8 What time ..... go to the dentist tomorrow?  
**A** you must    **B** you have to    **C** have you to    **D** do you have to

7.9 We ..... wait long for the bus — it came in a few minutes.  
**A** don't have to    **B** hadn't to    **C** didn't have to    **D** didn't had to    **E** mustn't

**IF YOU ARE NOT SURE WHICH IS RIGHT****STUDY  
UNIT**

7.10 '..... some coffee?' 'No, thank you.'  
**A Are you liking    B You like    C Would you like    D Do you like**

7.11 Please ..... Stay here with me.  
**A don't go    B you no go    C go not    D you don't go**

7.12 Dave ..... in a factory. Now he works in a supermarket.  
**A working    B works    C worked    D use to work    E used to work**

**There and it**

8.1 Excuse me, ..... a hotel near here?  
**A has there    B is there    C there is    D is it**

8.2 ..... a lot of accidents on this road. It's very dangerous.  
**A Have    B It has    C There have    D They are    E There are**

8.3 I was hungry when I got home, but ..... anything to eat.  
**A there wasn't    B there weren't    C it wasn't    D there hasn't been**

8.4 ..... three kilometres from our house to the city centre.  
**A It's    B It has    C There is    D There are**

8.5 ..... true that you're going away?  
**A Is there    B Is it    C Is    D Are you**

**Auxiliary verbs**

9.1 I haven't got a car, but my sister .....  
**A have    B is    C has    D hasn't    E has got**

9.2 I don't like hot weather, but Sue .....  
**A does    B doesn't    C do    D does like    E likes**

9.3 'Nicole got married last week.' '..... Really?'  
**A Is she?    B Got she?    C Did she?    D Has she?**

9.4 You haven't met my mother, .....?  
**A haven't you    B have you    C did you    D you have    E you haven't**

9.5 Bill doesn't watch TV. He doesn't read newspapers .....  
**A too    B either    C neither    D never**

9.6 'I'd like to go to Australia.' '.....'  
**A So do I.    B So am I.    C So would I.    D Neither do I.**  
**E So I would.**

9.7 Sue ..... much at weekends.  
**A don't    B doesn't    C don't do    D doesn't do**

**Questions**

10.1 'When ..... ?' 'I'm not sure. More than 100 years ago.'  
**A did the telephone invent    B has the telephone invented**  
**C was invented the telephone    D was the telephone invented**  
**E the telephone was invented**

10.2 'I broke my finger last week.' 'How ..... that?'  
**A did you    B you did    C you did do    D did you do**

## IF YOU ARE NOT SURE WHICH IS RIGHT

STUDY  
UNIT

10.3 Why ..... me last night? I was waiting for you to phone.  
**A** didn't you phone    **B** you not phone    **C** you don't phone  
**D** you didn't phone

10.4 'Who ..... in this house?' 'I don't know.'  
**A** lives    **B** does live    **C** does lives    **D** living

10.5 What ..... when you told him the story?  
**A** said Paul    **B** did Paul say    **C** Paul said    **D** did Paul said

10.6 'Tom's father is in hospital.' '  
**A** In which hospital he is?    **B** In which hospital he is in?  
**C** Which hospital he is in?    **D** Which hospital is he in?

10.7 Did you have a good holiday?  
**A** How was the weather like?    **B** What was the weather like?  
**C** What the weather was like?    **D** Was the weather like?

10.8 ..... taller – Joe or Gary?  
**A** Who is    **B** What is    **C** Which is    **D** Who has

10.9 There are four umbrellas here. ..... is yours?  
**A** What    **B** Who    **C** Which    **D** How    **E** Which one

10.10 How long ..... to cross the Atlantic by ship?  
**A** is it    **B** does it need    **C** does it take    **D** does it want

10.11 I don't remember what ..... at the party.  
**A** Kate was wearing    **B** was wearing Kate    **C** was Kate wearing

10.12 'Do you know ..... ?' 'Yes, I think so.'  
**A** if Jack is at home    **B** is Jack at home    **C** whether Jack is at home  
**D** that Jack is at home

## Reported speech

11.1 I saw Steve a week ago. He said that ..... me, but he didn't.  
**A** he phone    **B** he phones    **C** he'll phone    **D** he's going to phone  
**E** he would phone

11.2 'Why did Tim go to bed so early?' 'He ..... ?'  
**A** said he was tired    **B** said that he was tired    **C** said me he was tired  
**D** told me he was tired    **E** told that he was tired

## -ing and to ...

12.1 You shouldn't ..... so hard.  
**A** working    **B** work    **C** to work    **D** worked

12.2 It's late. I ..... now.  
**A** must to go    **B** have go    **C** have to going    **D** have to go

12.3 Tina has decided ..... her car.  
**A** sell    **B** to sell    **C** selling    **D** to selling

12.4 I don't mind ..... early.  
**A** get up    **B** to get up    **C** getting up    **D** to getting up

## IF YOU ARE NOT SURE WHICH IS RIGHT

STUDY  
UNIT

12.5 Do you like ..... early?  
 A get up    B to get up    C getting up    D to getting up

12.6 Do you want ..... you some money?  
 A me lend    B me lending    C me to lend    D that I lend

12.7 He's very funny. He makes .....  
 A me laugh    B me laughing    C me to laugh    D that I laugh

12.8 Paula went to the shop ..... a newspaper.  
 A for get    B for to get    C for getting    D to get    E get

## Go, get, do, make and have

13.1 It's a nice day. Let's go .....  
 A for a swim    B on a swim    C to swimming    D swimming

13.2 I'm sorry your mother is ill. I hope she ..... better soon.  
 A has    B makes    C gets    D goes

13.3 Kate ..... the car and drove away.  
 A went into    B went in    C got in    D got into

13.4 'Shall I open the window?' 'No, it's OK. I'll ..... it.'  
 A do    B make    C get    D open

13.5 I'm sorry, I ..... a mistake.  
 A did    B made    C got    D had

13.6 ' ..... a good time in London?' 'Yes, I really enjoyed it.'  
 A Have you    B Had you    C Do you have    D Did you have

## Pronouns and possessives

14.1 I don't want this book. You can have .....  
 A it    B them    C her    D him

14.2 Sue and Kevin are going to the cinema. Do you want to go with .....?  
 A her    B they    C them    D him

14.3 I know Donna, but I don't know ..... husband.  
 A their    B his    C she    D her

14.4 Oxford is famous for ..... university.  
 A his    B its    C it's    D their

14.5 I didn't have an umbrella, so Helen gave me .....  
 A her    B hers    C her umbrella    D she's

14.6 I went out to meet a friend of .....  
 A mine    B my    C me    D I    E myself

14.7 We had a good holiday. We enjoyed .....  
 A us    B our    C ours    D ourself    E ourselves

14.8 Kate and Helen are good friends. They know ..... well.  
 A each other    B them    C themselves    D theirselves

## IF YOU ARE NOT SURE WHICH IS RIGHT

STUDY  
UNIT

14.9 Have you met ..... ?  
**A** the wife of Mr Black    **B** Mr Black wife  
**D** Mr Black's wife    **E** the Mr Black's wife

14.10 Have you seen ..... ?  
**A** the car of my parents    **B** my parent's car  
**D** my parents car

**A and the**

15.1 I'm going to buy .....  
**A** hat and umbrella    **B** a hat and a umbrella  
**D** an hat and an umbrella

15.2 'What's your job?' .....  
**A** I dentist.    **B** I'm a dentist.    **C** I'm dentist.    **D** I do dentist.

15.3 I'm going shopping. I need .....  
**A** some new jeans    **B** a new jeans    **C** a new pair of jeans  
**D** a new pair jeans

15.4 I like the people here. ..... very friendly.  
**A** She is    **B** They are    **C** They is    **D** It is    **E** He is

15.5 We can't get into the house without .....  
**A** some key    **B** a key    **C** key

15.6 I'd like ..... about hotels in London.  
**A** some information    **B** some informations    **C** an information

15.7 We enjoyed our holiday. ..... was very nice.  
**A** Hotel    **B** A hotel    **C** An hotel    **D** The hotel

15.8 My house is at .....  
**A** end of street    **B** end of the street    **C** the end of the street  
**D** the end of street

15.9 What did you have for ..... ?  
**A** the breakfast    **B** breakfast    **C** a breakfast

15.10 I finish ..... at 5 o'clock every day.  
**A** the work    **B** work    **C** a work

15.11 I'm tired. I'm going .....  
**A** in bed    **B** in the bed    **C** to a bed    **D** to the bed    **E** to bed

15.12 We don't eat ..... very often.  
**A** the meat    **B** some meat    **C** a meat    **D** meat

15.13 ..... is in New York.  
**A** The Times Square    **B** Times Square

15.14 My friends are staying at .....  
**A** the Regent Hotel    **B** Regent Hotel

## IF YOU ARE NOT SURE WHICH IS RIGHT

STUDY  
UNIT

## Determiners and pronouns

16.1 'I'm going on holiday next week.' 'Oh, ..... nice.'  
**A** it's    **B** this is    **C** that's

16.2 'Is there a bank near here?' 'Yes, there's ..... at the end of this street.'  
**A** some    **B** it    **C** one    **D** a one

16.3 This cup is dirty. Can I have .....?  
**A** clean one    **B** a clean one    **C** clean    **D** a clean

16.4 I'm going shopping. I'm going to buy ..... clothes.  
**A** any    **B** some

16.5 'Where's your luggage?' 'I haven't got .....'  
**A** one    **B** some    **C** any

16.6 Tracey and Jeff .....  
**A** have got no children    **B** haven't got no children    **C** haven't got any children  
**D** have got any children

16.7 'How much money have you got?' '.....'  
**A** No.    **B** No-one.    **C** Any.    **D** None.

16.8 There is ..... in the room. It's empty.  
**A** anybody    **B** nobody    **C** anyone    **D** no-one

16.9 'What did you say?' '.....'  
**A** Nothing.    **B** Nobody.    **C** Anything.    **D** Not anything.

16.10 I'm hungry. I want .....  
**A** something for eat    **B** something to eat    **C** something for eating

16.11 Bill watches TV for about two hours .....  
**A** all evening    **B** all evenings    **C** all the evenings    **D** every evenings  
**E** every evening

16.12 ..... friends.  
**A** Everybody need    **B** Everybody needs    **C** Everyone need    **D** Everyone needs

16.13 ..... children like playing.  
**A** Most    **B** The most    **C** Most of    **D** The most of

16.14 I like ..... those pictures.  
**A** both    **B** both of    **C** either    **D** either of

16.15 I haven't read ..... these books.  
**A** neither    **B** neither of    **C** either    **D** either of

16.16 Have you got ..... friends?  
**A** a lot of    **B** much    **C** many    **D** much of    **E** many of

16.17 We like films, so we go to the cinema .....  
**A** a lot of    **B** much    **C** many    **D** a lot

16.18 There were ..... people in the theatre. It was nearly empty.  
**A** a little    **B** few    **C** little    **D** a few of

16.19 They have ..... money, so they're not poor.  
**A** a little    **B** a few    **C** few    **D** little    **E** little of

## IF YOU ARE NOT SURE WHICH IS RIGHT

## Adjectives and adverbs

17.1 I don't speak any .....  
 A foreign languages    B languages foreign    C languages foreigns

17.2 He ate his dinner very .....  
 A quick    B quicker    C quickly

17.3 You speak English very .....  
 A good    B fluent    C well    D slow

17.4 Helen wants .....  
 A a more big car    B a car more big    C a car bigger    D a bigger car

17.5 'Do you feel better today?' 'No, I feel .....'  
 A good    B worse    C more bad    D more worse

17.6 Athens is older ..... Rome.  
 A as    B than    C that    D of

17.7 I can run faster .....  
 A than him    B that he can    C than he can    D as he can    E as he

17.8 Tennis isn't ..... football.  
 A popular as    B popular than    C as popular than    D so popular that  
 E as popular as

17.9 The weather today is the same ..... yesterday.  
 A as    B that    C than    D like

17.10 The Europa Hotel is ..... in the city.  
 A the more expensive hotel    B the most expensive hotel  
 C the hotel most expensive    D the hotel the more expensive  
 E the hotel more expensive

17.11 The film was very bad. I think it's the ..... film I've ever seen.  
 A worse    B baddest    C most bad    D worst    E more worse

17.12 Why don't you buy a car? You've got .....  
 A enough money    B money enough    C enough of money

17.13 Is your English ..... a conversation?  
 A enough good to have    B good enough for have    C enough good for  
 D good enough to have

17.14 I'm ..... out.  
 A too tired for go    B too much tired for going    C too tired to go  
 D too much tired to go

## Word order

18.1 Sue is interested in the news. She .....  
 A reads every day a newspaper    B reads a newspaper every day  
 C every day reads a newspaper

18.2 ..... coffee in the morning.  
 A I drink always    B Always I drink    C I always drink

STUDY  
UNIT

## IF YOU ARE NOT SURE WHICH IS RIGHT

18.3 ..... during the day.  
**A** They are at home never    **B** They are never at home  
**C** They never are at home    **D** Never they are at home

18.4 'Where's Emma?' 'She ..... !'  
**A** isn't here yet    **B** isn't here already    **C** isn't here still

18.5 I locked the door and I gave ..... .  
**A** Sarah the keys    **B** to Sarah the keys    **C** the keys Sarah  
**D** the keys to Sarah

## Conjunctions and clauses

19.1 I can't talk to you now. I'll talk to you later when ..... more time.  
**A** I'll have    **B** I had    **C** I have    **D** I'm going to have

19.2 ..... late this evening, don't wait for me.  
**A** If I'm    **B** If I'll be    **C** When I'm    **D** When I'll be

19.3 I don't know the answer. If I ..... the answer, I'd tell you.  
**A** know    **B** would know    **C** have known    **D** knew

19.4 I like this jacket. ..... it if it wasn't so expensive.  
**A** I buy    **B** I'll buy    **C** I bought    **D** I'd bought    **E** I'd buy

19.5 Emma lives in a house ..... is 400 years old.  
**A** who    **B** that    **C** which    **D** it    **E** what

19.6 The people ..... work in the office are very friendly.  
**A** who    **B** that    **C** they    **D** which    **E** what

19.7 Did you find the book ..... ?  
**A** who you wanted    **B** that you wanted    **C** what you wanted  
**D** you wanted    **E** you wanted it

19.8 I met ..... can speak six languages.  
**A** a woman who    **B** a woman which    **C** a woman    **D** a woman she

## Prepositions

20.1 Bye! I'll see you ..... .  
**A** until Friday    **B** at Friday    **C** in Friday    **D** on Friday

20.2 Hurry! The train leaves ..... five minutes.  
**A** at    **B** on    **C** from    **D** after    **E** in

20.3 'How long will you be away?' ' ..... Monday.'  
**A** On    **B** To    **C** Until    **D** Till    **E** Since

20.4 We played tennis yesterday. We played ..... two hours.  
**A** in    **B** for    **C** since    **D** during

20.5 I always have breakfast before ..... to work.  
**A** I go    **B** go    **C** to go    **D** going

20.6 Write your name ..... the top of the page.  
**A** at    **B** on    **C** in    **D** to

## IF YOU ARE NOT SURE WHICH IS RIGHT

STUDY  
UNIT

20.7 There are a lot of apples ..... those trees.  
**A at    B on    C in    D to**

20.8 What's the largest city ..... the world?  
**A at    B on    C in    D of**

20.9 The office is ..... the first floor.  
**A at    B on    C in    D to**

20.10 I met a lot of people ..... the party.  
**A on    B to    C in    D at**

20.11 I want to go ..... Italy next year.  
**A at    B on    C in    D to**

20.12 What time did you arrive ..... the hotel?  
**A at    B on    C in    D to**

20.13 'Where is David in this picture?' 'He's ..... Barbara.'  
**A at front of    B in the front of    C in front of    D in front from**

20.14 I jumped ..... the wall into the garden.  
**A on    B through    C across    D over    E above**

20.15 Jane isn't at work this week. She's ..... holiday.  
**A on    B in    C for    D to    E at**

20.16 Do you like travelling ..... ?  
**A with train    B with the train    C in train    D on train    E by train**

20.17 I'm not very good ..... telling stories.  
**A on    B with    C at    D in    E for**

20.18 Tom left without ..... goodbye.  
**A say    B saying    C to say    D that he said**

20.19 I'm going to phone ..... this evening.  
**A with my parents    B to my parents    C at my parents    D my parents**

20.20 'Do you like eating in restaurants?' 'It depends ..... the restaurant.'  
**A in    B at    C of    D on    E over**

## Phrasal verbs

21.1 The car stopped and a woman got ..... .  
**A off    B down    C out    D out of**

21.2 It was cold, so I ..... .  
**A put on my coat    B put my coat on    C put the coat on me  
D put me the coat on**

21.3 I've got Rachel's keys. I have to ..... to her.  
**A give back    B give them back    C give back them    D give it back**

# Key to Exercises

## UNIT 1

1  
2 they're  
3 it isn't / it's not  
4 that's  
5 I'm not  
6 you aren't / you're not

### 1.2

2 'm/am      6 are  
3 is            7 is ... are  
4 are          8 'm/am ... is  
5 's/is

### 1.3

2 I'm / I am  
3 He's / He is  
4 they're / they are  
5 It's / It is  
6 You're / You are  
7 She's / She is  
8 Here's / Here is

### 1.4

*Example answers:*  
1 My name is Robert.  
2 I'm from Australia.  
3 I'm 25.  
4 I'm a gardener.  
5 My favourite colours are black and white.  
6 I'm interested in plants.

### 1.5

2 They're / They are cold.  
3 He's / He is hot.  
4 He's / He is afraid.  
5 They're / They are hungry.  
6 She's / She is angry.

### 1.6

2 It's/It is windy today. or It isn't/It's not windy today.  
3 My hands are cold. or My hands aren't/are not cold.  
4 Brazil is a very big country.  
5 Diamonds aren't/are not cheap.  
6 Toronto isn't/is not in the US.  
8 I'm/I am hungry. or I'm not/I am not hungry.

9 I'm/I am a good swimmer. or I'm not/I am not a good swimmer.  
10 I'm/I am interested in football. or I'm not/I am not interested in football

## UNIT 2

### 2.1

2 F            6 E  
3 H            7 B  
4 C            8 I  
5 A            9 D

### 2.2

3 Is your job interesting?  
4 Are the shops open today?  
5 Where are you from?  
6 Are you interested in sport?  
7 Is the post office near here?  
8 Are your children at school?  
9 Why are you late?

### 2.3

2 Where's / Where is  
3 How old are  
4 How much are  
5 What's / What is  
6 Who's / Who is  
7 What colour are

### 2.4

2 Are you American?  
3 How old are you?  
4 Are you a teacher?  
5 Are you married?  
6 Is your wife a lawyer?  
7 Where's/Where is she from?  
8 What's/What is her name?  
9 How old is she?

### 2.5

2 Yes, I am. or No, I'm not.  
3 Yes, it is. or No, it isn't. / No, it's not.  
4 Yes, they are. or No, they aren't. / No, they're not.  
5 Yes, it is. or No, it isn't. / No, it's not.  
6 Yes, I am. or No, I'm not.

## UNIT 3

### 3.1

2 's/is waiting  
3 're/are playing  
4 He's/He is lying  
5 They're/They are having  
6 She's/She is sitting

### 3.2

2 's/is cooking  
3 're/are standing  
4 's/is swimming  
5 're/are staying  
6 's/is having  
7 're/are building  
8 'm/am going

### 3.3

3 She's/She is sitting on the floor.  
4 She isn't/She's not reading a book.  
5 She isn't/She's not playing the piano.  
6 She's/She is laughing.  
7 She's/She is wearing a hat.  
8 She isn't/She's not writing a letter.

### 3.4

3 I'm sitting on a chair. or I'm not sitting on a chair.  
4 I'm eating. or I'm not eating.  
5 It's raining. or It isn't raining. / It's not raining.  
6 I'm learning English.  
7 I'm listening to music. or I'm not listening to music.  
8 The sun is shining. or The sun isn't shining.  
9 I'm wearing shoes. or I'm not wearing shoes.  
10 I'm not reading a newspaper.

## UNIT 4

### 4.1

2 Are you going now?  
3 Is it raining?  
4 Are you enjoying the film?  
5 Is that clock working?  
6 Are you waiting for a bus?

## Key to Exercises

### 4.2

- 2 Where is she going?
- 3 What are you eating?
- 4 Why are you crying?
- 5 What are they looking at?
- 6 Why is he laughing?

### 4.3

- 3 Are you listening to me?
- 4 Where are your friends going?
- 5 Are your parents watching television?
- 6 What is Jessica cooking?
- 7 Why are you looking at me?
- 8 Is the bus coming?

### 4.4

- 2 Yes, I am. *or* No, I'm not.
- 3 Yes, I am. *or* No, I'm not.
- 4 Yes, it is. *or* No, it isn't. / No, it's not.
- 5 Yes, I am. *or* No, I'm not.
- 6 Yes, I am. *or* No, I'm not.

## UNIT 5

### 5.1

2 thinks	5 has
3 flies	6 finishes
4 dances	

### 5.2

2 live	5 They go
3 She eats	6 He sleeps
4 He plays	

### 5.3

2 open	7 costs
3 closes	8 cost
4 teaches	9 boils
5 meet	10 like ... likes
6 washes	

### 5.4

- 2 I never go to the cinema.
- 3 Martina always works hard.
- 4 Children usually like chocolate.
- 5 Julia always enjoys parties.
- 6 I often forget people's names.
- 7 Tim never watches television.
- 8 We usually have dinner at 7.30.
- 9 Jenny always wears nice clothes.

### 5.5

*Example answers:*

- 2 I sometimes read in bed.
- 3 I often get up before 7 o'clock.
- 4 I never go to work by bus.
- 5 I usually drink two cups of coffee in the morning.

## UNIT 6

### 6.1

- 2 Jane doesn't play the piano very well.
- 3 They don't know my phone number.
- 4 We don't work very hard.
- 5 He doesn't have a bath every day.
- 6 You don't do the same thing every day.

### 6.2

- 2 Kate doesn't like classical music.  
I like (*or* I don't like) classical music.
- 3 Ben and Sophie don't like boxing.  
Kate likes boxing.  
I like (*or* I don't like) boxing.
- 4 Ben and Sophie like horror films.  
Kate doesn't like horror films.  
I like (*or* I don't like) horror films.

### 6.3

*Example answers:*

- 2 I never go to the theatre.
- 3 I don't ride a bicycle very often.
- 4 I never eat in restaurants.
- 5 I often travel by train.

### 6.4

- 2 doesn't use
- 3 don't go
- 4 doesn't wear
- 5 don't know
- 6 doesn't cost
- 7 don't see

### 6.5

- 3 don't know
- 4 doesn't talk
- 5 drinks
- 6 don't believe
- 7 like
- 8 doesn't eat

## UNIT 7

### 7.1

- 2 Do you play tennis?
- 3 Does Lucy live near here?
- 4 Do Tom's friends play tennis? / Do they play tennis?
- 5 Does your brother speak English? / Does he speak English?
- 6 Do you do yoga every morning?
- 7 Does Paul often go away? / Does he often go away?
- 8 Do you want to be famous?
- 9 Does Anna work hard? / Does she work hard?

### 7.2

- 3 How often do you watch TV?
- 4 What do you want for dinner?
- 5 Do you like football?
- 6 Does your brother like football?
- 7 What do you do in your free time?
- 8 Where does your sister work?
- 9 Do you often go to the cinema?
- 10 What does this word mean?
- 11 Does it often snow here?
- 12 What time do you usually go to bed?
- 13 How much does it cost to phone New York?
- 14 What do you usually have for breakfast?

### 7.3

- 2 Do you enjoy / Do you like
- 3 do you start
- 4 Do you work
- 5 do you go
- 6 does he do
- 7 does he teach
- 8 Does he enjoy / Does he like

### 7.4

- 2 Yes, I do. *or* No, I don't.
- 3 Yes, I do. *or* No, I don't.
- 4 Yes, it does. *or* No, it doesn't.
- 5 Yes, I do. *or* No, I don't.

## UNIT 8

## 8.1

2 No, she isn't.  
Yes, she does.  
She's playing the piano.  
3 Yes, he does.  
Yes, he is.  
He's cleaning a window.  
4 No, they aren't.  
Yes, they do.  
They teach.

## 8.2

2 don't      6 do  
3 are          7 does  
4 does        8 doesn't  
5 's/is ... don't

## 8.3

4 is singing  
5 She wants  
6 do you read  
7 you're sitting  
8 I don't understand  
9 I'm going ... Are you coming  
10 does your father finish  
11 I'm not listening  
12 He's/He is cooking  
13 doesn't usually drive ... usually walks  
14 doesn't like ... She prefers

## UNIT 9

## 9.1

2 he's got  
3 they've got  
4 she hasn't got  
5 it's got  
6 I haven't got

## 9.2

2 He's got a computer. or He has a computer.  
3 He hasn't got a dog. or He doesn't have a dog.  
4 He hasn't got a mobile phone. or He doesn't have a mobile phone.  
5 He's got a watch. or He has a watch.  
6 He's got two brothers and a sister. or He has two brothers and a sister.  
7 I've got a computer. / I have a computer. or I haven't got a computer. / I don't have a computer.

8 I've got a dog. / I have a dog. or I haven't got a dog. / I don't have a dog.  
9 I've got a bike. / I have a bike. or I haven't got a bike. / I don't have a bike.  
10 (Example answer) I've got a brother and a sister.

## 9.3

3 He's got a new job.  
4 They haven't got much money.  
5 Have you got an umbrella?  
6 We've got a lot of work to do.  
7 I haven't got your phone number.  
8 Has your father got a car?  
9 How much money have we got?

## 9.4

3 's got / has got (or has)  
4 haven't got (or don't have)  
5 've got / have got (or have)  
6 haven't got (or don't have)  
7 hasn't got (or doesn't have)

## 9.5

3 have got four wheels or have four wheels  
4 's got / has got a lot of friends or has a lot of friends  
5 haven't got a key or don't have a key  
6 has got six legs or has six legs  
7 haven't got much time or don't have much time

## UNIT 10

## 10.1

2 Jack and Kate were at/in the cinema.  
3 Sue was at the station.  
4 Mr and Mrs Hall were in/at a restaurant.  
5 Ben was on the beach / on a beach / at the beach / at the seaside.  
6 (Example answer) I was at work.

## 10.2

2 is ... was      6 're/are  
3 'm/am          7 Was  
4 was            8 was  
5 were           9 are ... were

## 10.3

2 wasn't ... was  
3 was ... were  
4 'Were Kate and Bill at the party?' 'Kate was there, but Bill wasn't.' or 'Kate wasn't there, but Bill was.'  
5 were  
6 weren't ... were

## 10.4

2 Was your exam difficult?  
3 Where were Sue and Chris last week?  
4 How much was your new camera?  
5 Why were you angry yesterday?  
6 Was the weather nice last week?

## UNIT 11

## 11.1

2 opened  
3 started ... finished  
4 wanted  
5 happened  
6 rained  
7 enjoyed ... stayed  
8 died

## 11.2

2 saw          8 thought  
3 played       9 copied  
4 paid          10 knew  
5 visited       11 put  
6 bought       12 spoke  
7 went

## 11.3

2 got          9 checked  
3 had          10 had  
4 left         11 waited  
5 drove       12 departed  
6 got          13 arrived  
7 parked       14 took  
8 walked

## 11.4

- 2 lost her keys
- 3 met her friends
- 4 bought two newspapers
- 5 went to the cinema
- 6 ate an orange
- 7 had a shower
- 8 came (to see us)

## 11.5

*Example answers:*

- 2 I got up late yesterday.
- 3 I met some friends at lunchtime.
- 4 I went to the supermarket.
- 5 I phoned a lot of people.
- 6 I lost my keys.

## UNIT 12

### 12.1

- 2 didn't work
- 4 didn't have
- 3 didn't go
- 5 didn't do

### 12.2

- 2 Did you enjoy the party?
- 3 Did you have a good holiday?
- 4 Did you finish work early?
- 5 Did you sleep well last night?

### 12.3

- 2 I got up before 7 o'clock. *or* I didn't get up before 7 o'clock.
- 3 I had a shower. *or* I didn't have a shower.
- 4 I bought a magazine. *or* I didn't buy a magazine.
- 5 I ate meat. *or* I didn't eat meat.
- 6 I went to bed before 10.30. *or* I didn't go to bed before 10.30.

### 12.4

- 2 did you arrive
- 3 Did you win
- 4 did you go
- 5 did it cost
- 6 Did you go to bed late
- 7 Did you have a nice time
- 8 did it happen / did that happen

### 12.5

- 2 bought
- 6 didn't have
- 3 Did it rain
- 7 did you do
- 4 didn't stay
- 8 didn't know
- 5 opened

## UNIT 13

### 13.1

- 2 Jack and Kate were at the cinema. They were watching a film.
- 3 Tim was in his car. He was driving.
- 4 Tracey was at the station. She was waiting for a train.
- 5 Mr and Mrs Hall were in the park. They were walking.
- 6 (Example answer) I was in a café. I was having a drink with some friends.

### 13.2

- 2 she was playing tennis
- 3 she was reading a/the newspaper
- 4 she was cooking (lunch)
- 5 she was having breakfast
- 6 she was cleaning the kitchen

### 13.3

- 2 What were you doing
- 3 Was it raining
- 4 Why was Sue driving
- 5 Was Tim wearing

### 13.4

- 2 He was carrying a bag.
- 3 He wasn't going to the dentist.
- 4 He was eating an ice-cream.
- 5 He wasn't carrying an umbrella.
- 6 He wasn't going home.
- 7 He was wearing a hat.
- 8 He wasn't riding a bicycle.

## UNIT 14

### 14.1

- 1 happened ... was painting ... fell
- 2 arrived ... got ... were waiting
- 3 was walking ... met ... was going ... was carrying ... stopped

### 14.2

- 2 was studying
- 3 did the post arrive ... came ... was having
- 4 didn't go
- 5 were you driving ... stopped ... wasn't driving

## 6 Did your team win ... didn't play

- 7 did you break ... were playing ... kicked ... hit
- 8 Did you see ... was wearing
- 9 were you doing
- 10 lost ... did you get ... climbed

## UNIT 15

### 15.1

- 2 She has/She's closed the door.
- 3 They have/They've gone to bed.
- 4 It has/It's stopped raining.
- 5 He has/He's had a shower.
- 6 The picture has fallen down.

### 15.2

- 2 've bought / have bought
- 3 's gone / has gone
- 4 Have you seen
- 5 has broken
- 6 've told / have told
- 7 has taken
- 8 haven't seen
- 9 has she gone
- 10 've forgotten / have forgotten
- 11 's invited / has invited
- 12 Have you decided
- 13 haven't told
- 14 've read / have read

## UNIT 16

### 16.1

- 2 He's/He has just got up.
- 3 They've/They have just bought a car.
- 4 The race has just started.

### 16.2

- 2 they've/they have already seen it.
- 3 I've/I have already phoned him.
- 4 He's/He has already gone (away).
- 5 I've/I have already read it.
- 6 She's/She has already started (it).

### 16.3

- 2 The bus has just gone.
- 3 The train hasn't left yet.
- 4 He hasn't opened it yet.

5 They've/They have just finished their dinner.  
6 It hasn't stopped raining yet.

**16.4**

2 Have you met your new neighbours yet?  
3 Have you paid your phone bill yet?  
4 Has Tom/he sold his car yet?

**UNIT 17****17.1**

3 Have you ever been to Australia?  
4 Have you ever lost your passport?  
5 Have you ever flown in a helicopter?  
6 Have you ever won a race?  
7 Have you ever been to New York?  
8 Have you ever driven a bus?  
9 Have you ever broken your leg?

**17.2***Helen:*

2 She's/She has been to Australia once.  
3 She's/She has never won a race.  
4 She's/She has flown in a helicopter a few times.  
*You (example answers):*  
5 I've/I have never been to New York.  
6 I've/I have played tennis many times.  
7 I've/I have never driven a lorry.  
8 I've/have been late for work a few times.

**17.3**

2–6

She's/She has done a lot of interesting things.  
She's/She has travelled all over the world. or  
She's/She has been all over the world  
She's/She has been married three times.  
She's/She has written ten books.  
She's/She has met a lot of interesting people.

**17.4**

2 gone  
3 been ... been  
4 been  
5 gone  
6 been  
7 been  
8 gone

**UNIT 18****18.1**

3 have been  
4 has been  
5 have lived / have been living  
6 has worked / has been working  
7 has had  
8 have been learning

**18.2**

2 How long have they been there? or ... been in Brazil?  
3 How long have you known her? or .. known Amy?  
4 How long has she been learning Italian?  
5 How long has he lived in Canada? / How long has he been living ... ?  
6 How long have you been a teacher?  
7 How long has it been raining?

**18.3**

2 She has lived in Wales all her life.  
3 They have been on holiday since Sunday.  
4 The sun has been shining all day.  
5 She has been waiting for ten minutes  
6 He has had a beard since he was 20.

**18.4**

2 I know  
3 I've known  
4 have you been waiting  
5 works  
6 She has been reading  
7 have you lived  
8 I've had  
9 is ... He has been

**UNIT 19****19.1**

3 for 6 for  
4 since 7 for  
5 since 8 for ... since

**19.2***Example answers:*

2 A year ago.  
3 A few weeks ago.  
4 Two hours ago.  
5 Six months ago.

**19.3**

3 for 20 years  
4 20 years ago  
5 an hour ago  
6 a few days ago  
7 for six months  
8 for a long time

**19.4**

2 Jack has been here since Tuesday.  
3 It's been raining for an hour.  
4 I've known Sue since 2002.  
5 Claire and Matthew have been married for six months.  
6 Liz has been studying medicine (at university) for three years.  
7 David has played / David has been playing the piano since he was seven years old.

**19.5***Example answers:*

1 I've lived in ... all my life.  
2 I've been in the same job for ten years.  
3 I've been learning English for six months.  
4 I've known Chris for a long time.  
5 I've had a headache since I got up this morning.

**UNIT 20****20.1**

2 I started (it)  
3 they arrived  
4 she went (away)  
5 I wore it

## Key to Exercises

### 20.2

- 3 I finished
- 4 OK
- 5 did you finish
- 6 OK
- 7 (Steve's grandmother) died
- 8 Where were you / Where did you go

### 20.3

- 3 played
- 4 did you go
- 5 Have you ever met
- 6 wasn't
- 7 's/has visited
- 8 switched
- 9 lived
- 10 haven't been

### 20.4

- 1 Did you have was
- 2 Have you seen went haven't seen
- 3 has worked / has been working was worked didn't enjoy
- 4 've/have seen 've/have never spoken Have you ever spoken met

## UNIT 21

### 21.1

- 3 Glass is made from sand.
- 4 Stamps are sold in a post office.
- 5 This room isn't used very often.
- 6 Are we allowed to park here?
- 7 How is this word pronounced?
- 9 The house was painted last month.
- 10 My phone was stolen a few days ago.
- 11 Three people were injured in the accident.
- 12 When was this bridge built?
- 13 I wasn't woken up by the noise.
- 14 How were these windows broken?
- 15 Were you invited to Jon's party last week?

### 21.2

- 2 Football is played in most ...
- 3 Why was the letter sent to ... ?
- 4 ... where cars are repaired.
- 5 Where were you born?
- 6 How many languages are spoken ... ?
- 7 ... but nothing was stolen.
- 8 When was the bicycle invented?

### 21.3

- 3 is made
- 4 were damaged
- 5 was given
- 6 are shown
- 7 were invited
- 8 was made
- 9 was stolen ... was found

### 21.4

- 2 Sally was born in Manchester.
- 3 Her parents were born in Ireland.
- 4 I was born in ...
- 5 My mother was born in ...

## UNIT 22

### 22.1

- 2 A bridge is being built.
- 3 The windows are being cleaned.
- 4 The grass is being cut.

### 22.2

- 3 The window has been broken.
- 4 The roof is being repaired.
- 5 The car has been damaged.
- 6 The houses are being knocked down.
- 7 The trees have been cut down.
- 8 They have been invited to a party.

### 22.3

- 3 has been repaired
- 4 was repaired
- 5 are made
- 6 were they built
- 7 Is the computer being used (or Is anybody using the computer)

8 are they called

9 were stolen

10 was damaged ... hasn't been repaired

## UNIT 23

### 23.1

- 3 are 7 do
- 4 Does 8 Is
- 5 Do 9 does
- 6 Is 10 Are

### 23.2

- 2 don't
- 3 'm/am not
- 4 isn't
- 5 don't
- 6 doesn't
- 7 'm/am not
- 8 aren't / 're not

### 23.3

- 2 Did 7 were
- 3 were 8 Has
- 4 was 9 did
- 5 Has 10 have
- 6 did

### 23.4

- 2 was 6 've/have
- 3 Have 7 is
- 4 are 8 was
- 5 were 9 has

### 23.5

- 3 eaten 8 understand
- 4 enjoying 9 listening
- 5 damaged 10 pronounced
- 6 use 11 open
- 7 gone

## UNIT 24

### 24.1

- 3 got 10 happened
- 4 brought 11 heard
- 5 paid 12 put
- 6 enjoyed 13 caught
- 7 bought 14 watched
- 8 sat 15 understood
- 9 left

### 24.2

- 2 began begun
- 3 ate eaten
- 4 drank drunk
- 5 drove driven
- 6 spoke spoken
- 7 wrote written
- 8 came come
- 9 knew known
- 10 took taken

11 went gone  
12 gave given  
13 threw thrown  
14 forgot forgotten

**24.3**

3 slept  
4 saw  
5 rained  
6 lost ... seen  
7 stolen  
8 went  
9 finished  
10 built  
11 learnt/learned  
12 ridden  
13 known  
14 fell ... hurt  
15 ran ... run

**24.4**

2 told	8 spoken
3 won	9 cost
4 met	10 driven
5 woken up	11 sold
6 swam	12 flew
7 thought	

**UNIT 25****25.1**

2 Richard is going to the cinema.  
3 Rachel is meeting Dave.  
4 Karen is having lunch with Ken.  
5 Tom and Sue are going to a party.

**25.2**

2 Are you working next week?  
3 What are you doing tomorrow evening?  
4 What time are your friends coming?  
5 When is Liz going on holiday?

**25.3**

*Example answers:*  
3 I'm going away at the weekend.  
4 I'm playing basketball tomorrow.  
5 I'm meeting a friend this evening  
6 I'm going to the cinema on Thursday evening.

**25.4**

3 She's getting  
4 are going ... are they going  
5 finishes  
6 I'm not going  
7 I'm going ... We're meeting  
8 are you getting ... leaves  
9 does the film begin  
10 are you doing ... I'm working

**UNIT 26****26.1**

2 I'm going to have a bath.  
3 I'm going to buy a car.  
4 We're going to play football.

**26.2**

3 I'm/am going to walk  
4 s/is going to stay  
5 I'm/am going to eat  
6 're/are going to give  
7 s/is going to lie down  
8 Are you going to watch  
9 is Rachel going to do

**26.3**

2 The shelf is going to fall (down).  
3 The car is going to turn (right).  
4 He's / He is going to kick the ball.

**26.4**

*Example answers:*  
1 I'm going to phone Maria this evening.  
2 I'm going to get up early tomorrow.  
3 I'm going to buy some shoes tomorrow.

**UNIT 27****27.1**

2 she'll be 5 she's  
3 she was 6 she was  
4 she'll be 7 she'll be

**27.2**

*Example answers:*  
2 I'll be at home.  
3 I'll probably be in bed.  
4 I'll be at work.  
5 I don't know where I'll be.

**27.3**

2 'll/will 5 'll/will  
3 won't 6 'll/will  
4 won't 7 won't

**27.4**

3 I think we'll win the game.  
4 I don't think I'll be here tomorrow.  
5 I think Sue will like her present.  
6 I don't think they'll get married.  
7 I don't think you'll enjoy the film.

**27.5**

2 are you doing  
3 They're going  
4 will lend  
5 I'm going  
6 will phone  
7 He's working  
8 Will you  
9 are coming

**UNIT 28****28.1**

2 I'll send 5 I'll do  
3 I'll eat 6 I'll stay  
4 I'll sit 7 I'll show

**28.2**

2 I think I'll have  
3 I don't think I'll play  
4 I think I'll buy  
5 I don't think I'll buy

**28.3**

2 I'll do  
3 I watch  
4 I'll go  
5 is going to buy  
6 I'll give  
7 Are you doing ... I'm going  
8 I'm working

**28.4**

2 Shall I turn off the television?  
3 Shall I make some sandwiches?  
4 Shall I turn on the light?

**28.5**

2 where shall we go?  
3 what shall we buy?  
4 who shall we invite?

## UNIT 29

### 29.1

- 2 I might see you tomorrow.
- 3 Sarah might forget to phone.
- 4 It might snow today.
- 5 I might be late tonight.
- 6 Mark might not be here next week.
- 7 I might not have time to go out.

### 29.2

- 2 I might go away.
- 3 I might see her on Monday.
- 4 I might have fish.
- 5 I might get/take a taxi. or ... go by taxi.
- 6 I might buy a new car.

### 29.3

- 3 He might get up early.
- 4 He isn't/He's not working tomorrow.
- 5 He might be at home tomorrow morning.
- 6 He might watch television.
- 7 He's going out in the afternoon.
- 8 He might go shopping.

### 29.4

*Example answers:*

- 1 I might read a newspaper.
- 2 I might go out with some friends in the evening.
- 3 I might have an egg for breakfast.

## UNIT 30

### 30.1

- 2 Can you ski?
- 3 Can you play chess?
- 4 Can you run ten kilometres?
- 5 Can you drive (a car)?
- 6 Can you ride (a horse)?
- 7 I can/can't swim.
- 8 I can/can't ski
- 9 I can/can't play chess.
- 10 I can/can't run ten kilometres.
- 11 I can/can't drive (a car).
- 12 I can/can't ride (a horse).

## 30.2

- 2 can see      4 can't find
- 3 can't hear    5 can speak

## 30.3

- 2 couldn't eat
- 3 can't decide
- 4 couldn't find
- 5 can't go
- 6 couldn't go

## 30.4

- 2 Can/Could you pass the salt (please)?
- 3 Can/Could you turn off the radio (please)?
- 4 Can/Could I have your phone number (please)?
- 5 Can/Could I look at your newspaper (please)? or Can/Could I have a look at your newspaper (please)?
- 6 Can/Could I use your pen (please)?

## UNIT 31

### 31.1

- 2 must meet
- 3 must wash
- 4 must learn
- 5 must go
- 6 must win
- 7 must be

### 31.2

- 2 I must      5 I had to
- 3 I had to     6 I had to
- 4 I must      7 I must

### 31.3

- 2 don't need to hurry
- 3 mustn't lose
- 4 don't need to wait
- 5 mustn't forget
- 6 don't need to phone

### 31.4

- 2 C            4 B
- 3 A            5 D

### 31.5

- 3 don't need to
- 4 had to
- 5 must
- 6 mustn't
- 7 must
- 8 had to
- 9 don't need to
- 10 mustn't

## UNIT 32

### 32.1

- 2 You should go
- 3 You should eat
- 4 you should visit
- 5 you should wear
- 6 You should take

### 32.2

- 2 He shouldn't eat so much.
- 3 She shouldn't work so hard.
- 4 He shouldn't drive so fast

### 32.3

- 2 Do you think I should learn (to drive)?
- 3 Do you think I should get another job?
- 4 Do you think I should invite Gary (to the party)?

### 32.4

- 3 I think you should sell it.
- 4 I think she should have a holiday.
- 5 I don't think they should get married.
- 6 I don't think you should go to work.
- 7 I think he should go to the doctor.
- 8 I don't think we should stay there.

### 32.5

*Example answers:*

- 2 I think everybody should have enough food.
- 3 I think people should drive more carefully.
- 4 I don't think the police should carry guns.
- 5 I think I should take more exercise.

## UNIT 33

### 33.1

- 2 have to do
- 3 has to read
- 4 have to speak
- 5 has to travel
- 6 have to hit

### 33.2

- 2 have to go
- 3 had to buy
- 4 have to change
- 5 had to answer

**33.3**

2 did he have to wait  
 3 does she have to go  
 4 did you have to pay  
 5 do you have to do

**33.4**

2 doesn't have to wait.  
 3 didn't have to get up early.  
 4 doesn't have to work (so) hard.  
 5 don't have to leave now.

**33.5**

3 have to pay  
 4 had to borrow  
 5 must stop *or* have to stop (*both are correct*)  
 6 has to meet  
 7 must tell *or* have to tell (*both are correct*)

**33.6**

2 I have to go to work every day.  
 3 I had to go to the dentist yesterday.  
 4 I have to go shopping tomorrow.

**UNIT 34****34.1**

2 Would you like an apple?  
 3 Would you like some coffee? / ... a cup of coffee?  
 4 Would you like some cheese? / ... a piece of cheese?  
 5 Would you like a sandwich?  
 6 Would you like some cake? / ... a piece of cake?

**34.2**

2 Would you like to play tennis tomorrow?  
 3 Would you like to come to a concert next week?  
 4 Would you like to borrow my umbrella?

**34.3**

2 Do you like  
 3 Would you like  
 4 would you like  
 5 Would you like  
 6 I like  
 7 would you like  
 8 Would you like  
 9 Do you like  
 10 I'd like

11 I'd like  
 12 do you like

**UNIT 35****35.1**

3 Don't buy  
 4 Smile  
 5 Don't sit  
 6 Have  
 7 Don't forget  
 8 Sleep  
 9 Be ... Don't drop

**35.2**

2 let's take a taxi  
 3 let's watch TV  
 4 let's go to a restaurant  
 5 let's wait a little

**35.3**

3 No, let's not go out. *or*  
 No, don't let's go out.  
 4 No, don't close the window.  
 5 No, don't phone me (tonight).  
 6 No, let's not wait for Andy. *or* No, don't let's wait for Andy.  
 7 No, don't turn on the light.  
 8 No, let's not go by bus. *or*  
 No, don't let's go by bus.

**UNIT 36****36.1**

2 He used to play football.  
 3 She used to be a taxi driver.  
 4 They used to live in the country.  
 5 He used to wear glasses.  
 6 This building used to be a hotel.

**36.2**

2–6 She used to play volleyball.  
 She used to go out most evenings. / She used to go out a lot.  
 She used to play the guitar.  
 She used to read a lot. / She used to like reading.  
 She used to go away two or three times a year. / She used to travel a lot.

**36.3**

3 used to have  
 4 used to be  
 5 go / travel  
 6 used to eat  
 7 watches  
 8 used to live  
 9 get  
 10 did you use to play

**UNIT 37****37.1**

3 There's/There is a hospital.  
 4 There isn't a swimming pool.  
 5 There are two cinemas.  
 6 There isn't a university.  
 7 There aren't any big hotels.

**37.2**

*Example answers:*

3 There is a university in ...  
 4 There are a lot of big shops.  
 5 There isn't an airport.  
 6 There aren't many factories.

**37.3**

2 There's/There is  
 3 is there  
 4 There are  
 5 are there  
 6 There isn't  
 7 Is there  
 8 Are there  
 9 There's / There is ...  
 There aren't

**37.4**

2–6 There are eight planets in the solar system.  
 There are fifteen players in a rugby team.  
 There are twenty-six letters in the English alphabet.  
 There are thirty days in September.  
 There are fifty states in the USA.

**37.5**

2 It's  
 3 There's  
 4 There's ... Is it  
 5 Is there ... there's  
 6 It's  
 7 Is there

## Key to Exercises

### UNIT 38

#### 38.1

- 2 There was a carpet
- 3 There were three pictures
- 4 There was a small table
- 5 There were some flowers
- 6 There were some books
- 7 There was an armchair
- 8 There was a sofa

#### 38.2

- 3 There was
- 4 Was there
- 5 there weren't
- 6 There wasn't
- 7 Were there
- 8 There wasn't
- 9 There was
- 10 there weren't

#### 38.3

- 2 There are
- 3 There was
- 4 There's/There is
- 5 There's been/There has been *or* There was
- 6 there was
- 7 there will be
- 8 there were ... there are
- 9 There have been
- 10 there will be *or* there are

### UNIT 39

#### 39.1

- 2 It's cold. 5 It's snowing.
- 3 It's windy. 6 It's cloudy.
- 4 It's sunny/fine. *or*  
It's a nice day.

#### 39.2

- 2 It's / It is
- 3 Is it
- 4 is it ... it's / it is
- 5 It's / It is
- 6 Is it
- 7 is it
- 8 It's / It is
- 9 It's / It is

#### 39.3

- 2 How far is it from the hotel to the beach?
- 3 How far is it from New York to Washington?
- 4 How far is it from your house to the airport?

#### 39.4

- 3 It 6 it
- 4 It ... It 7 It ... there
- 5 There 8 It

### 39.5

- 2 It's nice to see you again.
- 3 It's impossible to work in this office.
- 4 It's easy to make friends.
- 5 It's interesting to visit different places.
- 6 It's dangerous to go out alone

### UNIT 40

#### 40.1

- 2 is 5 will
- 3 can 6 was
- 4 has

#### 40.2

- 2 I'm not 5 isn't
- 3 weren't 6 hasn't
- 4 haven't

#### 40.3

- 3 doesn't 6 does
- 4 do 7 don't
- 5 did 8 didn't

#### 40.4

*Example answers:*

- 2 I like sport, but my sister doesn't.
- 3 I don't eat meat, but Jenny does.
- 4 I'm American, but my husband isn't.
- 5 I haven't been to Japan, but Jenny has.

#### 40.5

- 2 wasn't 7 has
- 3 are 8 do
- 4 has 9 hasn't
- 5 can't 10 will
- 6 did 11 might

#### 40.6

- 2 Yes, I have. *or*  
No, I haven't.
- 3 Yes, I do. *or* No, I don't.
- 4 Yes, it is. *or* No, it isn't.
- 5 Yes, I am. *or* No, I'm not.
- 6 Yes, I do. *or* No, I don't.
- 7 Yes, I will. *or* No, I won't.
- 8 Yes, I have. *or* No, I haven't.
- 9 Yes, I did. *or* No, I didn't.
- 10 Yes, I was. *or* No, I wasn't.

### UNIT 41

#### 41.1

- 2 Do you? 5 Do I?
- 3 Didn't you? 6 Did she?
- 4 Doesn't she?

#### 41.2

- 3 Have you? 8 Aren't you?
- 4 Can't she? 9 Did you?
- 5 Were you? 10 Does she?
- 6 Didn't you? 11 Won't you?
- 7 Is there? 12 Isn't it?

#### 41.3

- 2 aren't they
- 3 wasn't she
- 4 haven't you
- 5 don't you
- 6 doesn't he
- 7 won't you

#### 41.4

- 2 are you 6 didn't she
- 3 isn't she 7 was it
- 4 can't you 8 doesn't she
- 5 do you 9 will you

### UNIT 42

#### 42.1

- 2 either 5 either
- 3 too 6 either
- 4 too 7 too

#### 42.2

- 2 So am I.
- 3 So have I.
- 4 So do I.
- 5 So will I.
- 6 So was I.
- 7 Neither can I.
- 8 Neither did I.
- 9 Neither have I.
- 10 Neither am I.
- 11 Neither do I.

#### 42.3

- 1 So am I.
- 2 So can I. *or* I can't.
- 3 Neither am I. *or* I am.
- 4 So do I. *or* I don't.
- 5 Neither do I. *or* I do.
- 6 So did I. *or* I didn't.
- 7 Neither have I. *or*  
I have.
- 8 Neither do I. *or* I do.
- 9 So am I. *or* I'm not.
- 10 Neither have I. *or*  
I have.
- 11 Neither did I. *or* I did.
- 12 So do I. *or* I don't.

**UNIT 43****43.1**

2 They aren't / They're not married.  
 3 I haven't had dinner  
 4 It isn't cold today.  
 5 We won't be late.  
 6 You shouldn't go.

**43.2**

2 I don't like cheese.  
 3 They didn't understand.  
 4 He doesn't live here.  
 5 Don't go away!  
 6 I didn't do the shopping.

**43.3**

2 They haven't arrived.  
 3 I didn't go to the bank.  
 4 He doesn't speak German.  
 5 We weren't angry.  
 6 He won't be pleased.  
 7 Don't phone me tonight.  
 8 It didn't rain yesterday.  
 9 I couldn't hear them.  
 10 I don't believe you.

**43.4**

2 I'm not / am not  
 3 can't  
 4 doesn't  
 5 isn't / 's not  
 6 don't ... haven't  
 7 Don't  
 8 didn't  
 9 haven't  
 10 won't  
 11 didn't  
 12 weren't  
 13 hasn't  
 14 shouldn't / mustn't

**43.5**

3 He wasn't born in London.  
 4 He doesn't like London.  
 5 He'd like to live in the country.  
 6 He can drive.  
 7 He hasn't got a car.  
 8 He doesn't read newspapers.  
 9 He isn't interested in politics.  
 10 He watches TV most evenings.  
 11 He didn't watch TV last night.  
 12 He went out last night.

**UNIT 44****44.1**

3 Were you late this morning?  
 4 Has Kate got a key?  
 5 Will you be here tomorrow?  
 6 Is Paul going out this evening?  
 7 Do you like your job?  
 8 Does Nicole live near here?  
 9 Did you enjoy the film?  
 10 Did you have a good holiday?

**44.2**

2 Do you use it a lot?  
 3 Did you use it yesterday?  
 4 Do you enjoy driving?  
 5 Are you a good driver?  
 6 Have you ever had an accident?

**44.3**

3 What are the children doing?  
 4 How is cheese made?  
 5 Is your sister coming to the party?  
 6 Why don't you tell the truth?  
 7 Have your guests arrived yet?  
 8 What time does your train leave?  
 9 Why didn't Emily go to work?  
 10 Was your car damaged in the accident?

**44.4**

3 What are you reading?  
 4 What time did she go (to bed)?  
 5 When are they going (on holiday)?  
 6 Where did you see him?  
 7 Why can't you come (to the party)?  
 8 Where has she gone?  
 9 How much (money) do you need?  
 10 Why doesn't she like you?  
 11 How often does it rain?  
 12 When did you do it? / . . . the shopping?

**UNIT 45****45.1**

2 What fell off the shelf?  
 3 Who wants to see me?  
 4 Who took your umbrella? / Who took it?  
 5 What made you ill?  
 6 Who is / Who's coming?

**45.2**

3 Who did you phone?  
 4 What happened last night?  
 5 Who knows the answer?  
 6 Who did the washing-up?  
 7 What did Jane do? / What did she do?  
 8 What woke you up?  
 9 Who saw the accident?  
 10 Who did you see?  
 11 Who has got your pen? / Who has got it? or Who's got ... ?  
 12 What does this word mean? / What does it mean?

**45.3**

2 Who phoned you? What did she want?  
 3 Who did you ask? What did he say?  
 4 Who got married? Who told you?  
 5 Who did you meet? What did she tell you?  
 6 Who won? What did you do (after the game)?  
 7 Who gave you a/the book? What did Catherine give you?

**UNIT 46****46.1**

2 What are you looking for?  
 3 Who did you go to the cinema with?  
 4 What/Who was the film about?  
 5 Who did you give the money to?  
 6 Who was the book written by?

### 46.2

- 2 What are they looking at?
- 3 Which restaurant is he going to?
- 4 What are they talking about?
- 5 What is she listening to?
- 6 Which bus are they waiting for?

### 46.3

- 2 Which hotel did you stay at?
- 3 Which (football) team does he play for?
- 4 Which school did you go to?

### 46.4

- 2 What is the food like?
- 3 What are the people like?
- 4 What is the weather like?

### 46.5

- 2 What was the film like?
- 3 What were the lessons like?
- 4 What was the hotel like?

## UNIT 47

### 47.1

- 3 What colour is it?
- 4 What time did you get up?
- 5 What type of music do you like?
- 6 What kind of car do you want (to buy)?

### 47.2

- 2 Which coat
- 3 Which film/movie
- 4 Which bus

### 47.3

3 Which	8 Who
4 What	9 What
5 Which	10 Which
6 What	11 What
7 Which	

### 47.4

- 2 How far
- 3 How old
- 4 How often
- 5 How deep
- 6 How long

### 47.5

- 2 How heavy is this box?
- 3 How old are you?

- 4 How much did you spend?

- 5 How often do you watch TV?
- 6 How far is it from Paris to Moscow?

## UNIT 48

### 48.1

- 2 How long does it take by car from Milan to Rome?
- 3 How long does it take by train from Paris to Geneva?
- 4 How long does it take by bus from the city centre to the airport?

### 48.2

*Example answers:*

- 2 It takes ... hours to fly from ... to New York.
- 3 It takes ... years to study to be a doctor in ... .
- 4 It takes ... to walk from my home to the nearest shop.
- 5 It takes ... to get from my home to the nearest airport.

### 48.3

- 2 How long did it take you to walk to the station?
- 3 How long did it take him to paint the bathroom?
- 4 How long did it take you to learn to ski?
- 5 How long did it take them to repair the computer?

### 48.4

- 2 It took us 20 minutes to walk home. / ... to get home.
- 3 It took me six months to learn to drive.
- 4 It took Mark/him three hours to drive to London. / ... to get to London.
- 5 It took Lisa/her a long time to find a job. / ... to get a job.
- 6 It took me ... to ...

## UNIT 49

### 49.1

- 2 I don't know where she is.
- 3 I don't know how old it is.

- 4 I don't know when he'll be here.

- 5 I don't know why he was angry.
- 6 I don't know how long she has lived here.

### 49.2

- 2 where Susan works
- 3 what Peter said
- 4 why he went home early
- 5 what time the meeting begins
- 6 how the accident happened

### 49.3

- 2 are you
- 3 they are
- 4 the museum is
- 5 do you want
- 6 elephants eat
- 7 it is

### 49.4

- 2 Do you know if/whether they are married?
- 3 Do you know if/whether Sue knows Bill?
- 4 Do you know if/whether Gary will be here tomorrow?
- 5 Do you know if/whether he passed his exam?

### 49.5

- 2 Do you know where Paula is?
- 3 Do you know if/whether she is working today? / she's working today?
- 4 Do you know what time she starts work?
- 5 Do you know if/whether the shops are open tomorrow?
- 6 Do you know where Sarah and Tim live?
- 7 Do you know if/whether they went to Jane's party?

### 49.6

*Example answers:*

- 2 Do you know what time the bus leaves?
- 3 Excuse me, can you tell me where the station is?
- 4 I don't know what I'm going to do this evening.
- 5 Do you know if there's a restaurant near here?
- 6 Do you know how much it costs to rent a car?

**UNIT 50****50.1**

2 She said (that) she was very busy.  
 3 She said (that) she couldn't go to the party.  
 4 He said (that) he had to go out.  
 5 He said (that) he was learning Russian.  
 6 She said (that) she didn't feel very well.  
 7 They said (that) they would be home late. / ... they'd be ...  
 8 She said (that) she had just come back from holiday. / ... she'd just come back ...  
 9 She said (that) she was going to buy a new computer.  
 10 They said (that) they hadn't got a key. / They said (that) they didn't have a key.

**50.2**

2 She said (that) she wasn't hungry.  
 3 he said (that) he needed it.  
 4 she said (that) she didn't want to go.  
 5 She said (that) I could have it.  
 6 He said (that) he would send me a postcard. / ... he'd send ...  
 7 Nicole said (that) he had gone home. / ... he'd gone home.  
 8 He said (that) he wanted to watch TV.  
 9 She said (that) she was going to the cinema.

**50.3**

3 said	7 said
4 told	8 told
5 tell	9 tell
6 say	10 say

**UNIT 51****51.1**

3 phone  
 4 phone Paul  
 5 to phone Paul  
 6 to phone Paul  
 7 phone Paul  
 8 to phone Paul  
 9 phone Paul  
 10 phone Paul

**51.2**

3 get  
 4 going  
 5 watch  
 6 flying  
 7 listening  
 8 eat  
 9 waiting  
 10 wear  
 11 doing ... staying

**51.3**

4 to go	13 having
5 rain	14 to have
6 to leave	15 hear
7 help	16 go
8 studying	17 listening
9 to go	18 to make
10 wearing	19 to know ...
11 to stay	tell
12 have	20 use

**UNIT 52**

52.1

3 to see
4 to swim
5 cleaning
6 to ask
7 visiting
8 going
9 to be
10 waiting
11 to do
12 to speak
13 to go
14 crying / to cry
15 to work ... talking

**52.2**

2 to help
3 to see
4 reading
5 to lose
6 to send
7 raining
8 to go
9 watching / to watch
10 to wait

**52.3**

2 going to museums
3 to go
4 writing / to write letters
5 to go (there)
6 travelling by train
7 walking

**52.4**

*Example answers:*

1 I enjoy cooking.  
 2 I don't like driving.

3 If it's a nice day tomorrow, I'd like to have a picnic by the lake.  
 4 When I'm on holiday, I like to do very little.  
 5 I don't mind travelling alone, but I prefer to travel with somebody.  
 6 I wouldn't like to live in a big city.

**UNIT 53****53.1**

2 I want you to listen carefully.  
 3 I don't want you to be angry.  
 4 Do you want me to wait for you?  
 5 I don't want you to phone me tonight.  
 6 I want you to meet Sarah.

**53.2**

2 A woman told me to turn left after the bridge.  
 3 I advised him to go to the doctor.  
 4 She asked me to help her.  
 5 I told him to come back in ten minutes.  
 6 Paul let me use his phone.  
 7 I told her not to phone before 8 o'clock.  
 8 Ann's mother taught her to play the piano.

**53.3**

2 to repeat
3 wait
4 to arrive
5 to get
6 go
7 borrow
8 to tell
9 to make (or to get)
10 think

**UNIT 54****54.1**

2–4 I went to the café to meet a friend.  
 I went to the chemist to get some medicine.  
 I went to the supermarket to buy some food.

## Key to Exercises

### 54.2

- 2 to read the newspaper
- 3 to open this door
- 4 to get some fresh air
- 5 to wake him up
- 6 to see who it was

### 54.3

*Example answers:*

- 2 to talk to you now
- 3 to tell her about the party
- 4 to do some shopping
- 5 to buy a car

### 54.4

- 2 to              7 to
- 3 to              8 to
- 4 for            9 for
- 5 to              10 for
- 6 for            11 to ... for

### 54.5

- 2 for the film to begin
- 3 for it to arrive
- 4 for you to tell me

## UNIT 55

### 55.1

- 3 to
- 4 to
- 5 – (*no preposition*)
- 6 for
- 7 to
- 8 on ... to
- 9 for
- 10 on
- 11 to
- 12 – (*no preposition*)
- 13 on
- 14 for
- 15 on

### 55.2

- 2 went fishing
- 3 goes swimming
- 4 going skiing
- 5 go shopping
- 6 went jogging

### 55.3

- 2 to university
- 3 shopping
- 4 to sleep
- 5 home
- 6 skiing
- 7 riding
- 8 for a walk
- 9 on holiday ... to Portugal

## UNIT 56

### 56.1

- 2 get your jacket
- 3 get a doctor
- 4 get a taxi
- 5 gets the job
- 6 get some milk
- 7 get a ticket
- 8 gets a good salary
- 9 get a lot of rain
- 10 get a new computer

### 56.2

- 2 getting dark
- 3 getting married
- 4 getting ready
- 5 getting late

### 56.3

- 2 get wet
- 3 got married
- 4 gets angry
- 5 got lost
- 6 get old
- 7 got better

### 56.4

- 2 got to Bristol at 11.45.
- 3 I left the party at 11.15 and got home at midnight.
- 4 (*Example answer*) I left home at 8.30 and got to the airport at 10 o'clock.

### 56.5

- 2 got off
- 3 got out of
- 4 got on

## UNIT 57

### 57.1

- 2 do              7 done
- 3 make            8 make
- 4 made           9 making
- 5 did             10 do
- 6 do              11 doing

### 57.2

- 2 They're/They are doing (their) homework.
- 3 He's/He is doing the shopping. or He is shopping.
- 4 She's/She is making a jacket.
- 5 They're/They are doing an exam. (or ... taking an exam.)
- 6 He's/He is making the/his bed.

### 7 She's/She is doing the washing-up. or

She is washing up. /  
She is doing the dishes. /  
She is washing the dishes. /

8 He's/He is making a (shopping) list.

9 They're/They are making a film.

10 He's/He is taking a photograph.

### 57.3

2 make	8 make
3 do	9 do
4 done	10 making
5 made	11 made
6 doing	12 make ... do
7 did	

## UNIT 58

### 58.1

- 3 He hasn't got / He doesn't have
- 4 Gary had
- 5 Have you got / Do you have
- 6 we didn't have
- 7 She hasn't got / She doesn't have
- 8 Did you have

### 58.2

- 2 She's/She is having a cup of tea.
- 3 He's/He is having a rest.
- 4 They're/They are having a good time.
- 5 They're/They are having dinner.
- 6 He's/He is having a bath.

### 58.3

- 3 Have a nice/good trip!
- 4 Did you have a nice/good weekend?
- 5 Did you have a nice/good game (of tennis)?
- 6 Have a nice/good time! or Have a nice/good evening! or Have fun!
- 7 Did you have a nice/good holiday?

### 58.4

- 2 have something to eat
- 3 had a glass of water
- 4 have a walk
- 5 had an accident
- 6 have a look

**UNIT 59****59.1**

2 him      5 him  
3 them     6 them  
4 her       7 her

**59.2**

2 I ... them    6 she ... them  
3 he ... her    7 they ... me  
4 they ... us    8 she ... you  
5 we ... him

**59.3**

2 I like him.  
3 I don't like it.  
4 Do you like it?  
5 I don't like her.  
6 Do you like them?

**59.4**

2 him        8 them  
3 them       9 me  
4 they       10 her  
5 us          11 them  
6 it           12 he ... it  
7 She

**59.5**

2 Can you give it to him?  
3 Can you give them to her?  
4 Can you give it to me?  
5 Can you give it to them?  
6 Can you give them to us?

**UNIT 60****60.1**

2 her hands  
3 our hands  
4 his hands  
5 their hands  
6 your hands

**60.2**

2 They live with their parents.  
3 We live with our parents.  
4 Jane lives with her parents.  
5 I live with my parents.  
6 John lives with his parents.  
7 Do you live with your parents?  
8 Most children live with their parents.

**60.3**

2 their      6 their  
3 his        7 her  
4 his        8 their  
5 her

**60.4**

2 his        8 her  
3 Their      9 their  
4 our       10 my  
5 her       11 Its  
6 my       12 His ... his  
7 your

**60.5**

2 my key  
3 Her husband  
4 your coat  
5 their homework  
6 his name  
7 Our house

**UNIT 61****61.1**

2 mine      6 yours  
3 ours       7 mine  
4 hers       8 his  
5 theirs

**61.2**

2 yours  
3 my ... Mine  
4 Yours ... mine  
5 her  
6 My ... hers  
7 their  
8 Ours

**61.3**

3 of hers  
4 friends of ours  
5 friend of mine  
6 friend of his  
7 friends of yours

**61.4**

2 Whose camera is this?  
It's hers.  
3 Whose gloves are these?  
They're mine.  
4 Whose hat is this?  
It's his.  
5 Whose money is this?  
It's yours.  
6 Whose books are these?  
They're ours.

**UNIT 62****62.1**

2 Yes, I know her, but I can't remember her name.  
3 Yes, I know them, but I can't remember their names.

4 Yes, I know you, but I can't remember your name.

**62.2**

2 He invited us to stay with him at his house.  
3 They invited me to stay with them at their house.  
4 I invited them to stay with me at my house.  
5 She invited us to stay with her at her house.  
6 Did you invite him to stay with you at your house?

**62.3**

2 I gave her my address, and she gave me hers.  
3 He gave me his address, and I gave him mine.  
4 We gave them our address, and they gave us theirs.  
5 She gave him her address, and he gave her his.  
6 You gave us your address, and we gave you ours.  
7 They gave you their address, and you gave them yours.

**62.4**

2 them      6 us  
3 him       7 her  
4 our       8 their  
5 yours      9 mine

**UNIT 63****63.1**

2 myself      6 himself  
3 herself      7 yourself  
4 themselves   8 yourselves  
5 myself

**63.2**

2 When I saw him, he was by himself.  
3 Don't go out by yourself.  
4 I went to the cinema by myself.  
5 My sister lives by herself.  
6 Many people live by themselves.

## Key to Exercises

### 63.3

- 2 They can't see each other.
- 3 They phone each other a lot.
- 4 They don't know each other.
- 5 They're/They are sitting next to each other.
- 6 They gave each other presents / a present.

### 63.4

- 3 each other 7 each other
- 4 yourselves 8 each other
- 5 us 9 them
- 6 ourselves 10 themselves

## UNIT 64

### 64.1

- 3 Helen is **Brian's** wife.
- 4 James is Sarah's **brother**.
- 5 James is **Daniel's** uncle.
- 6 Sarah is **Paul's** wife.
- 7 Helen is Daniel's **grandmother**.
- 8 Sarah is James's **sister**
- 9 Paul is **Sarah's** husband.
- 10 Paul is Daniel's **father**.
- 11 Daniel is James's nephew.

### 64.2

- 2 Andy's 5 Diane's
- 3 Dave's 6 Alice's
- 4 Jane's

### 64.3

- 3 OK
- 4 Simon's phone number
- 5 My brother's job
- 6 OK
- 7 OK
- 8 Paula's favourite colour
- 9 your mother's birthday
- 10 My parents' house
- 11 OK
- 12 OK
- 13 Silvia's party
- 14 OK

## UNIT 65

### 65.1

- 2 a 5 a 8 an
- 3 a 6 an 9 an
- 4 an 7 a

### 65.2

- 2 a vegetable
- 3 a game
- 4 a tool
- 5 a mountain
- 6 a planet

7 a fruit

8 a river

9 a flower

10 a musical instrument

### 65.3

- 2 He's a shop assistant.
- 3 She's an architect.
- 4 He's a taxi driver.
- 5 He's an electrician.
- 6 She's a photographer.
- 7 She's a nurse.
- 8 I'm a/an ...

### 65.4

- 2-8
- Tom never wears a hat.  
I can't ride a bicycle.  
My brother is an artist.  
Rebecca works in a bookshop.  
Jane wants to learn a foreign language.  
Mike lives in an old house.  
This evening I'm going to a party.

## UNIT 66

### 66.1

- 2 boats
- 3 women
- 4 cities
- 5 umbrellas
- 6 addresses
- 7 knives
- 8 sandwiches
- 9 families
- 10 feet
- 11 holidays
- 12 potatoes

### 66.2

- 2 teeth 5 fish
- 3 people 6 leaves
- 4 children

### 66.3

- 3 ... with a lot of beautiful trees.
- 4 ... with two men.
- 5 OK
- 6 ... three children.
- 7 Most of my friends are students.
- 8 He put on his pyjamas ...
- 9 OK
- 10 Do you know many people ...
- 11 I like your trousers. Where did you get them?

12 ... full of tourists.

13 OK

14 These scissors aren't ...

### 66.4

2 are	7 Do
3 don't	8 are
4 watch	9 them
5 were	10 some
6 live	

## UNIT 67

### 67.1

- 3 a jug
- 4 water
- 5 toothpaste
- 6 a toothbrush
- 7 an egg
- 8 money
- 9 a wallet
- 10 sand
- 11 a bucket
- 12 an envelope

### 67.2

- 3 ... a hat.
- 4 ... a job?
- 5 OK
- 6 ... an apple ...
- 7 ... a party ...
- 8 ... a wonderful thing.
- 9 ... an island.
- 10 ... a key.
- 11 OK
- 12 ... a good idea.
- 13 ... a car?
- 14 ... a cup of coffee?
- 15 OK
- 16 ... an umbrella.

### 67.3

- 2 a piece of wood
- 3 a glass of water
- 4 a bar of chocolate
- 5 a cup of tea
- 6 a piece of paper
- 7 a bowl of soup
- 8 a loaf of bread
- 9 a jar of honey

## UNIT 68

### 68.1

- 2 I bought a newspaper (or a paper), some flowers (or a bunch of flowers) and a pen.
- 3 I bought some stamps, some postcards and some bread (or a loaf of bread).

4 I bought some toothpaste, some soap (or a bar of soap) and a comb.

**68.2**

- 2 Would you like some coffee? (or ... a cup of coffee?)
- 3 Would you like a biscuit?
- 4 Would you like some bread? (or ... a piece of bread? / a slice of bread?)
- 5 Would you like a chocolate?
- 6 Would you like some cake? (or ... a piece of cake?)

**68.3**

- 2 some ... some
- 3 some
- 4 a ... some
- 5 an ... some
- 6 a ... a ... some
- 7 some
- 8 some
- 9 some ... a

**68.4**

- 2 eyes
- 3 hair
- 4 information
- 5 chairs
- 6 furniture
- 7 job
- 8 wonderful weather

**UNIT 69****69.1**

- 3 a
- 4 the
- 5 an
- 6 the ... the
- 7 a ... a
- 8 a ... a
- 9 ... a student ... a journalist ... an apartment near the college ... The apartment is ...
- 10 ... two children, a boy and a girl. The boy is seven years old, and the girl is three ... in a factory ... hasn't got a job ...

**69.2**

- 2 the airport
- 3 a cup
- 4 a nice picture
- 5 the dictionary
- 6 the floor

**69.3**

- 2 ... send me a postcard.
- 3 What is the name of ...
- 4 ... a very big country.
- 5 What is the largest ...
- 6 ... the colour of the carpet.
- 7 ... a headache.
- 8 ... an old house near the station.
- 9 ... the name of the director of the film ...

**UNIT 70****70.1**

- 3 ... the second floor.
- 4 ... the moon?
- 5 ... the best hotel in this town?
- 6 OK
- 7 ... the city centre.
- 8 ... the end of May.
- 9 OK
- 10 ... the first time I met her.
- 11 OK
- 12 The Internet is a good way of getting information.
- 13 OK
- 14 ... on the top shelf on the right.
- 15 ... in the country about ten miles from the nearest town.

**70.2**

- 2 the same time
- 3 the same age
- 4 the same colour
- 5 the same problem

**70.3**

- 2 the guitar
- 3 breakfast
- 4 television/TV
- 5 the sea
- 6 the bottom

**70.4**

- 2 the name
- 3 The sky
- 4 television
- 5 the police
- 6 the capital
- 7 lunch
- 8 the middle

**UNIT 71****71.1**

- 2 the cinema
- 3 hospital
- 4 the airport
- 5 home
- 6 prison

**71.2**

- 3 school
- 4 the station
- 5 home
- 6 bed
- 7 the post office

**71.3**

- 2 the cinema
- 3 go to bed
- 4 go to prison
- 5 go to the dentist
- 6 go to university/college
- 7 go to hospital / are taken to hospital

**71.4**

- 3 the doctor
- 4 OK
- 5 OK
- 6 OK
- 7 the bank
- 8 OK
- 9 OK
- 10 the city centre
- 11 the station
- 12 OK
- 13 OK
- 14 OK
- 15 the theatre

**UNIT 72****72.1**

*Example answers:*

- 2 I don't like dogs.
- 3 I hate museums.
- 4 I love big cities.
- 5 Tennis is all right.
- 6 I love chocolate.
- 7 I don't like computer games.
- 8 I hate parties.

**72.2**

*Example answers:*

- 2 I'm not interested in politics.
- 3 I'm interested in sport.
- 4 I don't know much about art.
- 5 I don't know anything about astronomy.
- 6 I know a little about economics.

## Key to Exercises

### 72.3

- 3 friends
- 4 parties
- 5 **The** shops
- 6 **the** milk
- 7 milk
- 8 basketball
- 9 computers
- 10 **The** water
- 11 cold water
- 12 **the** salt
- 13 **the** people
- 14 Vegetables
- 15 **The** houses
- 16 **the** words
- 17 photographs
- 18 **the** photographs
- 19 English ... international business
- 20 Money ... happiness

### UNIT 73

#### 73.1

- 3 Sweden
- 4 **The** Amazon
- 5 Asia
- 6 **The** Pacific
- 7 **The** Rhine
- 8 Kenya
- 9 **The** United States
- 10 **The** Andes
- 11 Bangkok
- 12 **The** Alps
- 13 **The** Red Sea
- 14 Jamaica
- 15 **The** Bahamas

#### 73.2

- 3 OK
- 4 **the** Philippines
- 5 **the** south of France
- 6 **the** Regal Cinema
- 7 OK
- 8 **the** Museum of Art
- 9 OK
- 10 Belgium is smaller than **the** Netherlands.
- 11 **the** Mississippi ... **the** Nile
- 12 **the** National Gallery
- 13 **the** Park Hotel in Hudson Road
- 14 OK
- 15 **The** Rocky Mountains are in North America.
- 16 OK
- 17 **the** United States
- 18 **the** west of Ireland
- 19 OK

20 **The** Panama Canal joins the Atlantic Ocean and **the** Pacific Ocean.

### UNIT 74

#### 74.1

- 2 that house
- 3 these postcards
- 4 those birds
- 5 this seat
- 6 These plates

#### 74.2

- 2 Is that your umbrella?
- 3 Is this your book?
- 4 Are those your books?
- 5 Is that your bicycle/bike?
- 6 Are these your keys?
- 7 Are those your keys?
- 8 Is this your watch?
- 9 Are those your glasses?
- 10 Are these your gloves?

#### 74.3

- 2 that's      6 this is
- 3 This is      7 That's
- 4 That's      8 that's
- 5 that

### UNIT 75

#### 75.1

- 2 I don't need one
- 3 I'm going to get one
- 4 I haven't got one
- 5 I've just had one
- 6 there's one in Mill Road

#### 75.2

- 2 a new one
- 3 a better one
- 4 an old one
- 5 a big one
- 6 a different one

#### 75.3

- 2 Which ones?  
The green ones.
- 3 Which one?  
The one with a/the red door.
- 4 Which ones?  
The ones on the top shelf.
- 5 Which one?  
The black one.
- 6 Which one?  
The one on the wall
- 7 Which one?  
The tall one with long hair.
- 8 Which ones?  
The yellow ones.

9 Which one?

The one with a/the moustache and glasses.

10 Which ones?

The ones I took at the party last week.

### UNIT 76

#### 76.1

2 some	8 some
3 any	9 some
4 any	10 any ... any
5 any	11 some ... any
6 some	12 some
7 any	

#### 76.2

- 2 some questions
- 3 any photographs
- 4 any foreign languages
- 5 some friends
- 6 some milk
- 7 any batteries
- 8 some fresh air
- 9 some cheese
- 10 any help

#### 76.3

- 3 I've got some / I have some
- 4 I haven't got any / I haven't any / I don't have any
- 5 I didn't buy any
- 6 I bought some
- 7 I didn't make any

#### 76.4

- 2 something
- 3 anything
- 4 anything
- 5 Somebody/Someone
- 6 anything
- 7 anybody/anyone
- 8 something
- 9 anything
- 10 anybody/anyone

### UNIT 77

#### 77.1

- 2 There are no shops near here.
- 3 Carla has got no free time.
- 4 There is no light in this room.
- 6 There isn't any milk in the fridge.
- 7 There aren't any buses today.
- 8 Tom hasn't got any brothers or sisters.

**77.2**

2 any	8 no
3 any	9 any
4 no	10 no
5 any	11 None
6 no	12 any
7 any	

**77.3**

2 no money  
3 any questions  
4 no friends  
5 no difference  
6 any furniture  
7 no answer  
8 any heating  
9 no queue

**77.4**

*Example answers:*  
2 Three.  
3 Two cups.  
4 None.  
5 None.

**UNIT 78****78.1**

2 There's nobody in the office.  
3 I've got nothing to do.  
4 There's nothing on TV.  
5 There was no-one at home.  
6 We found nothing.

**78.2**

2 There wasn't anybody on the bus.  
3 I haven't got anything to read.  
4 I haven't got anyone to help me.  
5 She didn't hear anything.  
6 We haven't got anything for dinner.

**78.3**

3a Nothing.  
4a Nobody./No-one.  
5a Nobody./No-one.  
6a Nothing.  
7a Nothing.  
8a Nobody./No-one.  
3b I don't want anything.  
4b I didn't meet anybody/anyone.  
5b Nobody/No-one knows the answer.  
6b I didn't buy anything.  
7b Nothing happened.

8b Nobody/No-one was late.

**78.4**

3 anything  
4 Nobody/No-one  
5 Nothing  
6 anything  
7 anybody/anyone  
8 nothing  
9 anything  
10 anything  
11 nobody/no-one  
12 anything  
13 Nothing  
14 Nobody/No-one ... anybody/anyone

**UNIT 79****79.1**

2 something  
3 somewhere  
4 somebody/someone

**79.2**

2a Nowhere.  
3a Nothing.  
4a Nobody./No-one.  
2b I'm not going anywhere.  
3b I don't want anything.  
4b I'm not looking for anybody/anyone.

**79.3**

3 anything  
4 anything  
5 somebody/someone  
6 something  
7 anybody/anyone ... nobody/ no-one  
8 anything  
9 Nobody/No-one  
10 anybody/anyone  
11 Nothing  
12 anywhere  
13 somewhere  
14 anything  
15 anybody/anyone

**79.4**

2 anything to eat  
3 nothing to do  
4 anywhere to sit  
5 something to drink  
6 nowhere to park  
7 something to read  
8 somewhere to stay

**UNIT 80****80.1**

2 Every day  
3 every time  
4 Every room  
5 every word

**80.2**

2 every day  
3 all day  
4 every day  
5 all day  
6 all day  
7 every day

**80.3**

2 every 6 all  
3 all 7 every  
4 all 8 all  
5 Every 9 every

**80.4**

2 everything  
3 Everybody/Everyone  
4 everything  
5 everywhere  
6 Everybody/Everyone  
7 everywhere  
8 Everything

**80.5**

2 is 6 was  
3 has 7 makes  
4 likes 8 Is ... Does  
5 has

**UNIT 81****81.1**

3 Some 10 Most  
4 Most of 11 most of  
5 most 12 Some  
6 any of 13 All or All of  
7 all or all of 14 some of  
8 None of 15 most of  
9 any of

**81.2**

2 All of them.  
3 Some of them.  
4 None of them  
5 Most of them.  
6 None of it.

**81.3**

3 Some people ...  
4 Some of the questions ...  
or Some questions ...  
5 OK  
6 All insects ...  
7 OK (or ... all of these books)

## Key to Exercises

8 Most of **the** students ...  
or Most students ...  
9 OK  
10 ... most of **the** night

### UNIT 82

#### 82.1

3 Both 9 Neither  
4 Neither 10 either of  
5 Neither 11 Both  
6 both 12 neither of  
7 Either 13 Both  
8 neither of 14 either of

#### 82.2

2 Both windows are open.  
3 Neither man is wearing a hat. or Neither of them is wearing ...  
4 Both men have (got) beards. or Both of them have ...  
5 Both buses go to the airport. or ... are going to the airport.  
6 Neither answer is right.

#### 82.3

3 Both of them are students.  
4 Neither of them has (got) a car.  
5 Both of them live in London.  
6 Both of them like cooking.  
7 Neither of them can play the piano.  
8 Both of them read newspapers.  
9 Neither of them is interested in sport.

### UNIT 83

#### 83.1

2 many 8 many  
3 much 9 How many  
4 many 10 How much  
5 many 11 How much  
6 much 12 How many  
7 much

#### 83.2

2 much time  
3 many countries  
4 many people  
5 much luggage  
6 many times

### 83.3

2 a lot of interesting things  
3 a lot of accidents  
4 a lot of fun  
5 a lot of traffic

### 83.4

3 a lot of snow  
4 OK  
5 a lot of money  
6 OK  
7 OK  
8 a lot

### 83.5

3 She plays tennis a lot.  
4 He doesn't use his car much. (or ... a lot.)  
5 He doesn't go out much. (or ... a lot.)  
6 She travels a lot.

### UNIT 84

#### 84.1

2 a few 5 a little  
3 a little 6 a few  
4 a few

#### 84.2

2 a little milk  
3 A few days  
4 a little Russian  
5 a few friends  
6 a few times  
7 a few chairs  
8 a little fresh air

#### 84.3

2 very little coffee  
3 very little rain  
4 very few hotels  
5 very little time  
6 Very few people  
7 very little work

#### 84.4

2 A few 5 few  
3 a little 6 a little  
4 little 7 little

#### 84.5

2 ... a little luck  
3 . . . a few things  
4 OK  
5 . . . a few questions  
6 ... few people  
7 OK

### UNIT 85

#### 85.1

2 I like that green jacket.  
3 Do you like classical music?  
4 I had a wonderful holiday.  
5 We went to a Japanese restaurant.

#### 85.2

2 black clouds  
3 long holiday  
4 hot water  
5 fresh air  
6 sharp knife  
7 dangerous job

#### 85.3

2 It looks new.  
3 I feel ill.  
4 You look surprised.  
5 They smell nice.  
6 It tastes horrible.

#### 85.4

2 It doesn't look new.  
3 You don't sound American.  
4 I don't feel cold.  
5 They don't look heavy.  
6 Maybe, but it doesn't taste good.

### UNIT 86

#### 86.1

2 badly 5 fast  
3 quietly 6 dangerously  
4 angrily

#### 86.2

2 work hard  
3 sleep well  
4 win easily  
5 Think carefully  
6 know her very well  
7 explain things very clearly/well  
8 Come quickly

#### 86.3

2 angry 8 quiet  
3 slowly 9 badly  
4 slow 10 nice (See Unit 85C.)  
5 careful 11 quickly  
6 hard 7 suddenly

#### 86.4

2 well 5 well  
3 good 6 good ... good  
4 well

**UNIT 87****87.1**

2 bigger  
3 slower  
4 more expensive  
5 higher  
6 more dangerous

**87.2**

2 stronger  
3 happier  
4 more modern  
5 more important  
6 better  
7 larger  
8 more serious  
9 prettier  
10 more crowded

**87.3**

2 hotter/warmer  
3 more expensive  
4 worse  
5 further  
6 more difficult or harder

**87.4**

3 taller  
4 harder  
5 more comfortable  
6 better  
7 nicer  
8 heavier  
9 more interested  
10 warmer  
11 better  
12 bigger  
13 more beautiful  
14 sharper  
15 more polite  
16 worse

**UNIT 88****88.1**

3 Liz is taller than Ben.  
4 Liz starts work earlier than Ben.  
5 Ben works harder than Liz.  
6 Ben has got more money than Liz.  
7 Liz is a better driver than Ben.  
8 Ben is more patient than Liz.  
9 Ben is a better dancer than Liz. / Ben dances better than Liz.  
10 Liz is more intelligent than Ben.

11 Liz speaks French better than Ben. / Liz speaks better French than Ben. / Liz's French is better than Ben's.

12 Ben goes to the cinema more than Liz. / ... more often than Liz.

**88.2**

2 You're older than her. / ... than she is.  
3 You work harder than me. / ... than I do.  
4 You watch TV more than him. / ... than he does.  
5 You're a better cook than me. / ... than I am. or You cook better than me. / ... than I do.  
6 You know more people than us. / ... than we do.  
7 You've got more money than them. / ... than they have.  
8 You can run faster than me. / ... than I can.  
9 You've been here longer than her. / ... than she has.  
10 You got up earlier than them. / ... than they did.  
11 You were more surprised than him. / ... than he was.

**88.3**

2 Jack's mother is much younger than his father.  
3 My camera cost a bit more than yours. / ... than your camera. or My camera was a bit more expensive than ...  
4 I feel much better today than yesterday. / ... than I did yesterday. / ... than I felt yesterday.  
5 It's a bit warmer today than yesterday. / ... than it was yesterday.  
6 Sarah is a much better tennis player than me / ... than I am. or Sarah is much better at tennis than me / ... than I am. or Sarah plays tennis much better than me / ... than I do.

**UNIT 89****89.1**

2 A is longer than B, but not as long as C.  
3 C is heavier than A, but not as heavy as B.  
4 A is older than C, but not as old as B.  
5 B has got more money than C, but not as much as A. or ... but less (money) than A.  
6 C works harder than A, but not as hard as B

**89.2**

2 Your room isn't as big as mine. / ... as my room.  
3 I didn't get up as early as you. / ... as you did.  
4 They didn't play as well as us. / ... as we did.  
5 You haven't been here as long as me. / ... as I have.  
6 He isn't as nervous as her. / ... as she is.

**89.3**

2 as	6 than
3 than	7 as
4 than	8 than
5 as	

**89.4**

2 Julia lives in the same street as Laura.  
3 Julia got up at the same time as Andy.  
4 Andy's cat is the same colour as Laura's.

**UNIT 90****90.1**

2 C is longer than A.  
D is the longest.  
B is the shortest.  
3 D is younger than C.  
B is the youngest.  
C is the oldest.  
4 D is more expensive than A.  
C is the most expensive.  
A is the cheapest.  
5 A is better than C.  
A is the best.  
D is the worst.

## Key to Exercises

### 90.2

- 2 the happiest day
- 3 the best film
- 4 the most popular singer
- 5 the worst mistake
- 6 the prettiest village
- 7 the coldest day
- 8 the most boring person

### 90.3

- 2 Everest is the highest mountain in the world.
- 3–6  
Brazil is the largest country in South America.  
Alaska is the largest state in the USA.  
The Nile is the longest river in Africa. / ... in the world.  
Jupiter is the largest planet in the solar system.

## UNIT 91

### 91.1

- 2 enough chairs
- 3 enough paint
- 4 enough wind

### 91.2

- 2 The car isn't big enough.
- 3 His legs aren't long enough.
- 4 He isn't strong enough.

### 91.3

- 3 old enough
- 4 enough time
- 5 big enough
- 6 eat enough
- 7 enough space
- 8 tired enough
- 9 practise enough

### 91.4

- 2 sharp enough to cut
- 3 warm enough to go
- 4 enough bread to make
- 5 well enough to win
- 6 enough time to read

## UNIT 92

### 92.1

- 2 too heavy
- 3 too low
- 4 too fast
- 5 too big
- 6 too crowded

### 92.2

3 enough	8 enough
4 too many	9 too
5 too	10 too many
6 enough	11 too much
7 too much	

### 92.3

- 3 It's too far.
- 4 It's too expensive.
- 5 It isn't/It's not big enough.
- 6 It was too difficult
- 7 It isn't good enough.
- 8 I'm too busy.
- 9 It was too long.

### 92.4

- 2 too early to go to bed
- 3 too young to get married
- 4 too dangerous to go out at night
- 5 too late to phone Sue (now)
- 6 too surprised to say anything

## UNIT 93

### 93.1

- 3 I like this picture very much.
- 4 Tom started his new job last week.
- 5 OK
- 6 Jane bought a present for her friend. or Jane bought her friend a present.
- 7 I drink three cups of coffee every day.
- 8 OK
- 9 I borrowed fifty pounds from my brother.

### 93.2

- 2 I bought a new computer last week.
- 3 Paul finished his work quickly.
- 4 Emily doesn't speak French very well.
- 5 I did a lot of shopping yesterday.
- 6 Do you know London well?
- 7 We enjoyed the party very much.
- 8 I explained the problem carefully.
- 9 We met some friends at the airport.

10 Did you buy that jacket in England?

11 We do the same thing every day.

12 I don't like football very much.

### 93.3

- 2 I arrived at the hotel early.
- 3 Julia goes to Italy every year.
- 4 We have lived here since 1988.
- 5 Sue was born in London in 1980.
- 6 Paul didn't go to work yesterday.
- 7 Helen went to a wedding last weekend.
- 8 I had my breakfast in bed this morning.
- 9 Barbara is going to university in September.
- 10 I saw a beautiful bird in the garden this morning.
- 11 My parents have been to the United States many times.
- 12 I left my umbrella in the restaurant last night.
- 13 Are you going to the cinema tomorrow evening?
- 14 I took the children to school this morning.

## UNIT 94

### 94.1

- 2 He always gets up early.
- 3 He's/He is never late for work.
- 4 He sometimes gets angry.
- 5 He rarely goes swimming.
- 6 He's/He is usually at home in the evenings.

### 94.2

- 2 Susan is always polite.
- 3 I usually finish work at 5 o'clock.
- 4 Sarah has just started a new job.
- 5 I rarely go to bed before midnight.
- 6 The bus isn't usually late.
- 7 I don't often eat fish.
- 8 I will never forget what you said.
- 9 Have you ever lost your passport?

- 10 Do you still work in the same place?
- 11 They always stay in the same hotel.
- 12 Jane doesn't usually work on Saturdays.
- 13 Is Tina already here?
- 14 What do you usually have for breakfast?
- 15 I can never remember his name.

**94.3**

- 2 Yes, and I also speak French.
- 3 Yes, and I'm also hungry.
- 4 Yes, and I've also been to Ireland.
- 5 Yes, and I also bought some books.

**94.4**

- 1 They both play football. They're/They are both students.  
They've both got cars. / They both have cars.
- 2 They're/They are all married.  
They were all born in England.  
They all live in New York.

**UNIT 95****95.1**

- 2 Do you still live in Clare Street?
- 3 Are you still a student?
- 4 Have you still got a motorbike? / Do you still have ...
- 5 Do you still go to the cinema a lot?
- 6 Do you still want to be a teacher?

**95.2**

- 2 He was looking for a job. He's/He is still looking (for a job).  
He hasn't found a job yet.
- 3 She was asleep.  
She's/She is still asleep.  
She hasn't woken up yet. / She isn't awake yet. or  
She hasn't got up yet. / She isn't up yet.

- 4 They were having dinner. / They were eating.  
They're/They are still having dinner. / ... still eating.  
They haven't finished (dinner) yet. / They haven't finished eating yet.

**95.3**

- 2 Is Helen here yet? or Has Helen arrived/come yet?
- 3 Have you got your (exam) results yet? / Have you had your ... / Have you received your ...
- 4 Have you decided where to go yet? / Do you know where you're going yet?

**95.4**

- 3 She's/She has already gone/left.
- 4 I've already got one. / I already have one.
- 5 I've/I have already paid (it).
- 6 he already knows.

**UNIT 96****96.1**

- 2 He gave it to Gary.
- 3 He gave them to Sarah.
- 4 He gave it to his sister.
- 5 He gave them to Robert.
- 6 He gave it to a neighbour.

**96.2**

- 2 I gave Joanna a plant.
- 3 I gave Richard a tie.
- 4 I gave Emma some chocolates / a box of chocolates.
- 5 I gave Rachel some flowers / a bunch of flowers.
- 6 I gave Kevin a pen.

**96.3**

- 2 Can you lend me an umbrella?
- 3 Can you give me your address?
- 4 Can you lend me twenty pounds?
- 5 Can you send me some information?
- 6 Can you show me the letter?
- 7 Can you get me some stamps?

**96.4**

- 2 lend you some money
- 3 send the letter to me
- 4 buy you a present
- 5 pass me the sugar
- 6 give it to her
- 7 showed the policeman my identity card

**UNIT 97****97.1**

- 3 I went to the window and (I) looked out.
- 4 I wanted to phone you, but I didn't have your number
- 5 I jumped into the river and (I) swam to the other side.
- 6 I usually drive to work, but I went by bus this morning.
- 7 Do you want me to come with you, or shall I wait here?

**97.2***Example answers:*

- 2 because it was raining. / because the weather was bad.
- 3 but it was closed.
- 4 so he didn't eat anything. / so he didn't want anything to eat.
- 5 because there was a lot of traffic. / because the traffic was bad.
- 6 Sue said goodbye, got into her car and drove off/away.

**97.3***Example answers:*

- 3 I went to the cinema, but the film wasn't very good.
- 4 I went to a café and met some friends of mine.
- 5 There was a film on television, so I watched it.
- 6 I got up in the middle of the night because I couldn't sleep.

**UNIT 98****98.1**

- 2 When I'm tired, I like to watch TV.
- 3 When I phoned her, there was no answer.

- 4 When I go on holiday, I always go to the same place.
- 5 When the programme ended, I turned off the TV.
- 6 When I got to the hotel, there were no rooms.

### 98.2

- 2 when they heard the news
- 3 they went to live in New Zealand
- 4 while they were away
- 5 before they came here
- 6 somebody broke into the house
- 7 they didn't believe me

### 98.3

- 2 I finish
- 3 it's
- 4 I'll be ... she leaves
- 5 stops
- 6 We'll come ... we're
- 7 I come ... I'll bring
- 8 I'm
- 9 I'll give ... I go
- 10 I'll tell ... I'm

### 98.4

*Example answers:*

- 2 you finish your work
- 3 I'm going to buy a motorbike
- 4 you get ready
- 5 I won't have much free time
- 6 I come back

## UNIT 99

### 99.1

- 2 If you pass the exam, you'll get a certificate.
- 3 If you fail the exam, you can do it again.
- 4 If you don't want this magazine, I'll throw it away.
- 5 If you want those pictures, you can have them.
- 6 If you're busy now, we can talk later.
- 7 If you're hungry, we can have lunch now.
- 8 If you need money, I can lend you some.

### 99.2

- 2 I give
- 3 is
- 4 I'll call

- 5 I'll be ... get
- 6 Will you go ... they invite

### 99.3

*Example answers:*

- 3 ... you're busy.
- 4 ... you'll feel better in the morning.
- 5 ... you're not watching it.
- 6 ... she doesn't study.
- 7 ... I'll go and see Chris.
- 8 ... the weather is good.
- 9 ... it rains today.

### 99.4

- 2 When
- 3 If
- 4 If
- 5 if
- 6 When
- 7 if
- 8 when ... if

## UNIT 100

### 100.1

- 3 wanted
- 4 had
- 5 were/was
- 6 didn't enjoy
- 7 could
- 8 tried
- 9 didn't have

### 100.2

- 3 I'd go / I would go
- 4 she knew
- 5 we had
- 6 you won
- 7 I wouldn't stay
- 8 we lived
- 9 It would be
- 10 the salary was/were
- 11 I wouldn't know
- 12 would you change

### 100.3

- 2 I'd watch it / I would watch it
- 3 we had some pictures on the wall
- 4 the air would be cleaner
- 5 every day was/were the same
- 6 I'd be bored / I would be bored
- 7 we had a bigger house / we bought a bigger house
- 8 we would/could buy a bigger house

### 100.4

*Example answers:*

- 2 I'd go to Antarctica
- 3 I didn't have any friends
- 4 I'd buy a house if I had enough money.
- 5 I'd try and help
- 6 there were no guns

## UNIT 101

### 101.1

- 2 A butcher is a person who sells meat.
- 3 A musician is a person who plays a musical instrument.
- 4 A patient is a person who is ill in hospital.
- 5 A dentist is a person who takes care of your teeth.
- 6 A fool is a person who does stupid things.
- 7 A genius is a person who is very intelligent.
- 8 A liar is a person who doesn't tell the truth.

### 101.2

- 2 The woman who opened the door was wearing a yellow dress.
- 3 Most of the students who took the exam passed (it).
- 4 The policeman who stopped our car wasn't very friendly

### 101.3

- 2 who      6 which
- 3 which      7 who
- 4 which      8 who
- 5 who      9 which

*that is also correct in all these sentences.*

### 101.4

- 3 ... a machine **that/which** makes coffee.
- 4 OK (**which is also correct**)
- 5 ... people **who/that** never stop talking.
- 6 OK (**who is also correct**)
- 7 OK (**that is also correct**)
- 8 ... the sentences **that/which** are wrong.
- 9 ... a car **that/which** cost £40,000.

**UNIT 102****102.1**

2 I've lost the pen you gave me.  
 3 I like the jacket Sue is wearing.  
 4 Where are the flowers I gave you?  
 5 I didn't believe the story he told us.  
 6 How much were the oranges you bought?

**102.2**

2 The meal you cooked was excellent.  
 3 The shoes I'm wearing aren't very comfortable.  
 4 The people we invited to dinner didn't come.

**102.3**

2 Who are the people you were talking to?  
 3 Did you find the keys you were looking for?  
 4 Where is the party you're going to?  
 5 What's the name of the film you were talking about?  
 6 What's that music you're listening to?  
 7 Did you get the letter you were waiting for?

**102.4**

2 What's the name of the restaurant where you had dinner?  
 3 How big is the village where you live?  
 4 Where exactly is the factory where you work?

**UNIT 103****103.1**

3 at 11 at  
 4 on 12 in  
 5 in 13 on  
 6 in 14 on  
 7 on 15 at  
 8 on 16 at  
 9 at 17 at  
 10 on 18 in

**103.2**

2 on 11 at  
 3 at 12 on  
 4 in 13 in  
 5 in 14 at

6 in 15 in  
 7 on 16 on  
 8 on 17 in  
 9 in 18 at  
 10 at 19 at

**103.3**

2 on Friday  
 3 on Monday  
 4 at 4 o'clock on Thursday / on Thursday at 4 o'clock  
 5 on Saturday evening  
 6 at 2.30 on Tuesday (afternoon) / on Tuesday (afternoon) at 2.30

**103.4**

2 I'll call you in three days.  
 3 My exam is in two weeks.  
 4 Tom will be here in half an hour. / ... in 30 minutes.

**103.5**

3 in  
 4 – (*already complete*)  
 5 – (*already complete*)  
 6 in  
 7 at  
 8 – (*already complete*)  
 9 – (*already complete*)  
 10 on  
 11 in  
 12 at

**UNIT 104****104.1**

2 Alex lived in Canada until 1999.  
 3 Alex has lived in England since 1999.  
 4 Karen lived in France until 2003.  
 5 Karen has lived in Switzerland since 2003.  
 6 Clare worked in a hotel from 1998 to 2001.  
 7 Clare has worked in a restaurant since 2001.  
 8 Adam was a teacher from 1992 to 1998.  
 9 Adam has been a journalist since 1998.  
 11 Alex has lived in England for ..... years.

12 Karen has lived in Switzerland for ..... years.  
 13 Clare worked in a hotel for three years.  
 14 Clare has worked in a restaurant for ..... years.

15 Adam was a teacher for six years.

16 Adam has been a journalist for ..... years.

**104.2**

2 until 9 since  
 3 for 10 until  
 4 since 11 for  
 5 Until 12 until  
 6 for 13 Since  
 7 for 14 for  
 8 until

**UNIT 105****105.1**

2 after lunch  
 3 before the end  
 4 during the course  
 5 before they went to Australia  
 6 during the night  
 7 while you are waiting  
 8 after the concert

**105.2**

3 while  
 4 for  
 5 while  
 6 during  
 7 while  
 8 for  
 9 during  
 10 while

**105.3**

2 eating  
 3 answering  
 4 having/taking  
 5 finishing/doing  
 6 going/travelling

**105.4**

2 John worked in a bookshop for two years after leaving school.  
 3 Before going to sleep, I read for a few minutes.  
 4 After walking for three hours, we were very tired.  
 5 Let's have a cup of coffee before going out.

**UNIT 106****106.1**

2 In the box.  
 3 On the box.  
 4 On the wall.  
 5 At the bus stop.  
 6 In the field.  
 7 On the balcony.

## Key to Exercises

8 In the pool.  
9 At the window.  
10 On the ceiling.  
11 On the table.  
12 At the table.

### 106.2

2 in  
3 on  
4 in  
5 on  
6 at  
7 in  
8 in  
9 at  
10 at  
11 in  
12 at  
13 on  
14 at  
15 on the wall in the living room

### UNIT 107

#### 107.1

2 At the airport.  
3 In bed.  
4 On a ship.  
5 In the sky.  
6 At a party.  
7 At the doctor's.  
8 On the second floor  
9 At work.  
10 On a plane.  
11 In a taxi.  
12 At a wedding.

#### 107.2

2 in	9 in
3 in	10 in
4 at	11 on
5 at	12 on
6 in	13 at
7 at	14 in
8 at	15 on

### UNIT 108

#### 108.1

2 to	6 to
3 in	7 to
4 to	8 in
5 in	

#### 108.2

3 to  
4 to  
5 at home ... to work  
6 at  
7 – (already complete)  
8 to

9 at  
10 at a restaurant ... to the hotel

### 108.3

2 to  
3 to  
4 in  
5 to  
6 to  
7 at  
8 to  
9 to  
10 at  
11 at  
12 to Maria's house ... at home  
13 – (already complete)  
14 meet at the party... go to the party

### 108.4

1 to  
2 – (already complete)  
3 at  
4 in  
5 to  
6 – (already complete)

### 108.5

*Example answers:*  
2 to work  
3 at work  
4 to Canada  
5 to parties  
6 at a friend's house

### UNIT 109

#### 109.1

2 next to / beside / by  
3 in front of  
4 between  
5 next to / beside / by  
6 in front of  
7 behind  
8 on the left  
9 in the middle

#### 109.2

2 behind  
3 above  
4 in front of  
5 on  
6 by / next to / beside  
7 below / under  
8 above  
9 under  
10 by / next to / beside  
11 opposite  
12 on

### 109.3

2 The fountain is in front of the theatre.  
3 The bank/bookshop is opposite the theatre. or Paul's office is opposite the theatre. or The theatre is opposite ...  
4 The bank/bookshop/supermarket is next to ...  
5 Paul's office is above the bookshop.  
6 The bookshop is between the bank and the supermarket.

### UNIT 110

#### 110.1

2 Go under the bridge.  
3 Go up the hill.  
4 Go down the steps.  
5 Go along this street.  
6 Go into the hotel.  
7 Go past the hotel.  
8 Go out of the hotel.  
9 Go over the bridge.  
10 Go through the park.

#### 110.2

2 off  
3 over  
4 out of  
5 across  
6 round/around  
7 through  
8 on  
9 round/around  
10 into the house through a window

#### 110.3

1 out of  
2 round/around  
3 in  
4 from here to the airport  
5 round/around  
6 on/over  
7 over  
8 out of

### UNIT 111

#### 111.1

2 on time  
3 on holiday  
4 on the phone  
5 on television

**111.2**

2 by  
3 with  
4 about  
5 on  
6 by  
7 at  
8 on  
9 with  
10 **about** grammar by Vera P. Bull

**111.3**

1 with	9 at
2 without	10 by
3 by	11 about
4 about	12 by
5 at	13 on
6 by	14 with
7 on	15 by
8 with	16 by

**UNIT 112****112.1**

2 in  
3 to  
4 at  
5 with  
6 of

**112.2**

2 at  
3 to  
4 about  
5 of  
6 of  
7 from/to (*You can also say different than ...*)  
8 in  
9 for  
10 about  
11 of  
12 **for/about** getting angry with you

**112.3**

2 interested in going  
3 good at getting  
4 fed up with waiting  
5 sorry for/about waking  
6 Thank you for waiting.

**112.4**

2 Sue walked past me without speaking.  
3 Don't do anything without asking me first.  
4 I went out without locking the door.

**112.5**

*Example answers:*

2 I'm afraid of the dark.  
3 I'm not very good at drawing.  
4 I'm not interested in cars.  
5 I'm fed up with living here.

**UNIT 113****113.1**

2 to	5 at
3 for	6 for
4 to	

**113.2**

2 to	
3 to	
4 for	
5 to	
6 of/about	

**113.3**

1 at	4 after
2 after	5 at
3 for	6 for

10 for  
11 to  
12 – (*already complete*)  
13 to  
14 on  
15 of/about

**113.4**

*Example answers:*

3 It depends on the programme.  
4 It depends (on) what it is.  
5 It depends on the weather.  
6 It depends (on) how much you want.

**UNIT 114****114.1**

2 went in  
3 looked up  
4 rode off/away  
5 turned round/around  
6 got off  
7 sat down  
8 got out

**114.2**

2 away  
3 round/around  
4 going out ... be back  
5 down  
6 over

**7 back**

8 in  
9 up  
10 going away ... coming back

**114.3**

2 Hold on  
3 slowed down  
4 takes off  
5 getting on  
6 speak up  
7 broken down  
8 fall over / fall down  
9 carry on  
10 gave up  
11 went off

**UNIT 115****115.1**

2 She took off her hat. or She took her hat off.  
3 He put down his bag. or He put his bag down.  
4 She picked up the magazine. or She picked the magazine up.  
5 He put on his sunglasses. or He put his sunglasses on.  
6 She turned off the tap. or She turned the tap off.

**115.2**

2 He put his jacket on. He put it on.  
3 She took off her glasses. She took them off.  
4 I picked the phone up. I picked it up.  
5 They gave the key back. They gave it back.  
6 We turned off the lights. We turned them off.

**115.3**

2 take it back  
3 picked them up  
4 switched it off  
5 bring them back

**115.4**

3 knocked over  
4 look it up  
5 throw them away  
6 tried on  
7 showed me round  
8 gave it up or gave up (without it)  
9 fill it in  
10 put your cigarette out

# Key to Additional exercises

1

- 3 Kate is a doctor.
- 4 The children are asleep.
- 5 Gary isn't hungry.
- 6 The books aren't on the table.
- 7 The hotel is near the station.
- 8 The bus isn't full.

2

- 3 she's / she is
- 4 Where are
- 5 Is he
- 6 It's / It is
- 7 I'm/I am *or*  
No, I'm not. I'm a student.
- 8 What colour is
- 9 Is it
- 10 Are you
- 11 How much are they?

3

- 3 He's/He is having a shower.
- 4 Are the children playing?
- 5 Is it raining?
- 6 They're/They are coming now.
- 7 Why are you standing here?  
I'm/I am waiting for somebody.

4

- 4 Sam doesn't want
- 5 Do you want
- 6 Does Helen live
- 7 Sarah knows
- 8 I don't travel
- 9 do you usually get up
- 10 They don't go out
- 11 Tom always finishes
- 12 does Juha do ... She works

5

- 3 She's/She is a student.
- 4 She hasn't got a car.
- 5 She goes out a lot.
- 6 She's got/She has got a lot of friends.
- 7 She doesn't like London.
- 8 She likes dancing.
- 9 She isn't/She's not interested in sport.

6

- 1 Are you married?  
Where do you live?  
Have you got / Do you have any children?  
How old is she?
- 2 How old are you?  
What do you do? / Where do you work? / What's your job?  
Do you like/enjoy your job?  
Have you got / Do you have a car?  
Do you (usually) go to work by car?
- 3 What's his name? / What's he called?  
What does he do? / What's his job?  
Does he live/work in London?

7

- 4 Sonia is 32 years old.
- 5 I've got / I have two sisters.
- 6 We often watch TV in the evening.
- 7 Jane never wears a hat.
- 8 A bicycle has got two wheels. / ... has two wheels.
- 9 These flowers are beautiful.
- 10 Mary speaks German very well

8

- 3 are you cooking
- 4 plays
- 5 I'm going
- 6 It's raining
- 7 I don't watch
- 8 we're looking
- 9 do you pronounce

9

- 2 we go
- 3 is shining
- 4 are you going
- 5 do you go
- 6 She writes
- 7 I never read
- 8 They're watching
- 9 She's talking
- 10 do you usually have
- 11 He's visiting
- 12 I don't drink

10

- 2 went
- 3 found
- 4 was
- 5 had
- 6 told
- 7 gave
- 8 were
- 9 thought
- 10 invited/asked

11

- 3 He was good at sport.
- 4 He played football.
- 5 He didn't work hard at school.
- 6 He had a lot of friends.
- 7 He didn't have a bicycle.
- 8 He wasn't a quiet child.

12

- 3 How long were you there? / How long did you stay there?
- 4 Did you like/enjoy Amsterdam?
- 5 Where did you stay?
- 6 Was the weather good?
- 7 When did you get/come back?

13

- 3 I forgot
- 4 did you get
- 5 I didn't speak
- 6 Did you have
- 7 he didn't go
- 8 she arrived
- 9 did Robert live
- 10 The meal didn't cost

14

- 2 were working
- 3 opened
- 4 rang ... was cooking
- 5 heard ... looked
- 6 was looking ... happened
- 7 wasn't reading ... was watching
- 8 didn't read
- 9 finished ... paid ... left
- 10 saw ... was walking . . . was waiting

**15**

3 is playing  
 4 gave  
 5 doesn't like  
 6 did your parents go  
 7 saw ... was driving  
 8 Do you watch  
 9 were you doing  
 10 goes  
 11 I'm/am trying  
 12 didn't sleep

**16**

3 it's/it has just finished/ended.  
 4 I've/I have found them. or I've got them.  
 5 I haven't read it.  
 6 Have you seen her?  
 7 I've/I have had enough.  
 8 Have you (ever) been to Sweden?  
 9 We've/We have (just) been to the cinema.  
 10 They've/They have gone to a party.  
 11 He's/He has (just) woken up.  
 12 How long have you lived here? or ... have you been living here?  
 13 we've/we have known each other for a long time.  
 14 It's/It has been raining all day. or It has rained all day. or It has been horrible/bad all day.

**17**

3 I's/has been  
 4 for  
 5 since  
 6 has he lived / has he been / has he been living  
 7 for  
 8 I've been/have been

**18**

*Example answers:*  
 3 I've just started this exercise.  
 4 I've met Julia a few times.  
 5 I haven't had dinner yet.  
 6 I've never been to Australia.  
 7 I've lived here since I was born.  
 8 I've lived here for three years.

**19**

3 bought/got  
 4 went  
 5 I've/have read or read or I've/have finished with  
 6 haven't started (it) or haven't begun (it)  
 7 was  
 8 didn't see  
 9 left  
 10 I's/has been  
 11 was  
 12 I've/have never made

**20**

3 He's/He has already gone.  
 4 she left at 4 o'clock.  
 5 How many times have you been there?  
 6 I haven't decided yet.  
 7 It was on the table last night.  
 8 I've eaten there a few times.  
 9 What time did they arrive?

**21**

1 When was the last time? or When did you go the last time?  
 2 How long have you had it?  
 I bought/got it yesterday.  
 3 How long have you lived there / have you been there / have you been living here?  
 Before that we lived in Mill Road.  
 How long did you live in Mill Road?  
 4 How long have you worked there / have you been working there?  
 What did you do before that?  
 I was a taxi driver. or I worked as a taxi driver.

**22**

*Example answers:*  
 2 I didn't go out last night.  
 3 I was at work yesterday afternoon.  
 4 I went to a party a few days ago.  
 5 It was my birthday last week.  
 6 I went to America last year.

**23**

2 B                    9 C  
 3 D                    10 D  
 4 A                    11 A  
 5 A                    12 C  
 6 D                    13 B  
 7 C                    14 C  
 8 B                    15 A

**24**

1 was damaged ... be knocked down  
 2 was built ... is used ... is being painted  
 3 is called ... be called ... was changed  
 4 have been made ... are produced

**25**

2 is visited  
 3 were damaged  
 4 be built  
 5 is being cleaned  
 6 be forgotten  
 7 has already been done  
 8 be kept  
 9 Have you ever been bitten  
 10 was stolen

**26**

2 My car was stolen last week.  
 3 You're/You are wanted on the phone.  
 4 All the bananas have been eaten.  
 5 The machine will be repaired.  
 6 We're/We are being watched.  
 7 The housework has to be done.

**27**

3 pushed  
 4 was pushed  
 5 has taken  
 6 is being repaired  
 7 invented  
 8 was the camera invented  
 9 have been washed or were washed  
 10 I've/I have washed them. or I washed them.  
 11 did they send or have they sent  
 12 be sent

## Key to Additional exercises

**28**

2 B	8 B
3 A	9 B
4 C	10 A
5 B	11 B
6 C	12 C
7 C	

**29**

1 I stayed  
did you do  
I watched  
Are you going  
I'm going  
are you going to see  
I don't know. I haven't  
decided  
2 have you been  
We arrived  
are you staying / are you  
going to stay  
do you like  
we're having  
3 I've just remembered –  
Karen phoned  
She always phones ... Did  
she leave  
she wants  
I'll phone ... Do you  
know  
I'll get  
4 I'm going ... Do you  
want  
are you going  
Have you ever eaten  
I've been ... I went  
5 I've lost ... Have you seen  
You were wearing ... I  
came  
I'm not wearing  
Have you looked / Did  
you look  
I'll go

**30**

1 we met  
2 we sat / we were sitting  
3 We didn't know  
4 we became  
5 we liked  
6 we spent  
7 We left  
8 we meet  
9 has been  
10 she's working  
11 She's coming  
12 she comes  
13 we'll have / we're going to  
have  
14 It will be

**31**

2 we're staying  
3 we enjoyed  
4 We watched  
5 slept  
6 I don't sleep  
7 we're not doing / we're  
not going to do  
8 we're going  
9 to see  
10 We haven't decided  
11 wants  
12 to go  
13 I'll send  
14 you're having  
15 are working / have been  
working  
16 he had  
17 he needs  
18 We've been  
19 We got  
20 seeing  
21 I liked  
22 we went  
23 we left  
24 had  
25 he wasn't injured  
26 was damaged  
27 We've changed / We  
changed  
28 we're leaving  
29 We're staying / We're  
going to stay / We'll stay  
30 flying  
31 That will be / That's going  
to be  
32 finished  
33 I'll let  
34 we get  
35 are looking  
36 We're going  
37 we'll send

**32**

2 A	11 B
3 B	12 A
4 C	13 C
5 B	14 B
6 C	15 C
7 B	16 A
8 A	17 C
9 C	18 B
10 A	

**33**

2 a car  
3 the fridge  
4 a teacher  
5 school  
6 the cinema  
7 a taxi  
8 the piano  
9 computers  
10 the same

**34**

4 a horse  
5 **The** sky  
6 a tourist  
7 for lunch (-)  
8 the first President of the  
United States  
9 a watch  
10 remember names (-)  
11 the next train  
12 sends emails (-)  
13 the garden  
14 the Majestic Hotel  
15 ill last week (-) ... to  
work (-)  
16 the highest mountain in  
the world  
17 to the radio ... having  
breakfast (-)  
18 like sport (-) ... is  
basketball (-)  
19 a doctor ... an art teacher  
20 the second floor ... the  
top of the stairs ... on  
the right  
21 After dinner (-) ...  
watched television (-)  
22 a wonderful holiday in the  
south of France (-)

**35**

2 in	12 at
3 on	13 at
4 at	14 in
5 on	15 at
6 in	16 on
7 since	17 by
8 on	18 for ... on
9 by	19 to ... in
10 in	20 at ... in
11 for	

# Key to Study guide

<b>Present</b>	6.6 C	12.7 A
1.1 B	6.7 D	12.8 D
1.2 A	6.8 C	<b>Go, get, do, make and have</b>
1.3 C	6.9 B	13.1 A, D
1.4 A	<b>Modals, imperative etc.</b>	13.2 C
1.5 C, D	7.1 C, D	13.3 C, D
1.6 B	7.2 A, C	13.4 A, D
1.7 D	7.3 A	13.5 B
1.8 C	7.4 D	13.6 D
1.9 C	7.5 B	<b>Pronouns and possessives</b>
1.10 A	7.6 E	14.1 A
1.11 C	7.7 B, D	14.2 C
1.12 A	7.8 D	14.3 D
1.13 D	7.9 C	14.4 B
1.14 C	7.10 C	14.5 B, C
1.15 A	7.11 A	14.6 A
1.16 D	7.12 E	14.7 E
1.17 C, D		14.8 A
1.18 A, D		14.9 D
<b>Past</b>		14.10 C
2.1 B	8.1 B	<b>A and the</b>
2.2 E	8.2 E	15.1 C
2.3 D	8.3 A	15.2 B
2.4 B	8.4 A	15.3 A, C
2.5 A	8.5 B	15.4 B
2.6 D	<b>Auxiliary verbs</b>	15.5 B
2.7 A	9.1 C	15.6 A
2.8 C	9.2 A	15.7 D
2.9 C	9.3 C	15.8 C
	9.4 B	15.9 B
<b>Present perfect</b>	9.5 B	15.10 B
3.1 B, E	9.6 C	15.11 E
3.2 D	9.7 D	15.12 D
3.3 B	<b>Questions</b>	15.13 B
3.4 D	10.1 D	15.14 A
3.5 E	10.2 D	<b>Determiners and pronouns</b>
3.6 B	10.3 A	16.1 C
3.7 A	10.4 A	16.2 C
3.8 C	10.5 B	16.3 B
3.9 D	10.6 D	16.4 B
3.10 E	10.7 B	16.5 C
<b>Passive</b>	10.8 A	16.6 A, C
4.1 D	10.9 C, E	16.7 D
4.2 C	10.10 C	16.8 B, D
4.3 E	10.11 A	16.9 A
4.4 A	10.12 A, C	16.10 B
4.5 A	<b>Reported speech</b>	16.11 E
<b>Verb forms</b>	11.1 E	16.12 B, D
5.1 D	11.2 A, B, D	16.13 A
5.2 B	<b>-ing and to ...</b>	16.14 A, B
<b>Future</b>	12.1 B	16.15 D
6.1 A	12.2 D	16.16 A, C
6.2 A	12.3 B	16.17 D
6.3 C	12.4 C	16.18 B
6.4 A, B	12.5 B, C	16.19 A
6.5 B	12.6 C	

## Key to Study Guide

### Adjectives and adverbs

- 17.1 A
- 17.2 C
- 17.3 C
- 17.4 D
- 17.5 B
- 17.6 B
- 17.7 A, C
- 17.8 E
- 17.9 A
- 17.10 B
- 17.11 D
- 17.12 A
- 17.13 D
- 17.14 C

### Word order

- 18.1 B
- 18.2 C
- 18.3 B

18.4 A

18.5 A, D

### Conjunctions and clauses

- 19.1 C
- 19.2 A
- 19.3 D
- 19.4 E
- 19.5 B, C
- 19.6 A, B
- 19.7 B, D
- 19.8 A

### Prepositions

- 20.1 D
- 20.2 E
- 20.3 C, D
- 20.4 B
- 20.5 A, D
- 20.6 A

20.7 B

20.8 C

20.9 B

20.10 D

20.11 D

20.12 A

20.13 C

20.14 D

20.15 A

20.16 E

20.17 C

20.18 B

20.19 D

20.20 D

### Phrasal verbs

- 21.1 C
- 21.2 A, B
- 21.3 B

# Index

The numbers are unit numbers  
(not page numbers).

**a/an** 65  
  and some 67–68  
  and the 69  
**about** 111E  
**above** 109E  
**active and passive** Appendix 1  
**across** 110  
**adjectives** 85  
  adjectives and adverbs  
  (*quick/quickly*) 86  
  comparatives (*older / more expensive*) 87–89  
  superlatives (*the oldest / the most expensive*) 90  
**get + adjective** (*get tired etc.*) 56B  
possessive adjectives (*my/your/her etc.*) 60, 62  
*something/anybody* etc. + adjective 79C  
adjectives + preposition (*afraid of etc.*) 112A  
**adverbs** 86  
word order (*always/usually/often etc.*) 94  
**advise** (*advise somebody to ...*) 53B  
**afraid (of)** 112A  
**after** 98, 105  
**ago** 19B  
**all**  
  all and every etc. 80  
  all (of) 81  
  word order 94  
**along** 110  
**already** 95C  
  already + present perfect 16B  
  word order 94  
**also** (word order) 94  
**always**  
  always + present simple 5C  
  word order 94  
**am/is/are** 1–2  
  am/is/are -ing (present continuous) 3–4, 23A, 25, 51C  
  there is / there are 37  
**an** see **a**  
**and** 97  
**angry (with/about)** 112A  
**another** 65B  
**any**  
  any and some 76  
  not + any 77  
  any and no 77  
  any (of) 81

**anybody/anyone/anything** 76D, 78–79  
**anywhere** 79  
**apostrophe** (*I'm, it's etc.*)  
  Appendix 4  
**apostrophe 's** (*my brother's car*) 64  
**are** see **am/is/are**  
**around** 110, 114–115,  
  Appendix 7  
**arrive** 108C  
**articles** (*a/an/the*) 65–73  
  a/an 65, 67–68  
  a/an and the 69  
  the 70–73  
**as** (*not as ... as*) 89  
**ask**  
  ask somebody to ... 53B  
  ask somebody for ... 113A  
**at**  
  at 8 o'clock / at night etc. 103  
  at the bus stop / at work etc. 106–107  
  at and to 108  
  at the age of ... 111B  
**auxiliary verbs** 23, 40–42  
**away**  
  run away / throw away etc.  
  (phrasal verbs) 114–115,  
  Appendix 7  
**back**  
  come back / give back etc. (phrasal verbs) 114–115, Appendix 7  
**be** (infinitive of *am/is/are*)  
  am/is/are 1–2  
  am/is/are + -ing (present continuous) 3–4, 23A, 25, 51C  
  was/were 10  
  was/were + -ing (past continuous) 13, 23A, 51C  
  have/has been (present perfect) 15–18  
  passive 21–22, Appendix 1  
  will be 27  
**because** 97  
**been**  
  have/has been (present perfect) 15–18  
  been and gone 17C  
  there has/have been 38B  
**before** 98, 105  
**begin** (*begin to ... or begin -ing*) 52C  
**behind** 109A  
**belong (to)** 113A  
**below** 109E  
**beside** 109A  
**best** 90B  
**better** 87D  
**between** 109A  
**bit** (*a bit older/bigger etc.*) 88D  
**born** 21C  
**both** 82  
  word order 94  
**but** 97  
**by** 111C  
  by after the passive (*I was bitten by a dog,*) 21D  
  by myself / by yourself etc. 63C  
  by (= beside) 109C  
**can/can't** 30  
**comparative** (*older / more expensive etc.*) 87–89  
**conditional** (*if ...*)  
  if I do ... 99  
  if I did ... 100  
**conjunctions** 97–100  
  and/but/or/so/because 97  
  when/before/while/after/until 98  
  if 99–100  
**continue** (*continue to ... or continue -ing*) 52C  
**contractions** (short forms – *I'm, it's, you've etc.*) Appendix 4  
**could/couldn't** 30C–D  
**countable** and uncountable nouns 67–68  
**depend (on)** 113C  
**did**  
  didn't in negatives 12, 23D, 40C, 43B, 51A  
  did in questions 12, 23D, 40C, 44B, 51A  
**different (from)** 112A  
**direct speech** and reported speech 50  
**do and make** 57  
  don't/doesn't in negatives 6, 23D, 40C, 43B, 51A  
  do/does in questions 7, 23D, 40C, 44B, 51A  
  don't go / don't fall etc. (imperative) 35B  
**down** 110  
  sit down / put down etc. (phrasal verbs) 114–115, Appendix 6–7  
**during** 105

**each other** 63D  
**either**  
*either and too* 42A  
*either (of)* 82  
**embedded questions** (*Do you know what ... ? etc.*) 49  
**end** (*at the end of*) 103B, 106B  
**enjoy**  
*enjoy -ing* 52B  
*enjoy myself/yourself etc.* 63A  
**enough** 91  
*enough and too* 92D  
**ever**  
*Have you ever ... ?* 17  
superlative + *ever* 90E  
word order 94  
**every** 80  
**everybody/everyone/ everything/everywhere** 80C  
**expect** 52A, 53B

**far**  
*How far is it?* 39A, 47D  
*far → further* 87B  
**fast** 86C  
**fed up (with)** 112A  
**few / a few** 84  
**finish** (*finish -ing*) 52B  
**for**  
*for ten minutes / for three years etc.* 19, 104D  
*for and to ...* 54B  
*go for a walk etc.* 55C  
*for and during* 105C  
**from** 104A, 110  
**front (in front of)** 109A–B  
**full (of)** 112A  
**further** 87B  
**future** 25–28  
*I'm working tomorrow. (present continuous)* 25  
*The concert starts at 7.30. (present simple)* 25C  
*(I'm) going to (do something)* 26  
*will* 27–28  
*shall* 27D, 28C  
*future after when/before/while etc.* 98B  
*future after if* 99B

**geographical names** with and without the 73  
**gerund** see *-ing*  
**get** 56  
*get to (a place)* 56C, 108C  
*get on / get up etc. (phrasal verbs)* 114, Appendix 6  
**give**  
*give something to somebody / give somebody something* 96

**give up / give back etc. (phrasal verbs)** 115, Appendix 6–7  
**go** 55  
*go -ing (go swimming etc.)* 55D  
*go home / go to work / go to the cinema* 71  
*go in / go back etc. (phrasal verbs)* 114

**going to** (*I'm going to do something*) 26

**gone and been** 17C

**good**  
*good and well* 86D  
*good at* 112A

**got**  
*past of get* 11C, 56  
*have/has got* 9, 58A

**had**  
*past of have* 11C  
*had to* 33B  
*He said he had (done something)* 50, Appendix 1.1

**happen (to)** 113A

**hard** 86C

**has see have**

**hate** 52C–D

**have** 9, 58  
*have got / has got* 9, 58A  
*have done / have been etc. (present perfect)* 15–18, 23C  
*have to* 33  
*have a nice time / have fun etc.* 35A  
*there has/have been* 38B  
*have breakfast / have a shower etc.* 58B

**her** 59–60, 62

**hers** 61–62

**herself** 63

**him** 59, 62

**himself** 63

**his** 60–62

**holiday (on holiday)** 55B, 111A

**home** 55A, 71A, 108B  
*get home* 56C, 108C

**how** 47  
*How long have you ... ? (present perfect)* 18  
*how big? / how old? / how far? etc.* 47D  
*How long does it take?* 48  
*how much? / how many?* 83A

**I/you/he/she etc. (personal pronouns)** 59, 62

**if** 99–100  
*if we go / if you see etc.* 99  
*if and when* 99C  
*if I had / if we went* 100  
*Do you know if ... ?* 49C

**imperative** (*do this / don't do that etc.*) 35

**in**  
*in April / in summer etc.* 103  
*in a room / in hospital etc.* 106–107  
*in five minutes / in three years etc.* 103E  
*in and to* 108  
*put something in* 110  
*go in / fill in etc. (phrasal verbs)* 114–115, Appendix 7

**infinitive** (*do/see/play etc.*)  
infinitive (*do/see etc.*) and to + infinitive (*to do / to see etc.*) 51, 53  
*can/will/should etc. + infinitive* 51A  
verbs + to + infinitive (*I want to go etc.*) 51B, 52–53  
infinitive and -ing (*do/doing etc.*) 51–52  
*I went to the shop to buy ... (infinitive for purpose)* 54  
infinitive and for ... 54B  
adjective + infinitive (*it's easy to ...*) 39B  
*something to eat / nowhere to go etc.* 79D

**-ing** (*doing/playing-going etc.*)  
*am/is/are + -ing (present continuous)* 3–4, 23A, 25, 51C  
*was/were + -ing (past continuous)* 13, 23A, 51C  
-ing and infinitive (*do/doing etc.*) 51–52  
verbs + -ing (*enjoy -ing etc.*) 52B–C  
*go -ing (go swimming etc.)* 55D  
prepositions + -ing 105D, 112B

**interested (in)** 112A

**into** 110

**irregular verbs** 11C, 24B, Appendix 2–3

**is see am/is/are**

**it** 39, 59B  
*it is and there is* 37B, 39A  
*it's and its* 60C

**its** 60

**just**  
*just + present perfect* 16A  
word order 94

**kind** (*kind to somebody / kind of somebody*) 112A

**know** (*Do you know where ... ?*) 49

**learn** (*learn to ...*) 52A  
**left** (*on the left*) 109A  
**lend** (*lend something to somebody*) 96  
**less** 88C  
**let** 53D  
**let's** (*let's go / let's dance etc.*) 35C, 53D  
**like** (*What is it like?*) 46B  
**like** (verb)  
*would like* 34, 52D, 53A  
*do you like? and would you like?* 34C  
*like to ... or like -ing* 52C  
**listen** (to) 113A  
**little / a little** 84  
**look**  
*look + adjective (look tired etc.)* 85C  
*look at/for/after* 113B  
**lot (a lot of ...)** 83  
**love** 52C–D

**make** 57  
*make somebody do something* 53D  
*make and do* 57  
**many**  
*many and much* 83  
*not as many (as)* 89B  
*too many* 92C  
**married**  
*married to* 112A  
*get married* 56B  
**may** 29D  
**me/you/him** etc. (personal pronouns) 59, 62  
**middle** (*in the middle of*) 107A, 109A  
**might** 29  
**mind** (*I don't mind -ing*) 52B  
**mine/yours/hers** etc. (possessive pronouns) 61–62  
**modal verbs** (*will/can/might etc.*) 27–34, 51A  
**more** 87C, 88  
**most**  
*most (of)* 81  
*the most expensive / the most difficult etc.* 90  
**much**  
*much and many* 83  
*much bigger / much more expensive* 88D  
*not as much (as)* 89B  
*too much* 92C  
**must** 31  
**mustn't** 31C  
*must and should* 32E  
*must and have to* 33D

**my/your/his** etc. (possessive adjectives) 60, 62  
**myself/yourself** etc. (reflexive pronouns) 63

**need**  
*don't need to* 31D  
*need to ...* 52A

**negatives** 43  
*negative questions* 44C  
*no and none* 77  
*not + any* 77–78

**neither**  
*Neither am I / Neither do I etc.* 42B  
*neither (of)* 82

**never**  
*never + present simple* 5C  
*never + present perfect* 17B  
*word order* 94

**next to** 109A

**nice** (*nice to somebody / nice of somebody*) 112A

**no** (*no money / no friends etc.*) 77A–B, 81B

**nobody/no-one/nothing** 78–79  
*no-one and none* 77C

**none** 77B–C, 81B–C

**nor** (*Nor am I / Nor do I etc.*) 42B

**nouns** (countable and uncountable) 67–68

**nowhere** 79

**of**  
*the roof of the building etc.* 64C  
*the ... of ...* 73E

**off** 110  
*get off / turn off* etc. (phrasal verbs) 114–115, Appendix 6

**offer** (*to do something*) 52A

**often**  
*often + present simple* 5C  
*word order* 94

**on**  
*on Monday / on 25 April etc.* 103  
*on the table / on the wall* 106–107  
*on the left/right* 109A  
*on holiday / on television etc.* 111A  
*go on (holiday / a trip etc.)* 55B  
*get on / put on* etc. (phrasal verbs) 114–115, Appendix 6–7

**one/ones** 75

**opposite** 109B

**or** 97A–B

**ought to** 32F

**our** 60, 62

**ours** 61–62

**ourselves** 63

**out**  
*out of* 110  
*go out / put out* etc. (phrasal verbs) 114–115, Appendix 6–7

**over** 110  
*climb over / knock over* (phrasal verbs) 114–115, Appendix 6–7

**pair** (*a pair of ...*) 66B

**passive** 21–22, 23B, Appendix 1  
*present simple (is done) and past simple (was done)* 21  
*present continuous (is being done) and present perfect (has been done)* 22  
*will/can/must (etc.) be done* Appendix 1.2

**past** (*Go past the cinema ...*) 110

**past continuous** (*was/were + -ing*) 13–14, 23A, 51C  
*past continuous (I was doing) and past simple (I did)* 14  
*past continuous passive*, Appendix 1.1

**past participle** (*cleaned/done/seen etc.*) 24A  
*present perfect (I have cleaned)* 15, 23C  
*passive (the room was cleaned)* 21–22, 23B, Appendix 1  
*regular (cleaned) and irregular (seen)* 24B, Appendix 2–3

**past perfect**  
*He said he had (done something)* 50  
*active and passive* Appendix 1.1

**past simple** (*did/cleaned/saw etc.*) 11–12  
*negative (didn't ...)* 12, 43B  
*questions (did ... ?)* 12, 44B  
*was/were* 10  
*regular (cleaned) and irregular verbs (saw)* 11B–C, Appendix 2–3  
*past simple + ago* 19B  
*past simple (I did) and present perfect (I have done)* 20  
*past simple (I did) and past continuous (I was doing)* 14  
*past simple passive (the room was cleaned)* 21, 23B, Appendix 1.1  
*if + past simple (if I had / if we went)* 100

**people** 66C–D

**personal pronouns** (*I/me/you etc.*) 59, 62

**persuade** (*persuade somebody to ...*) 53B

**phrasal verbs** (*get up / put on etc.*) 114–115, Appendix 6–7

**plural** (*cup → cups / man → men etc.*) 66

**police** (plural) 66D

**possessive adjectives** (*my/your/his etc.*) 60, 62

**possessive pronouns** (*mine/yours/his etc.*) 61–62

**prefer** 52C–D

**prepositions** 103–113  
*at/on/in* (time) 103  
*for/since* 19, 104  
*until* 104A–B  
*before/after/during/while* 105  
*in/at/on* (places) 106–107  
*to/in/at* (places) 108  
*on* 103, 106–107, 109A, 111A  
*at* 103, 106–108, 111B  
*under/below/opposite etc.* (*position*) 109  
*up/over/through* etc. (*movement*) 110  
*by* 109C, 111C  
*with/without* 111D, 112B  
*about* 111E  
*prepositions + -ing* (*in -ing / without -ing etc.*) 105D, 112B  
*adjective + prepositions* (*afraid of etc.*) 112A  
*verb + preposition* (*listen to / wait for etc.*) 113  
*prepositions at the end* (*Who is she talking to?*) 46  
*prepositions in relative clauses* (*the man she is talking to*) 102B

**present continuous** (*am/is/are + -ing*) 3–4, 23A, 51C  
*negative* (*I'm not -ing*) 3  
*questions* (*are you -ing?*) 4  
*present continuous* (*I am doing*) and *present simple* (*I do*) 8  
*present continuous passive* 22A, Appendix 1.1  
*present continuous for the future* (*What are you doing tomorrow?*) 25

**present perfect** (*I have done*) 15–20, 23C  
*present perfect + just* 16A  
*present perfect + already* 16B  
*present perfect + yet* 16C, 95B  
*Have you ever ... ?* 17  
*gone and been* 17C  
*How long have you ... ?* 18  
*present perfect + for/since* 18–19  
*present perfect continuous* (*I have been -ing*) 18B  
*present perfect* (*I have done*) and *past simple* (*I did*) 20

present perfect passive 22B, Appendix 1.1

**regular and irregular verbs** 15B, 24, Appendix 2–3

**present simple** (*I work / she works etc.*) 5–7, 23D  
*negative* (*don't/doesn't*) 6, 43B  
*questions* (*do/does ... ?*) 7, 44B  
*present simple + always/usually/never etc.* 5C  
*present simple* (*I do*) and *present continuous* (*I am doing*) 8  
*present simple passive* (*the room is cleaned*) 21, 23B, Appendix 1.1  
*present simple for the future* (*The concert starts at 7.30.*) 25C  
*present simple after when/while etc.* 98B  
*present simple after if* 99B

**promise** (*promise to ...*) 52A

**pronouns**  
*personal pronouns* (*I/me/you etc.*) 59, 62  
*possessive pronouns* (*mine/yours etc.*) 61–62  
*reflexive pronouns* (*myself/yourself etc.*) 63  
*one/ones* 75  
*relative pronouns* (*who/which/that*) 101–102

**put**  
*put something in ...* 110  
*put on / put out* etc. (phrasal verbs) 115, Appendix 7

**questions** 44–47  
*am/is/are ... ?* 2  
*do/does ... ?* (present simple) 7, 44B  
*did ... ?* (past simple) 12, 44B  
*Why don't ... ? / Why isn't ... ?* etc. 44C  
*Who saw you? / Who did you see?* 45  
*preposition at the end* (*Who is she talking to?*) 46  
*What / Which / How ... ?* 47  
*How long does it take?* 48  
*Do you know where ... ?* (embedded questions) 49  
*reply questions* (*Have you? / Are you? etc.*) 41A  
*question tags* (... *do you? / ... isn't it? etc.*) 41B

**reflexive pronouns** (*myself/yourself etc.*) 63

**regular and irregular verbs** 11, 24, Appendix 2–3

**relative clauses** 101–102

**relative pronouns** (*who/which/that*) 101–102

**reply questions** (*Have you? / Are you? etc.*) 41A

**reported speech**  
*He said that ... / He told me that ...* 50  
*He told me to ...* 53B–C

**right** (*on the right*) 109A

**round** 110  
*turn round / show round* (phrasal verbs) 114–115, Appendix 7

**'s** (apostrophe 's) 64, Appendix 4.5

**same** 70B, 89E

**say/said**  
*He said that ...* (reported speech) 50  
*say and tell* 50B

**shall** 27D, 28C

**short forms** (*I'm / it's / you've etc.*) Appendix 4

**should** 32

**simple past** see **past simple**

**simple present** see **present simple**

**since** 19A, 104C

**singular and plural** (*flower → flowers*) 66

**so**  
*so am I / so do I etc.* 42B  
*I was tired, so I went to bed.* 97

**some**  
*some and a/an* 67–68  
*some and any* 76  
*some (of)* 81

**somebody/someone / something/somewhere** 76, 79

**sometimes**  
*sometimes + present simple* 5C  
*word order* 94

**sorry** (*sorry about and sorry for*) 112A

**speak (to)** 113A

**spelling** Appendix 5

**start** (*start to ... and start -ing*) 52C

**still** 95  
*word order* 94

**stop** (*stop -ing*) 52B

**suggest** (*suggest -ing*) 52B

**superlative** (*the biggest / the most expensive etc.*) 90

**tags** (question tags) 41B  
**take** (*How long does it take?*) 48  
**talk (to)** 113A  
**tell/told**  
*He told me that ...* 50  
*tell and say* 50B  
*Can you tell me where ... ?* 49A  
*He told me to ...* 53B-C  
**tenses**  
active and passive Appendix 1.1  
present continuous (*I am doing*) 3-4, 23A, 25, 51C  
present simple (*I do*) 5-7, 23D, 25C  
past simple (*I did*) 11-12, 14, 20, 23D  
past continuous (*I was doing*) 13-14, 23A, 51C  
present perfect (*I have done*) 15-20, 23C  
*be/have/do* in present and past tenses 23  
**than** 88-89  
**that** 74  
*He said that ...* (reported speech) 50C  
*that and this* 74  
*a thing that ...* (relative clauses) 101  
**the** 69-73  
*the and a/an* 69  
*the same* 70B  
*the sun / the sky etc.* 70C  
*the cinema / the theatre / the bank etc.* 71B  
*flowers / the flowers* 72  
*the in names of places* 73  
*the biggest / the most expensive etc.* 90  
**their** 60, 62  
**theirs** 61, 62  
**them** 59, 62  
**themselves** 63  
**there**  
*there is/are* 37  
*there was/were* 38A  
*there has/have been* 38B  
*there will be* 38C  
*there is and it is* 37B  
**these** 74  
**think** (*think about / think of*) 113A  
**this** 74  
**those** 74  
**through** 110  
**till** (= *until*) 104B

**to**  
*time* 104A  
*places* 108, 110  
*go to ...* 55A, 108A  
*get to ...* 56C, 108C  
**to + infinitive** (*to go / to be etc.*) see **infinitive**

**too** 92  
*too and either* 42A

**turn** (*turn round / turn on etc.*) (phrasal verbs) 114-115, Appendix 7

**uncountable nouns**  
(*salt/water/music etc.*) 67-68

**under** 109D, 110

**until** 98B, 104A-B

**up** 110  
*get up / pick up etc.* (phrasal verbs) 114-115, Appendix 6-7

**us** 59, 62

**used** (*I used to ...*) 36

**usually**  
*usually + present simple* 5C  
word order 94

**verbs**  
present tenses 1-9, 23, 25  
past tenses 10-14, 20, 23  
present perfect 15-20, 23  
passive 21-22, Appendix 1  
regular and irregular verbs 24, Appendix 2-3  
future 25-28  
modal verbs (*will/can/should etc.*) 27-34, 51A  
negatives 43  
questions 44-47  
reported speech 50  
verbs + -ing 51-52  
verbs + *to ...* (infinitive) 51-53  
verbs + preposition (*look at / speak to etc.*) 113  
phrasal verbs (*get up / put on etc.*) 114-115, Appendix 6-7

**wait (for)** 54C, 113A

**want**  
*want to ...* 52A  
*want somebody to ...* 53A

**was/were** 10  
*was/were + -ing* (past continuous) 13, 23A, 51C  
*was/were done* (passive) 21, 23B  
*there was/were* 38A  
*if I was/were ...* 100B

**well** 86D

**were** see **was**

**what**  
*What ... ? and Who ... ?* 45C  
*What ... like?* 46B  
*What ... ?* 47  
*What ... ? and Which ... ?* 47C

**when** 98  
*when and if* 99C

**whether** 49C

**which**  
*Which ... ?* 47  
*Which ... ? and What ... ?* 47C  
*Which one/ones?* 75B  
*a thing which ...* (relative clauses) 101

**while** 98, 105

**who**  
*Who ... ?* 45  
*a person who ...* (relative clauses) 101

**whose** (*Whose is this?*) 61D

**will** 27-28  
*will and shall* 27D, 28C  
*won't* 27A  
*there will be* 38C

**with/without** 111D  
*with/without + -ing* 112B

**won't** (= *will not*) 27A

**word order**  
questions 44-46  
present continuous questions 4B  
present simple questions 7B  
past simple questions 12D  
passive 21-22  
*Do you know where ... ?* (embedded questions) 49  
verb + object 93A  
place and time 93B  
*always/usually/often etc.* 94  
after *give/lend/send etc.* 96

**worse** 87D

**worst** 90B

**would**  
*I'd like / would you like?* 34  
*would like/love etc.* 52D  
*He would buy a car if he had the money.* 100

**write (to)** 113A

**yet** 95B  
*yet + present perfect* 16C

**you** 59, 62

**your** 60, 62

**yours** 61-62

**yourself/yourselves** 63

# Essential Grammar in Use

With answers and CD-ROM – Third Edition

A self-study reference and practice book for elementary students

Using clear examples and easy-to-follow exercises, this new, full-colour edition of the best-selling *Essential Grammar in Use* makes learning easy, covering all the areas of grammar that an elementary-level student needs.

- Two-page units with **clear explanations** on the left page and **practice exercises** on the right.
- **NEW! Study Guide** helps you find the most useful language points for you, making this book ideal for self-study.
- **NEW!** Even more 'Additional Exercises' give you **extra practice** of difficult areas.

The new CD-ROM gives you hundreds of practice exercises, providing further practice for every unit.

- A variety of games and exercises **make learning fun**.
- Make your own tests: Choose from over 600 grammar questions to **test the areas that YOU want to practise**.
- Audio recordings provide **extra listening and pronunciation practice**.
- The **built-in dictionary** gives you instant definitions of any new vocabulary.
- **Interactive speaking exercises** provide extra practice at the end of each section.

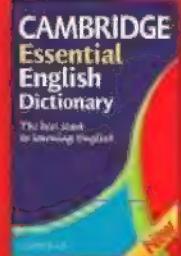


CD-ROM for Microsoft® Windows® 2000 or XP

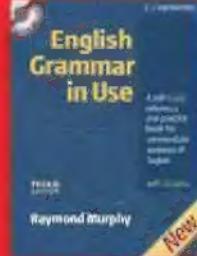
Also available: **Essential Grammar in Use Supplementary Exercises** Second Edition with answers  
**Cambridge Essential English Dictionary**  
**English Grammar in Use** Third Edition with answers and CD-ROM



ISBN 978 0 521 625420



ISBN 978 0 521 005371



ISBN 978 0 521 537629



CAMBRIDGE  
UNIVERSITY PRESS  
[www.cambridge.org](http://www.cambridge.org)

ЦТК: *Ess Grammar in Use with CD ROM 3 ed*

Цена: 387p.00к.



9780521675437 12.03.09